

CSCE 557
Introduction to Cryptography
Fall 2020

Duncan A. Buell

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING, UNI-
VERSITY OF SOUTH CAROLINA, COLUMBIA SC 29208

E-mail address: `buell@mailbox.sc.edu`

2000 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* Primary

Contents

Preface	xiii
Chapter 1. Introduction	1
1.1. History	1
1.2. Introduction	4
1.3. Why Is Cryptography Used?	5
1.4. Modes of Encryption	6
1.5. Modes of Attack	8
1.6. How many seconds in a year?	8
1.7. Kerckhoffs' Principle	10
Chapter 2. Simple Ciphers	13
2.1. Substitution Ciphers	14
2.2. Language Characteristics and Patterns	16
2.3. Transposition Ciphers	21
2.4. Playfair	22
2.5. ADFGX	23
2.6. Cryptanalysis	24
2.7. The Vernam One-Time Pad	25
Chapter 3. Groups, Rings, Fields	27
3.1. Groups	27
3.2. Rings	31
3.3. Fields	32

3.4. Examples and Expansions	33
3.5. Exercises	39
Chapter 4. Divisibility, Congruences, and Modular Arithmetic	41
4.1. Divisibility	41
4.2. The Euclidean Algorithm	44
4.3. Primes	47
4.4. Congruences	49
4.5. The Euler Totient	57
4.6. Fermat's Little Theorem	57
4.7. Exponentiation	57
Chapter 5. Square Roots and Quadratic Symbols	61
5.1. Square Roots	61
5.2. Characters on Groups	65
5.3. Legendre Symbols	65
5.4. Quadratic Reciprocity	66
5.5. Jacobi Symbols	66
5.6. Extended Law of Quadratic Reciprocity	67
Chapter 6. Finite Fields of Characteristic 2	69
6.1. Polynomials with Coefficients mod 2	69
6.2. Linear Feedback Shift Registers	71
6.3. The General Theory	76
6.4. Normal Bases	79
Chapter 7. Elliptic Curves	83
7.1. Basics	83
7.2. Observation	89
7.3. Projective Coordinates and Jacobian Coordinates	90
7.4. An Example of a Curve with Many Points	90
7.5. Curves Modulo a Prime p	91
7.6. Hasse's Theorem	92
Chapter 8. Mathematics, Computing, and Arithmetic	93
8.1. Mersenne Primes	93
8.2. Multiprecise Arithmetic and the Fast Fourier Transform	100

8.3. Montgomery Multiplication	111
8.4. Arithmetic in General	114
Chapter 9. Modern Symmetric Ciphers — DES and AES	115
9.1. History	115
9.2. The Advanced Encryption Standard	117
9.3. The AES Algorithm	119
9.4. The Structure of AES	122
9.5. Implementation issues	136
9.6. Security	141
Chapter 10. Asymmetric Ciphers — RSA and Others	143
10.1. History	143
10.2. RSA Public-Key Encryption	144
10.3. Implementation	145
10.4. How Hard Is It to Break RSA?	147
10.5. Other Groups	148
Chapter 11. How to Factor a Number	151
Introduction	151
11.1. Pollard rho	152
11.2. Pollard $p - 1$	154
11.3. CFRAC	156
Chapter 12. How to Factor More Effectively	167
12.1. Shortcomings of CFRAC	167
12.2. The Quadratic Sieve	167
12.3. Once More Unto the Breach	169
12.4. The Multiple Polynomial Quadratic Sieve	170
12.5. The Number Field Sieve	171
12.6. Factoring with Elliptic Curves	172
Chapter 13. Cycles, Randomness, Discrete Logarithms, and Key Exchange	175
13.1. The Discrete Logarithm Problem	176
13.2. Difficult Discrete Log Problems	176
13.3. Cycles	178
13.4. Cocks-Ellis-Williamson/Diffie-Hellman Key Exchange	178

13.5.	The Index Calculus	180
13.6.	Key Exchange with Elliptic Curves	184
13.7.	Key Exchange in Other Groups	185
13.8.	How Hard Is the Discrete Logarithm Problem?	185
Chapter 14.	Elliptic Curve Cryptography	187
14.1.	Elliptic Curve Discrete Logarithms	188
14.2.	Elliptic Curve Cryptography	189
14.3.	The Cost of Elliptic Curve Operations	190
14.4.	The NIST Recommendations	193
14.5.	Elliptic Curve Attacks	195
14.6.	Pohlig-Hellman Attacks	195
14.7.	Pollard Rho Attacks	195
Chapter 15.	Differential Cryptanalysis	201
Chapter 16.	Quantum Cryptography	207
Chapter 17.	Lattice-Based Cryptography	209
Chapter 18.	Homomorphic Encryption	211
Chapter 19.	Exercises	213
19.1.	Chapter 1 Exercises — Introduction	213
19.2.	Chapter 2 Exercises — Simple Ciphers	214
19.3.	Chapter 3 Exercises — Groups, Rings, Fields	215
19.4.	Chapter 4 Exercises — Modular Arithmetic	215
19.5.	Chapter 5 Exercises — Square Roots and Quadratic Symbols	217
19.6.	Chapter 6 Exercises — Finite Fields of Characteristic 2	217
19.7.	Chapter 7 Exercises —	218
19.8.	Chapter 8 Exercises —	218
19.9.	Chapter 9 Exercises —	218
19.10.	Chapter 10 Exercises —	218
19.11.	Chapter 11 Exercises —	218
19.12.	Chapter 12 Exercises —	218
19.13.	Chapter 13 Exercises —	218
19.14.	Chapter 14 Exercises —	218

19.15. Chapter 15 Exercises —	218
19.16. Chapter 16 Exercises —	218
19.17. Chapter 17 Exercises —	218
19.18. Chapter 18 Exercises —	218
Appendix A. Continued Fractions	219
Appendix B. Binary Quadratic Forms and Quadratic Number Fields	227
B.1. Forms in general	227
B.2. Definite forms, of negative discriminant	231
B.3. Indefinite forms, of positive discriminant	238
B.4. General Examples and Observations	245
B.5. Automorphs, Pell's Equation	246
B.6. Continued Fractions and Indefinite Forms	249
Appendix C. Class Groups, CLASNO, Baby-step/Giant-step	257
C.1. Quadratic class groups	257
C.2. Composition Algorithms	257
C.3. Examples	265
C.4. SPAR and CLASNO	267
Appendix D. An Actual World War I Cipher	271
D.1. Introduction	271
D.2. The Message	271
D.3. Language Determination	271
D.4. An Initial Blocking	273
D.5. Cribbing the Sequence	273
D.6. Putting it all together	275
D.7. Further guessing	280
D.8. Continuing the sequence	282
D.9. Putting together the final message	288
Appendix E. AES Code	299
E.1. Introduction	299
E.2. Introduction	299
E.3. A Revised Appendix D.2	300
E.4. A Revised Appendix D.3	303

E.5. Revised Appendix E	306
Cited References	325
Additional References	333
Index	337

Preface

This is a work in progress.

I have not written some of the last couple of chapters.

I have not done exercises for all the chapters.

I have a couple of sections that need to be written.

I have a couple of sections that need to be rewritten.

I would be happy to be informed of typographical errors, genuine mistakes, citation or reference issues, and such. Things that might be incorrect include

- Indexing, labels, figures with chapter numbers, etc.
- Using the mathcal font for big O notational instances
- Checking that citations are correct and complete

Columbia SC,
August 21, 2020

Duncan Buell

Introduction

1.1. History

The problem of secure communication is probably almost as old as civilization itself. In sending a message to a distant correspondent, with adversaries somewhere along the way, it has always been necessary to ensure that the messages cannot be understood by the adversaries in the middle. In other instances, it is only for the purpose of privacy (or, as one might say today, protection of intellectual property), information is written in a code that cannot be read except by those in the know. Leonardo da Vinci, for example, wrote his notes in mirror image, from right to left. Some have suggested this was to protect the content from prying eyes, although another suggestion is just that he was left-handed and by writing right to left he would not smudge the page as he wrote.

Secure communications have been crucial for those who plot and scheme. Mary, Queen of Scots, for example, was found in 1586 to be plotting against Elizabeth of England. As it turned out, Elizabeth's cryptanalyst, Thomas Phelippes, was better at his job than was Mary's cryptographer, and coded messages connecting Mary to the plot against Elizabeth were read, leading to Mary's execution.

Thomas Jefferson devised a ciphering machine that was apparently never built in his lifetime, but was largely reinvented in the early 20th century and used, as the M-94, by the United States Army.

One of the classics of literature on cryptography, and as controversial at the time as it is now a classic, is *The American Black Chamber*, by Herbert O. Yardley [Yar31]. Yardley was a cryptographer during

and after the First World War, working for Army intelligence during the war and then for a joint black chamber¹ office of the Army and the U. S. Department of State, until Secretary of State Henry Stimson, famously saying, “Gentlemen do not read each other’s mail”, ended the funding and effectively terminated the office. One of the primary accomplishments of Yardley’s office came during the negotiations of the Washington Naval Conference of 1921-1922. Under discussion at the conference were the ratios of ship tonnage that the major powers were to adhere to, and decrypted Japanese communications revealed the lower limit that Japan was willing to accept at the time.

While Yardley worked for the Army and the State Department, the other preeminent American cryptographers of the era were William and Elizabeth Friedman, husband and wife. They worked together at the Riverbank Laboratories, a privately funded operation near Chicago of wealthy businessman George Fabyan, and wrote many of the early papers on cryptography that are still viewed as classics of the modern literature. William Friedman led the Army’s Signals Intelligence Service and played a key role in cracking Purple, the Japanese diplomatic code. Among the famous messages decrypted from Purple was the seventeen part communication to the Japanese Embassy on the day before the Pearl Harbor attack. The message on its last pages clearly indicated that war was about to begin, but the last part of the message never reached Washington officials in time. Conspiracy theories persist that in fact officials knew, but wanted to allow Japan to attack so as to force public opinion in favor of going to war.

Codebreaking played crucial roles in the Second World War. The British work at Bletchley Park (following early breakthroughs by three Polish mathematicians) on the German naval cipher, code-named Enigma, has been the subject of many books and movies [Wel82]. Although the most recent film, *The Imitation Game*, has received the most attention, there is more Hollywood than fact in the script; the earlier film *Enigma* is much closer to the truth. It was for decrypting Enigma and subsequent German ciphers that the first electronic computers, named Colossus, were built by the British, but since their existence was classified until the mid-1970s, the American-built ENIAC has been usually taken to be the first such computer.

Perhaps the greatest triumph of cryptanalysis in the war in the Pacific was the ability of the American naval group, led by Joseph

¹The term *black chamber* is a translation of the French term *cabinet noire* that was established in France in the late 16th century.

Rochefort in Hawaii, to decrypt the Japanese communications leading to the battle at Midway. Famously, Rochefort and his team had cracked one of the Japanese naval codes and had decrypted the time and the order of battle of the Japanese fleet, but knew the location only by the code letters “AF”. Suspecting it was Midway, and in the midst of a heated discussion with other naval intelligence officers, a message was sent to the base at Midway by secure undersea cable. The Midway base was told to send back to Hawaii, in the clear so it would be picked up by the Japanese, the (false) message that a desalination plant had broken down and there was a shortage of fresh water. Within 24 hours, Rochefort’s group decrypted a Japanese message that “AF is short on water” and thus knew the attack would be on Midway. Barely six months after Pearl Harbor, the Japanese lost four aircraft carriers and their naval expansion was halted.

Cryptanalysis also played a key role in the D-Day landings in Normandy. Gathering intelligence was much more difficult on the European continent, since land lines were used and not the wireless communications of Enigma. But there were German wireless communications using a cipher that was code-named TUNNY, that had been cracked and whose messages could be decrypted. And in addition to the direct information on German plans and positions from reading German ciphers, the Allies had the advantage of collateral information. The Japanese ambassador and the military attache had been given tours of the coastal defenses along the English Channel. They had written extensive reports that were sent back to Japan, by radio, using a cipher that had been broken, so the Allies had first-hand information as to the German defenses.

Cryptography has also always been political. Governments often do not want just the ability to read the messages of other countries or groups; they want to read the messages of their own citizens, and occasionally they have law-enforcement reasons for doing so. Courts have not completely settled on whether one can be required to divulge a password, or whether that would constitute a required self-incrimination forbidden in the United States by the Fifth Amendment. Encryption is useful for business transactions, but some of those transactions are illegal. The United States effort to create the CLIPPER chip failed miserably in the early 1990s, and there have been several studies of the benefits and pitfalls of private encryption.[HSS89, LKB⁺94b, LKB⁺94a] Major technology companies have refused to implement back doors in

the security of their consumer products, despite repeated efforts to pass laws mandating such back doors.[AAB⁺15]

1.2. Introduction

We shall begin with some terms. The *crypt* part of our terms means *secret*. An *ology* is a study, so *cryptology* is etymologically the study of secrets. We will restrict to the study of *cryptography*, where the *graphy* means *writing*, so *cryptography* thus means *secret writing*. The other term that is often seen is *cryptanalysis*, which we shall take to mean the analysis of a cryptographic endeavor. We may well conflate the terms cryptography and cryptology, but will try to reserve cryptanalysis for the process of attacking a cryptographic system so as to read the hidden messages.²

In using a cryptographic system, one starts with the original non-secret message, called *plaintext*. When using the cryptographic system one is converting plaintext into *ciphertext* that the sender intends not to be understandable by anyone but the intended recipient. We shall interchangeably use the words *encrypting* and *enciphering* for the process of changing plaintext into ciphertext, and interchangeably use the words *decrypting* and *deciphering* for the process of converting ciphertext back into plaintext. Enciphering and deciphering always use some sort of *key*, which is the information known only to sender and receiver, used for encryption and decryption, and that (one hopes) ensures secrecy of the contents.

A small bit of simplifying jargon is also useful. We assume that the sender creates the ciphertext, and that the ciphertext could be intercepted by an adversary. Clearly, then the adversary can observe the pattern of bits that is the ciphertext. However, we will only say that the adversary (or even the intended recipient) can *read* the ciphertext if the ciphertext can be turned back into the original plaintext.

Part of cryptography, although not something we will spend time on here, is the idea of a *codebook*, which historically has often been a book that provides code sequences (often five-digit numbers) for each word to be used in the plaintext. The plaintext is transformed from text into a sequence of code words transmitted in the clear. The secrecy of the coded text relies on an adversary's being unable to obtain a copy of the code book and being unable to use frequency analysis or cribbing to

²And we will never use the incorrect word “crypto-analysis”, because that would seem instead to mean analysis done in secret, which is something quite different.

guess the code words being used, *cribbing* being the term for guessing a match between known or expected words in the plaintext (like days of the week or times of day) and parts of the ciphertext or coded text and using that guess to try to see if more of the message can thus be decrypted/decoded.

Finally, we mention *coding theory*, yet another discipline not really related to what we present here. The primary purpose of coding theory is to permit unambiguous reception of transmitted messages even in the presence of garbling. Perhaps the simplest technique in coding theory is that of a parity bit appended to the end of a bit string. With “even parity”, an extra 0 or 1 bit, as appropriate, would be added to a bit string so that all strings would have an even number of 1 bits. A string that arrived at its destination with an odd number of 1 bits would be known to have been garbled in transmission. The research and substance of coding theory is to find and analyze codes that provide the maximum ability to transmit unambiguously and to detect and possibly be able to correct garbles while using the fewest number of bits beyond the minimum necessary to provide unique codes for each of the symbols being transmitted. We can do most of what we need in English using 8-bit ASCII codes, for example, and a single extra parity bit would permit us to determine to flag as garbled characters any character for which an odd number of bits were flipped in transmission. We would not, however, know which bit or bits were incorrect.

1.3. Why Is Cryptography Used?

It is reasonable to ask about the various purposes for cryptography. We can identify four basic ways in which cryptographic functions are used in the modern world. Many of these exist outside the world of internet communication and transaction, but we will focus on those uses.

- The obvious reason for using cryptography is to preserve *confidentiality*, that is, to make communications between two parties understandable only by the two parties involved.
- In the world of the internet, important documents like contracts and real-estate transactions are sent over the internet, which is not secure. Variants of the same functions used to maintain confidentiality can be used to ensure the *integrity* of the documents transmitted, so, for example, the dollar value of a contract could not be changed by a malicious interceptor as the document was being sent from one party to another. Cryptography is also used

to encrypt databases and disk files, so that if a malicious actor stole a laptop or was able to obtain unauthorized access to a desktop, the files would not be understandable to anyone except the owner of the files.

- In addition to the issue of the integrity of a document is the issue of *authentication* of the identity of someone on the other end of an internet transaction. Cryptographic functions can be used to ensure that one can authenticate with whom one is communicating.
- The traditional method for ensuring that a person's commitment cannot be repudiated has been a wet signature on a document. Knowing, as we do, that malicious actors populate the internet in great numbers, it is necessary that *non-repudiation* of transmitted documents not be possible. We need an analog of a wet signature.

As part of a discussion about the uses for cryptography, we can distinguish two basic, and often complementary, ways in which cryptographic algorithms are used. If the goal is to ensure that the contents of a message cannot be read by anyone other than the intended recipient, then the process will be to take an unknown (to the interceptor) plaintext and to convert it into ciphertext that only the intended recipient can read.

The goals of authentication or non-repudiation work in the opposite direction. When a sender authenticates her identity, any receiver or interceptor can be assumed to know the plaintext (or at least to crib part of the plaintext). The ciphertext thus needs to be something that only the assumed sender could have sent. This is often combined with a *hash function* that produces an apparently random short signature for a document that could only have been produced by the original document. Although there are variations in algorithms for these two different purposes, there is substantial commonality.

1.4. Modes of Encryption

Algorithms for cryptography operate in different ways, and sometimes the differences are very important.

A *block cipher* is an algorithm that operates on a block of bits at a time, producing a block of ciphertext from a block of plaintext. For

example, AES operates on 128-bit blocks of plaintext to produce 128-bit blocks of ciphertext. An RSA cryptosystem, with a 2048-bit key, would likely operate on blocks of size 2048.

In an *electronic codebook* implementation, the blocks would be treated independently, with each pair of plaintext/ciphertext blocks independent of one another. This can be insecure in many instances. AES, for example, has only a 16-byte block, and if the “text” to be encrypted is an image, there might well be large parts of the image that have the same background plaintext and thus would be encrypted as the same ciphertext. This can make the outlines of the underlying image identifiable.

To prevent the encryption of identical plaintext blocks into identical ciphertext blocks, one can implement *cipher block chaining*. In this, an initialization vector of random bits is XOR-ed with the first block of plaintext, which is encrypted. The ciphertext of block n is then used as if it were an initialization vector for block $n + 1$ before that block is encrypted.

In contrast to block ciphers, with a *stream cipher* a sequence of “random” bits is XOR-ed to a stream of plaintext bits to create the ciphertext. This requires, of course, that one has a deterministic algorithm, known to both sender and receiver, that generates a stream of bits that appear for all intents and purposes to be random. Stream ciphers have often been constructed using linear feedback shift registers, for example, as will be discussed in Chapter 6.

We remark that with the digital age has come a standardization. Unlike a message sent entirely on paper, all messages that are sent electronically will be sent as coded zeros and ones, and thus all messages can be treated as numbers. Text stored in a computer is invariably stored as Unicode numbers that represent the characters to be stored. Unicode is the multi-byte extension to the ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) that assigned one-byte (originally not using all the bits) codes to letters, numbers, punctuation, and control characters. Such coding began with Samuel F. B. Morse and Emile Baudot in the nineteenth century for use with telegraphs. Morse code is variable length, with the more frequent letters getting shorter code words. Baudot and subsequent codes before Unicode were fixed-length codes. Unicode, still in progress, has been developed to provide codes for all the alphabets and diacriticals for all the world’s languages as well as such new things as emojis. Unicode is variable length: the original codes deriving from ASCII are single-byte. If more bytes are

needed (since a single byte can only encode 256 different values), the first byte has a signal encoded in it that indicates that the next byte is a continuation of the first. Three-byte codes simply do this continuation twice.

Modern cryptography, then, takes one of two different forms. In most public-key cryptography, the bit patterns of the underlying text are taken to be the binary number represented by the pattern, and computation is done on that number. In systems such as AES, the Advanced Encryption Standard, the bit patterns are made to appear random by reordering and application of binary functions like an XOR.

1.5. Modes of Attack

In doing cryptanalysis, there are four basic kinds of attack that can be mounted.

- In a *ciphertext only attack* we are presented only with ciphertext.
- In a *known plaintext attack* we know the decrypted plaintext and we have the corresponding ciphertext. Our goal here is to discover the encryption algorithm, if we don't know it yet, and the key if we have found the encryption algorithm by some other methods.
- In a *chosen ciphertext attack* it is possible to gain information about how to decrypt by having the decryptions of chosen instances of ciphertext.
- In a *chosen plaintext attack* the cryptanalyst can choose the plaintext and from that obtain the ciphertext for that plaintext. With public key encryption schemes, for example, the ability to encrypt a message is possible for anyone who has plaintext, because the encryption key itself is public knowledge.

1.6. How many seconds in a year?

In measuring the brute-force complexity of a cryptosystem, one often has to compute a ballpark estimate for the time needed to crack the system with a totally naive attack. The United States Data Encryption Standard (DES) cryptosystem, for example, had a 56-bit key. There were thus $2^{56} \approx 7.2 \times 10^{16}$ possible keys. If one were to attack DES by brute force, one would simply test each key in sequence. In a large scale operation with many possible messages to decipher, we would expect on average only to go halfway up the key space before we hit the correct

key, so on average we would expect to have to test $2^{55} \approx 3.6 \times 10^{16}$ possible keys before we were able to decrypt a message.

How long would this take us? As was once said, one test of whether a speaker has really been doing supercomputing is whether she knows how many seconds there are in a year. There are 86,400 seconds in a day and $31,536,000 \approx 3 \times 10^7$ seconds, or 3×10^{16} nanoseconds, in a non-leap year.

Modern computers run with about a 3-Gigahertz clock, which means that each clock period is about 0.33 nanoseconds. But modern computers are highly pipelined, so it's not the case that instructions only take 0.33 nanoseconds to complete. For convenience, let's say we can test a single DES key in 1 nanosecond, which means we can test 10^9 keys every second. At that rate we could exhaust the DES key space in 3.6×10^7 seconds, which is a little over a year.

It is only now we need to worry about being less sloppy in our estimates. A little over a year is within range of a concerted attack. Since testing keys is embarrassingly parallel, we could hand off different parts of the key space to different computers and run the entire computation in parallel. With 1000 computers, at 10^9 keys tested per second on each computer, our brute force time is down to about 36,000 seconds, which is about ten hours. And now we start working to be less sloppy. One key per nanosecond? That's probably optimistic, but if we are only off by a factor of 5, then we are still finding keys about once every two days. Can we get 1000 computers? If we are a major player in the computing world, that's not unreasonable, assuming that decrypting messages was important to The Powers That Be. Adjusting the estimates up and down still results in the basic conclusion that DES can be cracked in some reasonably small number of days.

Contrast this with AES. Since $2^{128} \approx 3.4 \times 10^{38}$, we know that a brute force attack isn't going to work no matter what we do. With 1000 computers testing 10^9 keys per second, and 30 million seconds in a year, going halfway up the key space would take

$$\frac{1.7 \times 10^{38}}{10^3 \times 10^9 \times 3.0 \times 10^7} \approx 5 \times 10^{18}$$

years to find one key. And now it doesn't help to fix the sloppiness in our estimates. Getting 100 times as many computers each of which goes 100 times faster only gets the exponent down to 14. Planet Earth has only been around for about 4.5×10^9 years; and our brute force attack will still take about 100 thousand times longer than that.

Table 1.1. Brute Force Time To Crack, for Varying Bit Lengths

Key Size	Years	Key Size	Years
56	1.14	320	$3.39 \cdot 10^{79}$
64	292.47	352	$1.45 \cdot 10^{89}$
96	$1.26 \cdot 10^{10}$	384	$6.25 \cdot 10^{98}$
128	$5.40 \cdot 10^{21}$	416	$2.68 \cdot 10^{108}$
160	$2.32 \cdot 10^{31}$	448	$1.15 \cdot 10^{118}$
224	$4.27 \cdot 10^{50}$	480	$4.95 \cdot 10^{127}$
256	$1.84 \cdot 10^{60}$	512	$2.13 \cdot 10^{137}$
288	$7.89 \cdot 10^{69}$		

Just to put things in perspective, we provide in Table 1.1 the expected time needed for a brute force attack on a cryptosystem with varying key lengths. This assumes that we test one key in one nanosecond and that on average we only need to test half the keys to get success. The lesson is clear; brute force is not going to work.

1.7. Kerckhoffs' Principle

Finally, we cite the principle enunciated by the Dutch cryptographer Auguste Kerckhoff in the nineteenth century: A cryptosystem should be secure even if everything is known about the system except the key that is used to encrypt a particular message.

Claude Shannon reiterated that in a different way in 1949, stating that in communications one must assume that the enemy knows everything about the system.

These principles would seem self-evident. The contrasting view is what is referred to (in a deprecating way) as “security through obscurity”. Companies often naturally have trade secrets. Patents are mechanisms whereby inventions beneficial to the inventor are made public but which cannot be used without licensing. It is a general rule in security, and no less for communications security, that one cannot assume that secrets in the design of a system will stay secret. If there is something of value to be found, the conservative approach to security is to assume that attempts will be made to uncover that which has value. And the conservative approach is to assume that even if outside spies cannot break in, insiders in the know could be corrupted or

blackmailed. As Benjamin Franklin put it, “Three can keep a secret, if two of them are dead.”

Simple Ciphers

There are two basic forms of simple cipher. In a *substitution cipher*, one substitutes for each letter in the underlying alphabet another symbol (perhaps a different letter in the same alphabet, or sometimes another symbol entirely). In a *transposition cipher*, the letters of the underlying alphabet remain the same, but their order is transposed into a different order. In this, one can take the term “letter” to mean a single letter or perhaps a pair of letters.

We distinguish at the outset a *codebook* from a *cipher*, although the two can be closely related. Traditional codebooks were a form of making communications secret by substituting a fixed length (often five) sequence of numbers for each of the individual words in the message. One can think of such a codebook as a substitution cipher in which the symbols are words (of variable length, of course) for which one substitutes numerical symbols.

We will also mention only briefly (right here) the notion of *steganography*, where a message is hidden in some seemingly innocuous communication. One version of this would be a letter in which the hidden message was the sequence of first letters of words of the text. A more modern reverse version of steganography is *digital watermarking*, in which a digital pattern is inserted into a document, usually an image document, so that the provenance of the image can be authenticated if it is illegally taken without attribution or royalty. This is not unlike the apparent inclusion of intentional errors in maps, say, so that the owner of the map’s copyright could argue that the map had been illegally copied. The author wishes very much that he had kept the road map

of Louisiana (where he grew up) that showed a road south from Venice, Louisiana, and a bridge across the Mississippi to reach Pilottown. No such road or bridge has ever existed; Pilottown is where the Mississippi River pilots meet the incoming vessels and take the conn on the way up the river to the Port of New Orleans, and where on the outward voyage they turn over the conn to the seagoing pilots. The “city” can only be reached by water; there is no road south from Venice and no bridge across the Mississippi.

2.1. Substitution Ciphers

2.1.1. Caesar Ciphers. Perhaps the simplest and most historic of the substitution ciphers is that attributed to Julius Caesar. The classic Caesar cipher is a shift, modulo 26, of the letters of the alphabet:

Plaintext	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
Ciphertext	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p
Plaintext	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z
Ciphertext	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c

In other words, every letter of plaintext is simply shifted down three letters to produce the ciphertext.

We might see

Plaintext	i	a	m	t	h	e	m	e	s	s	a	g	e
Ciphertext	l	d	p	w	k	h	p	h	v	v	d	o	h

2.1.2. Random Substitutions. The Caesar cipher has the major advantage of being easy to be used for enciphering a message. One need only know that enciphering is shifting down by three letters. On the other hand, the pattern of “every letter shifts by 3” is a pattern that is a weakness in the cipher. Once a cryptanalyst found that several letters seemed to have been shifted down by three, she might surmise that this was true for all the letters, and the encipherment would be broken.

Consider instead a substitution in which one permutation of the $26! \approx 15 \times 10^{24}$ possible permutations of the 26 letters of the English alphabet is chosen as the encipherment mechanism. With a randomly chosen permutation, there would be no pattern of “shift by three” that would be apparent, and the cipher would be much harder to break.

2.1.3. Vigenère as an Example of Polyalphabetic Substitutions. Both the Caesar cipher and a random substitution cipher use a single alphabet with which to encrypt symbols. The Vigenère cipher, first

described by Giovan Battista Bellaso but then later misattributed to Vigenère, is a *polyalphabetic cipher*, in which (not surprisingly given the name) multiple alphabets are used to substitute one set of symbols for another.

We start with a table of symbols shifted for each of the possible shifts of a Caesar-like cipher.

	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z
a	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z
b	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a
c	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b
d	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c
e	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d
f	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e
g	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f
h	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g
i	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h
j	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i
k	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j
l	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k
m	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l
n	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
o	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
p	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
q	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p
r	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q
s	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r
t	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s
u	u	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t
v	v	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u
w	w	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v
x	x	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w
y	y	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x
z	z	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y

We now use an easy-to-remember word as the key, say “buell”, and repeat it over the extent of the message:

Key	b	u	e	l	l	b	u	e	l	l	b	u	e
Plaintext	i	a	m	t	h	e	m	e	s	s	a	g	e
Ciphertext	j	v	q	f	t	f	g	i	e	e	b	b	i

To encipher, we start with the first letter, “i”, and the first letter of the key, “b”. We can take column “i” and row “b” and find the cipher letter “j”. We then take the second letter and key letter, and under the column “a” for row “u” we find the cipher letter “v”. And so forth. Decryption is just the opposite.

2.2. Language Characteristics and Patterns

Before going on to transposition ciphers and then the cryptanalysis of these simple ciphers, it is worth making a slight digression into the observation (and mathematics) of patterns that appear in any human language.

2.2.1. Letter Frequency. The first thing to note is that the letters do not appear equally often in text, and then that letter frequency is a strong indicator of language. We present in Table 2.1 three frequency percentages for English. The first column comes from a Cornell University website [Cor] and the second and third come from a frequency count of the Gutenberg Project [Pro] versions of Charles Dickens's *David Copperfield* and Charles Darwin's *Voyage of the Beagle*. We have blocked off sections where the letters in a block are the same but the frequencies slightly different; only in the penultimate block, of letters u, c, m, f, y, w, g, and p, do we see a significant difference in the ordering.

For cryptanalytic purposes, such frequency counts can almost immediately distinguish a substitution cipher from a transposition cipher. Since a transposition cipher does not change the frequency of the letters in the text, the frequency count should be roughly the same as a benchmark frequency count. In the case of a substitution cipher, one could almost immediately guess that the most common letter was the substitute in English for the letter “e”.

In the case of a transposition cipher, the frequencies of the letters can serve to identify the underlying language, at least for the major European languages.

A similar frequency count on words themselves can also be used for guessing, especially when a codebook is used. The eight most common words in *David Copperfield*, for example, are, in order, “the”, “I”, “and”, “to”, “of”, “a”, “in”, and “my”, together accounting for nearly 21 percent of the total words in the text. For this reason, most codebooks have been created with multiple code words to be used for the very common words in order to hide the frequencies with which they occur.

2.2.2. Word Boundaries. We remark that it has been customary with either substitution or transposition ciphers to leave out the spaces between words and run the text together. English, for example, only

Table 2.1. Three frequency distributions for English text

Cornell		Dickens		Darwin	
e	12.02	e	12.08	e	13.06
t	9.10	t	8.84	t	9.23
a	8.12	a	8.17	a	8.36
o	7.68	o	7.74	o	7.23
i	7.31	i	7.24	n	6.87
n	6.95	n	6.84	i	6.80
s	6.28	h	6.06	s	6.63
r	6.02	s	6.05	r	6.27
h	5.92	r	5.75	h	5.87
d	4.32	d	4.70	l	4.08
l	3.98	l	3.79	d	3.95
u	2.88	m	3.15	c	2.95
c	2.71	u	2.83	u	2.62
m	2.61	w	2.60	f	2.57
f	2.30	y	2.26	m	2.28
y	2.11	c	2.25	w	2.05
w	2.09	f	2.17	g	1.93
g	2.03	g	2.10	p	1.77
p	1.82	p	1.70	y	1.57
b	1.49	b	1.52	b	1.65
v	1.11	v	0.93	v	1.13
k	0.69	k	0.90	k	0.55
x	0.17	x	0.14	x	0.18
q	0.11	j	0.10	q	0.13
j	0.10	q	0.09	z	0.10
z	0.07	z	0.02	j	0.08

has two words of one letter, “a” and “I”, and relatively few words of two or of three letters. This makes guessing very much easier.¹²

2.2.3. Cribbing. Simple ciphers, if done badly, can be extremely insecure. The following is a version of a cipher the author was actually asked once by a law enforcement agency to decrypt. The letter was formatted as a letter, complete with punctuation and spaces between

¹In the 1992 movie “Sneakers” the cryptanalysis takes place on a computer screen, with blank spaces separating words. This was the cause of some serious derision among the various cripplies of my acquaintance.

²We certainly admit that there could appear in plaintext something like “the letter b” but these are infrequent.

words. The “collateral information” was that this was known to be a letter from the sender to a receiver with a known romantic connection.

```
pase zhic,
xqasta fchy mism u qhva dhj scp mism u kutt dhj s qhm.
qhva,
ksemis
```

It is not hard to crib this. How does one end a letter with a romantic connection? With the word “love”, of course, so we crib **qhva** to be **love**. That gives us guesses for two vowels, “o” and “e”. We can guess “u” and “s” to be “a” and “i” or the other way around. After that, it is easy, even with a message this short.

The lesson is that one cannot expect communications security if one doesn’t obscure information that isn’t part of the actual cipher system but that can be inferred, guessed, or cribbed.

2.2.4. Entropy. The extent to which a natural language has underlying patterns can be made mathematical, using the concept of *entropy* in information theory developed by Claude Shannon and described brilliantly in Hamming’s book [Ham86]. Assuming that we have “text” as a sequence of “symbols” (which we will take in this instance to be letters), the idea is this. We want a mathematical function that will measure the extent to which a new symbol provides more “information”. For example, in English, seeing a “u” follow a “q” provides relatively little information except for the fact that one seems to be reading an English word. Seeing something other than a “u” following a “q” does provide information, since it indicates that the word is probably not English.

2.2.4.1. Information. We will assume that we have an alphabet of symbols

$$\{s_1, \dots, s_k\}$$

each of which appears in text with fixed probabilities

$$p(s_1), \dots, p(s_k),$$

and we assume that these cover the space:

$$\sum_{i=1}^k p(s_i) = 1$$

We want to measure the amount of information $I(p)$, or surprise, in seeing a symbol s that occurs with probability p . We assume three properties of the function $I(p)$.

- (1) Information is always nonnegative, that is, $I(p) \geq 0$.
- (2) Information is additive for independent events, that is,

$$I(p_1 p_2) = I(p_1) + I(p_2).$$

- (3) $I(p)$ is a continuous function of p .

We can now determine what kinds of function $I(p)$ have these properties.

First, we notice that we must have

$$I(pp) = I(p^2) = I(p) + I(p) = 2I(p).$$

From this we extend to

$$I(p^3) = I(pp^2) = I(p) + I(p^2) = I(p) + 2I(p) = 3I(p).$$

and then to

$$I(p^n) = I(pp^{n-1}) = I(p) + I(p^{n-1}) = I(p) + (n-1)I(p) = nI(p).$$

Since $I(p)$ is continuous, we can rephrase this last as

$$I(p) = nI(p^{1/n}).$$

and then deduce

$$I(p^{m/n}) = (m/n)I(p).$$

This conclusion is that $I(p)$ for rational numbers behaves exactly as does a logarithm. Since we have assumed that $I(p)$ is continuous, we can extend from all rational numbers to all real numbers, and thus that

$$I(p) = r \log p.$$

Now, since p is in the range 0 to 1, we know that $\log p$ is negative, and thus that r must be negative in order for the first property to hold. Considering the second property, that $I(p)$ is additive, we have that

$$I(p_1 \dots p_m) = I(p_1) + \dots + I(p_m) = r(\log p_1 + \dots + \log p_m).$$

We can choose r to be anything we want without changing the behavior of the function $I(p)$, so there is no reason to consider a value of r other than -1 . We thus have

$$I(p) = -\log p = \log(1/p),$$

and this is the standard function used to measure the quantity of information.

2.2.4.2. Entropy. We can use the information function to provide a measure of the average information one gets when reading symbols from a fixed alphabet. If the symbols

$$\{s_1, \dots, s_k\}$$

from an alphabet S appear in text with fixed probabilities

$$p(s_1), \dots, p(s_k),$$

then one gets

$$p(s) \log(1/p(s))$$

units of information, on average, from the symbol s . Summing over all symbols, we have

$$H(S) = \sum_{i=1}^k p(s) \log(1/p)$$

as the average information conveyed by an average text over the alphabet S . We call this the *entropy* of the alphabet, or of text written using that alphabet.

2.2.4.3. Examples. Consider what happens when a fair coin is tossed, and let's imagine (since computing is done in a binary world) that an outcome of heads corresponds to a 1 bit and an outcome of tails corresponds to a 0. If the coin is fair, then 0 and 1 will appear with equal probability $1/2$. We get exactly the same information from the appearance of either of the possible outcomes. The entropy of this system is

$$H(S) = \sum_{i=1}^2 (1/2) \lg 2 = \lg 2 = 1$$

if we decide to use binary logarithms, as we quite often do in computing (a different choice of logarithms will only change the result by a fixed multiplicative factor).

Now consider instead a loaded coin in which heads will appear twice as often as tails. Thus 1 occurs with probabilities $2/3$ and 0 appears

with probabilities $1/3$. The entropy of this system is

$$\begin{aligned}
 H(S) &= (2/3) \lg(3/2) + (1/3) \lg(3/1) \\
 &= (2/3) \lg(3/2) + (1/3) \lg 3 \\
 &= (2/3) \lg 3 - (2/3) \lg 2 + (1/3) \lg 3 \\
 &= \lg 3 - (2/3) \lg 2 \\
 &\approx 1.585 - (2/3) \\
 &\approx 0.918
 \end{aligned}$$

We remind ourselves of the intuitive notion of entropy from physics: a measure of the randomness of the system. The entropy of the fair die is greater than that of the loaded die, because the outcomes of the fair die are more random and less biased than are the outcomes of the loaded die.

2.2.4.4. The Entropy of English. Using the frequencies from Table 2.1, we can compute the entropy of English. Using the Cornell frequencies, and a binary logarithm, we get about 2.898 bits of information per letter. If the letter frequency was uniform, the entropy of a 26-letter language would be about

$$H(S) = \lg 26 \approx 4.7$$

bits per letter. Thus, about 40 % of the letters used in English are redundant.³

2.3. Transposition Ciphers

In a substitution cipher, the original letters are replaced by different letters. In a transposition cipher, the letters remain the same but their ordering is changed.

2.3.1. Columnar Transpositions. Probably the simplest form of transposition is just to write the plaintext in the normal order across a page, but then to transmit as ciphertext the message letters read down in columns. For example, “A simple message like this sentence” could be written as

³Years prior to Shannon’s work on entropy, Mark Twain published his humorous piece “A Plan for the Improvement of Spelling in the English Language”, part of which was to combine letters with similar purpose and pronunciation; this would have increased the entropy, although we are unaware that a formal computation has ever been done.

```
asimxpl
emessxa
gelxike
thissex
nxtence
```

and then could be transmitted by reading down the columns:

```
aegtn smehx ielit msxse xsise pxkec laexe
```

where we have padded the message with “x” characters and then shown spaces (that would not be part of the transmitted message) in order to make it more readable in this text.

Variations on this theme have been used for millennia. The Spartans of ancient Greece used a *scytale*; by winding a paper strip around a rod of a fixed diameter, one could write the message across the rod, separating the individual letters by the circumference of the rod. A recipient not in possession of a rod of the same diameter would not be able to line up the letters as they had originally been written.

2.3.2. Double Transposition. Since ciphers such as Playfair and ADFGX can readily be broken by using statistics on letter digrams or letter frequencies. For this reason, many transposition ciphers were done as double transpositions, with the first obscuring the underlying plaintext and the second doing the randomization needed for security.

2.4. Playfair

Purportedly the first cipher system to encrypt two letters at a time was invented by Sir Charles Wheatstone (he of the eponymous bridge) and named for his friend Baron Playfair, who was a major proponent of the cipher. One lays out a table of letters, perhaps

d	u	n	c	a
b	e	l	f	g
h	i	k	m	o
p	q	r	s	t
v	w	x	y	z

starting with a keyword (in this case the author’s name), dropping letters if repeated, finishing with letters not in the keyword, and then conflating “i” with “j” to produce a square tableau.

Encryption now takes place as follows. Start with a message

this is the message

and break that into pairs of letters

th is is th em es sa ge

Three rules govern the production of ciphertext.

- (1) If the two letters of the pair lie in different rows and columns, they will form opposite corners of a rectangle, and the ciphertext pair is the letters on the other two corners. We will choose the corner letter that is in the same row as the plaintext letter.
- (2) If the two letters of the pair lie in the same row, shift each right one letter.
- (3) If the two letters of the pair lie in the same column, shift each down one letter.

Thus **th** becomes **po**, **is** becomes **mq**, **em** becomes **fi**, **es** becomes **fq**, **sa** becomes **tc**, **ge** becomes **bl**, and the ciphertext is

po mq mq fi fq tc bl

.

2.5. ADFGX

A substitution-transposition cipher that was used extensively by the Germans in World War I was called “ADFGX”. In its simplest version it is simply a digram-for-digram substitution. Given a tableau

	A	D	F	G	X
A	d	u	n	c	a
D	b	e	l	f	g
F	h	i	k	m	o
G	p	q	r	s	t
X	v	w	x	y	z

with a random choice for the 5×5 matrix of letters, one replaces each letter with the row-column pair where that letter is found. Our previous message,

this is the message

would be sent as the ciphertext

GX FA FD GG FD GG GX FA DD FG DD GG GG AX DX DD

More complicated versions of the cipher would then apply transpositions to the letters of the substitution ciphertext.

2.6. Cryptanalysis

2.6.1. Breaking a Substitution Cipher. Breaking a substitution cipher is largely a matter of statistics, and with computer assistance, the tedious parts need no longer be done by hand. A combination of brute force, a small amount of tree search and pruning of unlikely branches, and some guessing and cribbing using frequency counts of letters, bigrams, and such, and a simple substitution can be cracked almost immediately.

We remark that statistics work best when there is data on which to do statistics, and thus that longer messages are more susceptible to statistical attacks than are short messages. However, messages don't have to be that long to expose their frequency counts.

Let's take the Gettysburg Address as an example. The nine most common letters in Lincoln's address are listed, in Table 2.6.1, along with the nine most common letters, in order, from Table 2.1.

Lincoln	e	t	a	o	h	r	n	i	d
Cornell	e	t	a	o	i	n	s	r	h
Dickens	e	t	a	o	i	n	h	s	r
Darwin	e	t	a	o	n	i	s	r	h

The four most common letters match up, and they account for 42% of the letters in the Address. The next five account for almost another 32% of the total letters. We would expect that even if all $10! = 3628800$ different permutations were tried, it would be relatively easy to score the resulting letter sequences against English and prune the tree to something quite feasible. With more than 70% of the letters accounted for in the most common nine letters, it seems hard to believe that any reasonable attack would fail.

And we do point out that in this argument, the ability to use a computer is an enormous advantage. Human cryptanalysts are not going to try three million possibilities, but computers can do this quite readily. Prior to the computer era, and today for those who might do the daily newspaper cryptogram by hand, a great deal of good guesswork is needed. With computers and frequency counts, the time honored tradition of BFI⁴ makes simple substitution completely breakable.

⁴Brute force and ignorance

We point out here once again that having the text separated into words makes a brute force attack even easier. In the entire Brown corpus from the Natural Language Tool Kit [Nat], there are only 212 two-letter and 879 three-letter combinations, and many of these show up as chemical element or other abbreviations.

2.6.2. Breaking a Transposition Cipher. Breaking a transposition cipher is also largely a matter of statistics and some language guesswork. One example of breaking such a cipher is the World War I cipher in Appendix D.

2.7. The Vernam One-Time Pad

All but one cryptosystem, even when considering the modern ones, relies not on the ability to be perfectly secure but on the belief that it is computationally infeasible to decrypt a message. The general goal in enciphering a message is to make the text appear to be random. It is hard to be totally random, however, so both classic and modern cryptosystems use a pattern, or a function, that makes the text appear random. That pattern makes enciphering easier for humans, but also indicates to those attacking the encipherment that a pattern exists.

The only truly secure cryptosystem is a one-time pad. One version of a one-time pad would be essentially a Vigenère cipher that chooses the alphabet based on an infinite sequence of random numbers. The Vigenère cipher has 26 alphabets, but for convenience a keyword is used to determine which alphabet is used for any given letter. If the keyword is chosen from any of some hundreds of thousands of dictionary words, place names, names of people, etc., an apparent randomness results, but it is the finite length of the keyword that leads to repetition in the choice of alphabets and the likelihood that in a long message the same letter will be encrypted with the same alphabet. If that “keyword” were in fact randomly generated and of infinite length, the repetition, that leads to detecting the length, would not be present in the ciphertext.

The Vernam one-time pad[The] was invented at about the same time as the use of teletypes for transmission of messages. With the original teletype, letters were converted to 5-bit integers and transmitted as such, often using punched paper tape. One version of a Vernam one-time pad would have a companion tape with a random sequence of 5-bit integers, and the random bits are XOR-ed with the text bits to produce the ciphertext. The receiver, with an identical paper tape, would XOR again to produce the plaintext.

Security of the Vernam cipher is 100% guaranteed, as mentioned in [The], provided that

- there are only two copies of the key-tape;
- both sides of the communications link have the same key-tape;
- the key-tape is used only once;
- the key-tape is destroyed immediately after use;
- the key-tape contains truly random characters;
- the equipment is TEMPEST proof;
- the key tape was not compromised during transport.

All these criteria are necessary. In order for the tape to be genuinely random, there must be only the two copies of the tape, which must be identical and not intercepted in transmission. In order to prevent repetitions such as are used to break a Vigenère cipher, the tape must be used only once and then destroyed. In order for the ciphertext to be read, the two tapes must of course be identical and synchronized to start at the same place for the XOR process. TEMPEST-ing is the mechanism for preventing a third party from monitoring the electrical signals generated by a device such as a teletype or computer terminal, and both encryption and decryption processes must be proof against “listening in” by an adversary.

And finally, of course, in order to be a random XOR-ing that will not have the sort of repetition used in breaking a Vigenère cipher, the sequence really does need to be truly random. There are mechanisms for generating random numbers. It has been alleged that the British Lottery once had a Geiger counter on the roof of its building, recording the random pattern of cosmic rays hitting the counter. Many lottery systems really do generate random results with physical ping-pong balls that are carefully checked to be identical in size and weight. Random numbers have been generated from a noisy diode.

We will discuss later the generation of pseudo-random numbers using a periodic function whose period is so long as to appear almost random. Much of public key cryptography relies on the fact that functions exist to generate numbers that satisfy randomness tests but can be generated deterministically with a function.

Groups, Rings, Fields

We present here the basic language of abstract algebra. Proofs will for the most part be left to later, or not done at all, but we provide some examples so that the concepts can be made concrete.

3.1. Groups

Definition 3.1. A *group* $G = (S, *)$ is a set S of elements together with a binary operation

$$* : S \times S \rightarrow S$$

such that

- the operation $*$ is *associative*, that is,

$$(a * b) * c = a * (b * c)$$

for all $a, b, c \in S$;

- there is an *identity* element e such that for all $a \in S$, we have $a * e = e * a = a$;
- every element $a \in S$ has an *inverse* a^{-1} for which $a * a^{-1} = a^{-1} * a = e$.

Definition 3.2. We say a group G is *abelian* (or *commutative*) if for all pairs $a, b \in S$ we have $a * b = b * a$.

When we insist on being formal, we will write the group as

$$G = (S, *)$$

but much of the time we will just write S and assume that the group operation is known.

Sometimes we speak of the group operation as “multiplication” and sometimes we speak of the group operation as “addition”. If we are thinking of the operation as multiplication, we will write $a * b$ for the operation, a^{-1} for the inverse, and 1 for the identity. If we are thinking of the operation as addition, we will write $a + b$ for the operation, $-a$ for the inverse, and 0 for the identity.

Example 3.3. The classic example of a group would be the integers \mathbb{Z} under addition. This is clearly an abelian group, with zero as the identity, and $-n$ the inverse for any integer n .

Example 3.4. Another useful example of a group would be the positive integers modulo 16, say, under addition. Modular arithmetic will be dealt with in greater detail in the next section. For the moment, we simply point out that, for integers a and b , both less than n , taken modulo n , we have that the “sum” of a and b is $a + b$ if this sum is less than n , and is $a + b - n$ if this sum is greater than or equal to n . Thus, for example, 11 plus 9 taken modulo 16 is

$$11 + 9 = 20 \equiv 20 - 16 = 4.$$

Taking things using addition modulo 16, the integers

$$\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15\}$$

clearly form an abelian group, with zero as the identity, and $16 - n$ the inverse for any integer n in the range 0 through 15 inclusive.

Definition 3.5. A *subgroup* of a group G is a group $G' = (S', *)$ such that $S' \subset S$ as a set of elements; the identity $1_{S'}$ of the subgroup is the same as the identity 1_S of the group $G = (S, *)$, and the inverse of any element in the subgroup is the same as the inverse of that element in $G = (S, *)$.

Example 3.6. A classic example of a subgroup would be the even integers under addition, or more generally the integers divisible by any fixed integer n . The sum of two even integers is an even integer, so that closure is satisfied, and all the other requirements are inherited from ordinary addition of integers.

Example 3.7. Another example would be the subgroup of multiples of 4 in the group of integers modulo 16. These integers would be

$$\{0, 4, 8, 12\}$$

Definition 3.8. A group $G = (S, *)$ is said to be *cyclic* if there is a *generator* g such that for every element $a \in S$ there is an integer power k such that $a = g^k$.

This is the definition in multiplicative notation. In additive notation we would say that there is a generator g such that for every element a there is an integer multiple n such that $a = ng$. Continuing with our classic example, we observe that the integers under addition \mathbb{Z} are cyclic with the generator 1, the even integers similarly cyclic with the generator 2, and so forth.

Proposition 3.9. Every subgroup of a cyclic group is cyclic.

Proof. Let S' be the set of elements of G that form the subgroup. We will be a little sloppy here and refer to “the group S' ” just by its elements and not as a pair with the operation listed explicitly. We are going to prove this using material that won’t appear in these notes until the chapter on congruences. If G is cyclic, and we write G as a multiplicative group, then we have a generator g and we can refer to every element of the group using the exponent of g for that element. That is, we can write every element of the group as

$$\{g^0, g^1, g^2, \dots, \}$$

So let h be the element in S' that is $h = g^k$ for the least nonnegative k . We claim that $S' = \{h^n | n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. Consider any element $r \in S'$. We must have an s such that $r = g^s$. By the division algorithm for integers (which we will get to later), we can write

$$s = q \cdot k + r$$

with r nonnegative and less than k .

Now, since we have $g^s \in S$, and we have $g^k \in S$, we must have $g^s * g^{-qk} = g^r \in S$. Thus $r = 0$; the existence of a nonnegative r would contradict our choice of k as the least nonnegative exponent of an element in the subgroup.

So every element in S can be written as a power of h , which means that the subgroup S' is in fact cyclic. \square

Example 3.10. In our example of the subgroup

$$\{0, 4, 8, 12\}$$

we note that every element in the group is generated by multiples of 4, which is 4 times the generator of the entire group.

Definition 3.11. The *order* of an element a in a group G is the least integer k such that (written multiplicatively) we have $a^k = 1$. If no such integer exists, then the element is said to have *infinite order*.

We note that if the group is finite, then the order of an element is well-defined. Since the group is finite, the sequence of elements (written multiplicatively)

$$g, g^2, g^3, \dots, g^k, \dots$$

must repeat. That is, there are exponents j and k such that $g^j = g^k$. But then we have

$$1 = g^{j-i} = g^{k-i}.$$

If we have chosen i and j to be the least integers such that $g^j = g^i$, then $k - i$ is the order of the element g .

Definition 3.12. The *order* of a group G is $|S|$, the cardinality of the set S .

We note that there are groups of finite order, such as the integers modulo 16, of order 16, and groups of infinite order, such as the integers.

Theorem 3.13 (Lagrange). *The order of any element of a finite group G divides the order of the group.*

Proof. Writing the group multiplicatively, choose an element g of G and compute its powers. We have that

$$\{1, g, g^2, \dots, g^{k-1}\}$$

is a subgroup S of k elements. If this exhausts the set of elements in the group, then we are done.

If not, choose any element a in G that is not in S , and consider

$$A = \{a, ag, ag^2, \dots, ag^{k-1}\}.$$

None of these are elements in S , because if it were the case that $ag^i = g^j$, then we would have $a = g^{j-i} \in S$, contrary to our choice of a .

Thus $S \cup A$ is a set of $2k$ elements in G . If this is all of G , we are done.

If not, choose any element b in G that is not in S or in A , and consider $B = \{b, bg, bg^2, \dots, bg^{k-1}\}$. None of these are elements in S or in A . If it were the case that $bg^i = g^j$, then we would have $b = g^{j-i} \in S$, contrary to our choice of a . If it were the case that $bg^i = ag^j$, then we would have $b = ag^{j-i} \in A$, contrary to our choice of a .

And so forth. Each time we go out to find another element not yet found, we actually add k elements into our set of elements in G . Since we are adding k elements at a time, it must be the case that when we have accounted for all the elements in the group, we have a total of km elements, for some m . Thus the order the group is km and is clearly divisible by k .

□

Corollary 3.14 (Lagrange). If G is a group with n elements, and we write G as a multiplicative group, then for any element $a \in G$ we have a^n equal to the identity of the group.

Proof. For any element $a \in G$, we know that a^k , for some k that is the order of a , is the identity. We can thus write

$$a^n = (a^k)^{k/n} = 1^{k/n} = 1,$$

which proves the corollary. □

Definition 3.15. The *exponent* of a group G is the least integer k such that $a^k = 1$ for all elements $a \in G$.

3.2. Rings

Definition 3.16. A *ring* is a set R with two binary operations, that we shall call multiplication (\times) and addition ($+$), such that

- $(R, +)$ is an abelian group with identity 0;
- multiplication is associative, that is,

$$(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$$

for all $a, b, c \in R$;

- multiplication distributes over addition, that is,

$$a \times (b + c) = (a \times b) + (a \times c)$$

and

$$(a + b) \times c = (a \times c) + (b \times c)$$

for all $a, b, c \in R$;

Definition 3.17. A *multiplicative identity* in a ring $(R, +, \times)$ is a nonzero element 1 such that $1 \times a = a \times 1 = a$ for all $a \in R$.

Definition 3.18. A ring is said to be *commutative* if the multiplication operation is commutative, that is, if

$$r \times s = s \times r$$

for all $r, s \in R$.

Example 3.19. Continuing with our classic example, we notice that the integers form a ring under the usual addition and multiplication. This is a commutative ring with the additive identity 0 and the multiplicative identity 1.

3.3. Fields

We have now done all the preliminaries, and it remains to finish off the algebraic background. We have described ordinary arithmetic in an abstract way, with addition, multiplication, subtraction (adding an inverse), commutivity, and distribution.

The one thing we cannot do in the integers is divide and still stay within the set of integers. There is an additive inverse for every integer, but the only integers with a multiplicative inverse are 1 and -1 , each of which is its own inverse.

To finish our description of the general properties of arithmetic, we need to extend our set to include all the rational numbers.

Definition 3.20. A *field* is a ring $(R, +, \times)$ for which multiplication is commutative and every nonzero element in R has an inverse under multiplication. That is, a field is a ring that is a group under addition and for which the elements other than the additive identity form a group under multiplication.

With this, we have just described the rational numbers \mathbb{Q} . Under addition, the integers form a group. Under addition and multiplication, the integers form a ring. Extending the set to include all rational numbers, we get a field.

We will mostly be dealing with finite fields that come from the integers modulo prime numbers p or from polynomials, with coefficients taken modulo 2, with the polynomials taken modulo some polynomial $f(x)$. Finite fields are often written as fields $GF(p)$ in the former case, or $GF(2^n)$ in the latter case, where n is the degree of $f(x)$. The notation GF is short for “Galois Field” in tribute to the celebrated French mathematician Évariste Galois.

3.4. Examples and Expansions

One of the great advantages of working with the mathematics that is the underpinning of cryptography is that it is very concrete. There are examples.

3.4.1. Arithmetic modulo prime numbers. The classic example of a field is the set of rational numbers. We will also have great use to be made of the fields of integers modulo prime numbers. We will prove these things later, but will use these examples as concrete things to fix the notions we will be using.

Theorem 3.21. *Let p be a prime number. The integers modulo p , written \mathbb{Z}_p , form a finite field under the usual modular addition and multiplication. Further, the group of integers modulo p is a cyclic group under multiplication.*

Definition 3.22. Any generator of the multiplicative group of integers modulo a prime number p is referred to as a *primitive root* modulo p .

Theorem 3.23. *An integer n has a primitive root if and only if $n = 2, 4, p^k, 2p^k$, for odd primes p .*

Finding a primitive root is a big deal, and this is one instance in which theory diverges from practice. The current best theorem without qualifications says that the smallest primitive root modulo a prime p is only guaranteed to be smaller than about $p^{1/4}$. With qualifications, Victor Shoup has shown [Sho92] that, under the assumption of the Generalized Riemann Hypothesis (which of course pretty much everyone believes to be true), the smallest primitive root modulo a prime p is less than $\log^6 p$.

In practice, we often don't do anything much more sophisticated than a naive search. The integers modulo p are a single cycle under multiplication, so they form a set

$$\{1, 2 = g^{a_1}, 3 = g^{a_2}, \dots\}$$

It turns out there is a fast and simple way to determine if the exponent a_i is even, and if the exponent is even, then the integer cannot be a primitive root because its powers would only be the residues of even exponent. So the usual practical approach to finding a primitive root is just to start with 2, 3, 5, etc., check that the exponent is not even, and if not, to check by brute force whether by powering up one gets the identity any earlier than the power $p - 1$.

It is often the case in number theory that asymptotic results that one can prove are achieved very slowly, so the results of computations on relatively small numbers can be misleading. Nonetheless, we can remark that for the 78497 odd primes less than one million, we have 2, 3, 5, 6, and 7 occurring as least primitive roots for a total of 86.51% of the time, and only 19 primes have a least primitive root larger than 50. Among the 487 primes between 10^9 and $10^9 + 10000$, 85.6% have 2, 3, 5, 6, or 7 as the least primitive root.

We will have much to say in a moment about *congruence arithmetic* modulo p , written, for example, as $7 \times 3 = 21 \equiv 2 \pmod{19}$.

For example, for $p = 11$, we observe that 7 is a primitive root, with

$$\begin{aligned} 7^1 &= 7, \\ 7^2 &\equiv 49 \equiv 5, \\ 7^3 &\equiv 35 \equiv 2, \\ 7^4 &\equiv 14 \equiv 3, \\ 7^5 &\equiv 21 \equiv 10, \\ 7^6 &\equiv 70 \equiv 4, \\ 7^7 &\equiv 28 \equiv 6, \\ 7^8 &\equiv 42 \equiv 9, \\ 7^9 &\equiv 63 \equiv 8, \\ 7^{10} &\equiv 56 \equiv 1 \end{aligned}$$

We observe that the order of the multiplicative group modulo a prime p is $p - 1$ and that if we have a primitive root we can do the multiplication by adding exponents modulo $p - 1$, that is,

$$24 = 8 \times 3 \equiv 7^9 \times 7^4 \equiv 7^{13} \equiv 7^3 \equiv 2 \pmod{11}$$

This will be very important in cryptography. The use of the exponents in this way is called the *index calculus*. The unraveling of the index calculus is called the *discrete logarithm problem*. That is, if we are given a cyclic group G , a group generator g , and a random element $a \in G$, the discrete logarithm problem in G is to determine the exponent k such $g^k = a$.

We note that the sequence of powers of 7 modulo 11 appears reasonably random:

$$5, 2, 3, 10, 4, 6, 9, 8, 1$$

The discrete logarithm problem is important in cryptography because there are groups, such as the integers modulo large primes, for which this apparent randomness can be exploited: knowing the exponent of a primitive root, it is computationally easy to compute the power, but computationally difficult to do the discrete log problem that reverses that exponentiation.

We also note that any of the elements $7^1, 7^3, 7^7, 7^9$, are primitive roots. As can be seen, multiplication of integers modulo p can be written as multiplication of powers of a primitive root. And since

$$a^m \cdot a^n = a^{m+n}$$

by the rules of exponents, the use of primitive roots transforms a multiplication problem modulo p into a problem of addition of exponents modulo $p - 1$. In our example, we notice that generating a subcycle with 7^2 means that get a cycle of elements

$$7^2, 7^4, 7^6, 7^8,$$

and then we short-cycle because $7^{10} \equiv 1$. Similarly, generating a subcycle with 7^4 means that get a cycle of elements

$$7^4, 7^8, 7^{12} \equiv 7^2, 7^6,$$

and then we short-cycle because $7^{10} \equiv 1$. The fact that $7^1, 7^3, 7^7, 7^9$, are primitive roots is because their exponents are relatively prime to 10.

Hold this thought; we will do a lot more of this later. In fact, most of the math behind cryptography is essentially this kind of a multiplication table.

3.4.2. Arithmetic modulo composite numbers. Arithmetic modulo a prime results in a field. Arithmetic modulo a composite number results in a ring, not a field, because not every element has a multiplicative inverse. Elements that do not have inverses are called *zero divisors*. For example, let's look at Table 3.1, of multiplication modulo 15.

We observe that the zero divisors are those integers with factors of 3 or 5 in them, and that if we look only at the eight integers 1, 2, 4, 7, 8, 11, 13, and 14, that have no factors of 3 or 5, then we get a multiplication table without zero divisors, as in Tables 3.2 and 3.3:

More to the point, we observe that the multiplication modulo $15 = 3 \times 5$ can be done as the product of a 2-cycle and a 4-cycle. That is, it's the product of a $3 - 1 = 2$ -cycle and a $5 - 1 = 4$ -cycle, where the 3 and

Table 3.1. Multiplication table modulo 15

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
2	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	1	3	5	7	9	11	13
3	3	6	9	12	0	3	6	9	12	0	3	6	9	12
4	4	8	12	1	5	9	13	2	6	10	14	3	7	11
5	5	10	0	5	10	0	5	10	0	5	10	0	5	10
6	6	12	3	9	0	6	12	3	9	0	6	12	3	9
7	7	14	6	13	5	12	4	11	3	10	2	9	1	8
8	8	1	9	2	10	3	11	4	12	5	13	6	14	7
9	9	3	12	6	0	9	3	12	6	0	9	3	12	6
10	10	5	0	10	5	0	10	5	0	10	5	0	10	5
11	11	7	3	14	10	6	2	13	9	5	1	12	8	4
12	12	9	6	3	0	12	9	6	3	0	12	9	6	3
13	13	11	9	7	5	3	1	14	12	10	8	6	4	2
14	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1

Table 3.2. Multiplication mod 15, without zero divisors

	1	2	4	7	8	11	13	14
1	1	2	4	7	8	11	13	14
2	2	4	8	14	1	7	11	13
4	4	8	1	13	2	14	7	11
7	7	14	13	4	11	2	1	8
8	8	1	2	11	4	13	14	7
11	11	7	14	2	13	1	8	4
13	13	11	7	1	12	6	4	2
14	14	13	11	8	7	4	2	1

the 5 are exactly the primes 3 and 5 that show up in the factoring of 15. The arithmetic modulo 15 can be written as $11^i \times 2^j$, with $i = 0, 1$ and $j = 0, 1, 2, 3$. In general, if $n = p \cdot q$ with p and q prime numbers (to be defined in a moment), then the multiplication modulo n can be written as the product of an element of order $p - 1$ and an element of order $q - 1$. We will use this later on, and we rearrange the multiplication table modulo 15 accordingly as Table 3.3.

We can also view this structure in an abstract way. Consider the group generated by concatenating symbols a and b under the constraint that $ab = ba$, and $1a = a1 = a$, and $1b = b1 = b$, and $aa = 1$ and

Table 3.3. Multiplication mod 15, reordered

	1	2	4	8	11	7	14	13
1	1	2	4	8	11	7	14	13
2	2	4	8	1	7	14	13	11
4	4	8	1	2	14	13	11	7
8	8	1	2	4	13	11	7	14
11	11	7	14	13	1	2	4	8
7	7	14	13	11	2	4	8	1
14	14	13	11	7	4	8	1	2
13	13	11	7	14	8	1	2	4

$bbbb = 1$. That is, we have elements

1
 a
 b
 bb
 bbb
 ab
 abb
 $abbb$

That is, we have the *direct product*

$$\{1, a\} \times \{1, b, bb, bbb\}$$

If we now substitute $a = 11$ (or 7 or 13 or 14) and $b = 2$ (or 8), this abstract group is the same group as the group of integers modulo 15 under multiplication.

We can rewrite Table 3.3 more abstractly as Table 3.4 .

Definition 3.24. A *homomorphism* of a group (G, \circ_G) into a group (H, \circ_H) is a mapping $f : G \rightarrow H$ such that if $g_1 \circ_G g_2 = g_3$ for any two elements g_1, g_2 in the group G , then $f(g_1) \circ_H f(g_2) = f(g_3)$ in the group H . The homomorphism is an *isomorphism* if the mapping f is one-to-one and onto.

A homomorphism of groups is thus a mapping that preserves the group operation, and the mapping is an isomorphism if it is 1-1 and onto. We note several examples from what we have covered already.

Table 3.4. Multiplication mod 15, abstracted

	1	b	b^2	b^3	a	ab	ab^2	ab^3
1	1	b	b^2	b^3	a	ab	ab^2	ab^3
b	b	b^2	b^3	1	ab	ab^2	ab^3	a
b^2	b^2	b^3	1	b	ab^2	ab^3	a	ab
b^3	b^3	1	b	b^2	ab^3	a	ab	ab^2
a	a	ab	ab^2	ab^3	1	b	b^2	b^3
ab	ab	ab^2	ab^3	a	b	b^2	b^3	1
ab^2	ab^2	ab^3	a	ab	b^2	b^3	1	b
ab^3	ab^3	a	ab	ab^2	b^3	1	b	b^2

- (1) Let G be the group of integers under addition, and let $H = \{1, -1\}$ under multiplication, with even integers mapping to 1 and odd integers mapping to -1 . This is a homomorphism.
- (2) Let G be the integers under addition modulo a composite integer n , p a prime divisor of n , and H be the integers under addition modulo p . Then G mapping to H by $f(m) = m \pmod{p}$ is a homomorphism.
- (3) One of the most important isomorphisms we will use is the following. Let G be a cyclic group of n elements, written multiplicatively, with a generator g , so the set

$$\{g^0, g^1, \dots, g^{n-1}\}$$

lists all the group elements. Let H be the group $\{0, 1, \dots, n-1\}$ under addition modulo n . Then $f : G \rightarrow H$ defined by $f(g^k) = k$ is an isomorphism of groups.

- (4) Let $n = pq$ for primes p and q , and let G be the integers modulo n that are relatively prime to both p and q , under multiplication. Let $H = \{(r, s) : r = 1, \dots, p-1, s = 1, \dots, q-1\}$, and define the group operation on H to be

$$(r, s) \circ_H (t, u) = (rt \pmod{p}, su \pmod{q})$$

This is an isomorphism of G and H .

3.4.3. The modular group. Perhaps the most useful examples of noncommutative groups would be any number of instances of groups of matrices. We will have occasion later to use the *modular group* Γ of all matrices

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \delta \end{pmatrix}$$

with $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \in \mathbb{Z}$ and determinant $\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma = +1$. Matrix multiplication is not (usually) commutative, but we know that Γ is a group because matrix operations on integer coefficients result in integer coefficients of the product, and because determinants multiply, so that the product of two such matrices also has integer coefficients and determinant $+1$.

We will see later that Γ is the *free product* of matrices

$$S = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$T = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

where S is of infinite order and

$$T^4 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

3.4.4. Finite fields of characteristic 2. A field is said to have *characteristic* n , for n an integer, if it is the case that $na = 0$ for all a in the field. The field of integers modulo a prime p , described in §(3.4.1), has exactly p elements and is of characteristic p . We will see later in Chapter 6 that for any prime p and integer k , one can construct finite fields, of characteristic p , of p^k elements. We will make use of this for characteristic 2, since that involves binary arithmetic that can be done in computer hardware in especially efficient ways. The curious reader should consult the classic book on this subject by Lidl and Niederreiter [LN97].

3.5. Exercises

- (1) Consider the group of non-zero integers modulo 11 under multiplication. What is the order of the group?
- (2) Consider the non-zero integers modulo 11 under multiplication. What is the largest order of any element in the group?
- (3) Show that for any prime number p , all multiplicative groups G of order p are isomorphic to one another.
- (4) Show that there are exactly two non-isomorphic groups of order 4, and they are both abelian. One of these is the cyclic group

$$G = \{1, a, a^2, a^3\}$$

for some generator a such that a^4 is the identity, and the other is the abelian *Klein-4 group*

$$H = \{1, a, b, ab\}$$

for which $a^2 = b^2 = (ab)^2$ is the identity.

(5) Show that any cyclic group is abelian.

(6)

(7)

(8)

(9)

(10)

(11)

(12)

(13)

Divisibility, Congruences, and Modular Arithmetic

In this chapter we present the basics of modular arithmetic.

4.1. Divisibility

We operate in this chapter on the assumption, which may not always be explicitly stated, that everything is an integer.

Definition 4.1. We say that an integer a *divides* an integer b , and write $a|b$, if there is a third integer d such that $b = ad$. We call such an a a *divisor* or *factor* of b . If a is a divisor of integers b and c , then we say that a is a *common divisor* of b and c . If we have $a|c$ and $b|c$, then we call c a *common multiple* of a and b .

Theorem 4.2.

- (1) for all c , $a|b$ implies that $a|bc$;
- (2) if $a|b$ and $b|c$, then $a|c$;
- (3) for all integers x and y , if $a|b$ and $a|c$, then $a|(bx + cy)$;
- (4) if $a|b$ and $b|a$, then $a = \pm b$;
- (5) if $a|b$ and both $a > 0$ and $b > 0$, then $a \leq b$

Proof.

- (1) If $a|b$, then there is a d such that $b = ad$. For all c , then, we have $bc = adc$, and dc is the multiplier that satisfies the condition of the definition of “divides”.
- (2) If $b = ad_1$ and $c = bd_2$ for integers d_1, d_2 , then $c = ad_1d_2 = a(d_1d_2)$ and we again have satisfied the condition for “divides”.
- (3) If $b = ad_1$ and $c = ad_2$ for integers d_1, d_2 , then for all $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have

$$bx + cy = ad_1x + ad_2y = a(d_1x + d_2y)$$
 and again we have satisfied the condition.
- (4) If $b = ad_1$ and $a = bd_2$ for integers d_1, d_2 , then we have $b = ad_1 = bd_1d_2$ and thus $d_1d_2 = 1$. This can only hold if $d_1 = d_2 = +1$ or $d_1 = d_2 = -1$.
- (5) If $b = ad$, and these are positive, then the only possible values for b are $a, 2a, 3a, \dots$, all of which are larger than a except the first, which is equal.

□

Definition 4.3 (The Division Algorithm). Given two elements $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, the *division algorithm* is the process by which we find integers q and r , the *quotient* and *remainder*, with $0 \leq r < a$, such that

$$b = qa + r$$

- (1) Among the finitely many values $r = b - qa$, for $|q| \leq |b|$, choose the nonnegative value of least magnitude.
- (2) Return r and $q = (b - r)/a$.

Theorem 4.4. Given integers a and $b \neq 0$, the division algorithm returns values q and r such that $b = qa + r$ and $0 \leq r < |a|$.

Theorem 4.5. There are only finitely many divisors of any integer a .

Definition 4.6. For a and b integers not both zero, the largest common divisor of a and b is called the *greatest common divisor*, written $\gcd(a, b)$. The smallest common multiple of a and b is called the *least common multiple*, written $\text{lcm}(a, b)$.

Remark 4.7. The \gcd is frequently written just (a, b) and the lcm is frequently written just $[a, b]$. There are too many things without sufficient labelling, however, so we will not write them that way but will write them as in the definition.

Theorem 4.8. Given a and b not both zero, the values of $\gcd(a, b)$ and $\text{lcm}(a, b)$ are unique.

Theorem 4.9. *The $\gcd(a, b)$ is the least positive value of $ax + by$ as x and y run through all integers.*

Proof. This is a useful constructive proof, so we'll do it.

First off, let $g = \gcd(a, b)$. We then have $g|(ax + by)$ for all x and y by Theorem 4.2 part 3.

Let's let $\ell = ax_0 + by_0$ be the least positive value of $ax + by$ as x and y run through all the integers. Since g divides all such values, we have that $g|\ell$. Since both g and ℓ are positive, we know there is an integer $k \geq 1$ such that $\ell = gk$. But if $k > 1$, then g is strictly less than ℓ , which is contrary to our assumption. So it has to be that $k = 1$ and $g = \ell$. \square

Remark 4.10. Note that the preceding theorem says that if $g = \gcd(a, b)$, then we can find x_0 and y_0 such that $g = ax_0 + by_0$. This is a very big deal.

Remark 4.11. Note that if a divides b , then $\gcd(a, b) = a$ and is not zero, because we have defined the gcd to be positive and not nonnegative.

Theorem 4.12. *If $g = \gcd(a, b)$, then g divides every common divisor of a and b .*

Theorem 4.13. *Assume that a and b are both nonzero.*

- (1) *If $m > 0$, then $\gcd(ma, mb) = m \cdot \gcd(a, b)$.*
- (2) *If $m > 0$, then $\text{lcm}(ma, mb) = m \cdot \text{lcm}(a, b)$.*
- (3) *If $d > 0$, $d|a$, and $d|b$, then $\gcd(a, b) = d \gcd(a/d, b/d)$.*
- (4) *If $g = \gcd(a, b)$, then $\gcd(a/g, b/g) = 1$.*
- (5) $\gcd(a, b) = \gcd(b, a)$.
- (6) $\text{lcm}(a, b) = \text{lcm}(b, a)$.
- (7) $\gcd(a, -b) = \gcd(a, b)$.
- (8) $\text{lcm}(a, -b) = \text{lcm}(a, b)$.
- (9) $\gcd(a, b + xa) = \gcd(a, b)$ for all integers x .
- (10) $\gcd(a, 0) = \gcd(0, a) = \gcd(a, a) = \text{lcm}(a, a) = |a|$.
- (11) $\gcd(a, b, c) = \gcd(a, \gcd(b, c))$.

Definition 4.14. If $\gcd(a, b) = 1$, then we say that a and b are *relatively prime* or *prime to one another*.

Theorem 4.15. *If $c|ab$, and if $\gcd(b, c) = 1$, then $c|a$.*

4.2. The Euclidean Algorithm

The Euclidean algorithm is perhaps the oldest algorithm on the planet. Certainly it is likely the oldest algorithm still being used in its original form. The naive version here is presented almost exactly as in Euclid's *Elements*.

Algorithm 4.1 Naive algorithm to calculate $g = \gcd(a, b)$

Require: $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, not both zero

$r_{-1} \leftarrow a$

$r_0 = b$

$j = 0$

while $r_j \neq 0$ **do**

$j \leftarrow j + 1$

 Apply the division algorithm to obtain q_j and r_j : $r_{j-2} = q_j r_{j-1} + r_j$

end while

Output $g = r_{j-1}$

4.2.1. The Naive Euclidean Algorithm.

Example 4.16. Let's compute the gcd of 366 and 252.

$$\begin{array}{llll}
 r_{-1} & = & 366 & \\
 r_0 & = & 252 & \\
 j & = & 0 & \\
 j & = & 1 & \\
 q_1 & = & 1 & r_1 = 114 \quad 366 = 1 \cdot 252 + 114 \\
 j & = & 2 & \\
 q_2 & = & 2 & r_2 = 24 \quad 252 = 2 \cdot 114 + 24 \\
 j & = & 3 & \\
 q_3 & = & 4 & r_3 = 18 \quad 114 = 4 \cdot 24 + 18 \\
 j & = & 4 & \\
 q_4 & = & 1 & r_4 = 6 \quad 24 = 1 \cdot 18 + 6 \\
 j & = & 5 & \\
 q_5 & = & 3 & r_5 = 0 \quad 18 = 3 \cdot 6 + 0
 \end{array}$$

We output $r_4 = 6$ as the gcd.

Remark 4.17. We observe that the algorithm must terminate, because the division algorithm produces a smaller, nonnegative, value of r_j with each step, so the process cannot continue forever.

Remark 4.18. We observe that the worst case running time of this version of the Euclidean algorithm occurs when a and b are successive Fibonacci numbers, because in that case all the quotients are 1 and the number of steps is maximized.

4.2.2. The Extended Euclidean Algorithm. Our example above deserves a more explicit elucidation. The naive Euclidean algorithm will find the greatest common divisor g of integers a and b . The extended algorithm will find values x and y such that $ax + by = g$, and it requires only that we keep track of the necessary coefficients. If we compute in sequence, using the division algorithm,

$$\begin{aligned} a &= r_{-1} \\ b &= r_0 \\ r_{-1} &= r_0 q_1 + r_1 \\ r_0 &= r_1 q_2 + r_2 \\ r_1 &= r_2 q_3 + r_3 \\ r_2 &= r_3 q_4 + r_4 \end{aligned}$$

This allows us to keep track of how to compute r_i from the original values of a and b :

$$\begin{aligned} r_1 &= a - q_1 b \\ r_2 &= b - q_2 r_1 = b - q_2(a - q_1 b) = (q_1 q_2 + 1)b - q_2 a \\ r_3 &= r_1 - q_3 r_2 = a - q_1 b - q_3((q_1 q_2 + 1)b - q_2 a) \\ &= (q_2 q_3 + 1)a - (q_1 q_2 q_3 + q_3 + q_1 + 1)b \end{aligned}$$

and so forth. The algebra gets ugly, but done recursively as a computer program, each step is straightforward. Each of the remainders in the Euclidean algorithm can be expressed as an integer linear combination of the original a and b . For our example above, we compute

$$\begin{aligned} 114 &= 366 - 252 \\ 24 &= 3 \cdot 252 - 2 \cdot 366 \\ 18 &= 9 \cdot 366 - 13 \cdot 252 \\ 6 &= 16 \cdot 252 - 11 \cdot 366 \end{aligned}$$

This leads us to a hugely important fact.

Theorem 4.19. *Let x_0 and y_0 be any result obtained from the extended Euclidean algorithm to determine*

$$ax_0 + by_0 = \gcd(a, b)$$

Then the set of all solutions of $ax + by = \gcd(a, b)$ is exactly the set

$$(x, y) = (x_0 + \lambda b, y_0 - \lambda a)$$

for $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}$.

4.2.3. The Binary Euclidean Algorithm. The naive version of Euclid requires division, which is on a computer very much the slowest of all arithmetic operations. Even in ancient days¹, the relative cost of addition versus multiplication versus division was on the order of one to five or one to ten². On modern computers, since the advent of RISC architectures in the 1980s, integer division can take as many as 100 individual machine instructions. This cost is somewhat mitigated by the long pipelines on modern CPUs, but the cost of integer division is still very high. This is to some extent made even worse by the fact that much attention is paid to floating point arithmetic, in hopes of improving the performance of scientific computing, but little attention is paid to integer arithmetic, for which cryptography is almost the only real purpose.

We observe three things:

- (1) If a and b are both odd, then $\gcd(2^i a, 2^j b) = 2^{\min(i, j)} \gcd(a, b)$;
- (2) If a and b are both odd, then $b - a$ is even;
- (3) $\gcd(a, b) = \gcd(a, b - a)$.

Our binary gcd algorithm is thus the following.

The algorithm, briefly, is this. We know that the gcd of a and b is the smaller power of 2 dividing a and b times the gcd of the odd parts of a and b . We thus first clear off the powers of 2, which in binary are the rightmost zero bits. We then repeatedly subtract the smaller from the larger. Since the difference of two odd numbers is even, we know we can shift off at least one zero bit, and then repeat. When we subtract to get zero, then the positive value of a_s is the odd part of the gcd.

What is significant is that this algorithm requires no multiplication and no division. It uses only the addition, bit test, and subtraction instructions, which are about the fastest on any computer.

¹The 1970s?

²On the IBM System 370 Model 158 of the early 1970s, for example, integer multiplication cost 6.5 times as much as integer addition, and integer division cost 47 times as much, with division thus about 7 times the cost of multiplication.

Algorithm 4.2 Binary algorithm to calculate $g = \gcd(a, b)$

Require: $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, not both zero

$a_s \leftarrow a$ shifted (in binary) i places until the rightmost bit of a_s is a 1

$b_s \leftarrow b$ shifted (in binary) j places until the rightmost bit of b_s is a 1

Note that $g = 2^{\min(i,j)} \gcd(a_s, b_s)$

while a_s and b_s are both nonzero **do**

if $a_s > b_s$ **then**

 exchange a_s and b_s

end if

$b_s \leftarrow b_s - a_s$

$b_s \leftarrow b_s$ shifted (in binary) until the rightmost bit of b_s is a 1

end while

Output $g = 2^{\min(i,j)} a_s$

The disadvantage of this algorithm on 64-bit integers is that we would have to iterate the loop many times; the pathological worst cases would be those for which every time we subtract we get only one zero bit to shift off from the difference. The potential for that many loop iterations would have to be balanced against the relative costs of the machine instructions used inside the loop.

4.2.4. The Subtract-Three-Times Euclidean Algorithm. Paul Levy [Knu81] showed that for random integers a and b of the same maximum bit length, the quotient a/b was 1 about 41.5% of the time, 2 about 17.0% of the time, and 3 about 9.3% of the time, and thus was 1, 2, or 3 just over two-thirds of the time. This has led to a hybrid algorithm in which one subtracts the smaller of a or b until the result is negative, or up to four times. In about 2/3 of the cases, then, the division can be avoided.

4.3. Primes

Definition 4.20. An integer p is said to be *prime* if the only divisors of p are 1 and p . An integer $p \neq 1$ that is not prime is said to be *composite*.

Remark 4.21. We will assume by convention that we only apply the term “prime” to positive integers.

Algorithm 4.3 Subtraction algorithm to calculate $g = \gcd(\text{bigger}, \text{smaller})$

Require: $\text{bigger}, \text{smaller} \in \mathbb{Z}$, not both zero, with $\text{bigger} > \text{smaller}$

```

while  $\text{smaller} > 0$  do
     $\text{bigger} \leftarrow \text{bigger} - \text{smaller}$ 
    if  $\text{bigger} < \text{smaller}$  then
         $q = 1$ 
        Exchange  $\text{bigger}$  and  $\text{smaller}$ 
    else
         $\text{bigger} \leftarrow \text{bigger} - \text{smaller}$ 
        if  $\text{bigger} < \text{smaller}$  then
             $q = 2$ 
            Exchange  $\text{bigger}$  and  $\text{smaller}$ 
        else
             $\text{bigger} \leftarrow \text{bigger} - \text{smaller}$ 
            if  $\text{bigger} < \text{smaller}$  then
                 $q = 3$ 
                Exchange  $\text{bigger}$  and  $\text{smaller}$ 
            else
                Compute  $q$  and  $r$  using the division algorithm
            end if
        end if
    end if
    Exchange  $\text{bigger}$  and  $\text{smaller}$  if necessary so that  $\text{bigger} > \text{smaller}$ 
end while
Output  $g = \text{bigger}$ 

```

Remark 4.22. We note that modern convention is that 1 is not a prime. This has not always been the convention. D. N. Lehmer counted 1 as a prime.

Theorem 4.23. Every nonzero integer n can be written as a product of primes times $+1$ or -1 .

Theorem 4.24 (Euclid). The number of primes is infinite.

Proof. (This is exactly the proof given in Euclid, Book IX, proposition 20.) We do a proof by contradiction. Assume that the number of primes is finite, and let the finite set P be the set of all primes. Consider the integer $N = \left(\prod_{p \in P} p\right) + 1$. Now, this can be written as a product

of primes, and thus there is some prime p that divides N . However, $p \notin P$, because then we would have $p|N$ and $p|\prod_{p \in P}$, and thus $p|1$, which is impossible. So this prime p is a prime not in P , which is a contradiction. Our assumption that the number of primes is finite must be false. \square

Theorem 4.25. *If p is a prime, and if $p|ab$, then either $p|a$ or $p|b$.*

Theorem 4.26 (Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic). *The factoring of an integer n into a product of primes is unique up to the order of the primes and multiplication by units ($+1$ or -1).*

4.4. Congruences

Definition 4.27. Two integers a and b are said to be *congruent* modulo a positive integer m if $m|(a - b)$. We write $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and say that a is *congruent to b modulo m* . The integer m is called the *modulus*.

Definition 4.28. If $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and if we have $0 \leq a < b$, we say that a is the *least positive residue* modulo m .

Definition 4.29. A *complete set of residues* modulo m is a set S such every integer n is congruent to some element of S modulo m but no two elements of S are congruent to each other modulo m .

We normally take as our complete set of residues modulo m either the set of least positive residues

$$S = \{r : 0 \leq r < m\}$$

or (occasionally, when it suits us) the set of least-magnitude residues

$$S = \{r : -m/2 < r \leq m/2\}.$$

The next set of propositions and theorems basically state in concrete terms the results that we know we have because the integers modulo m form a ring.

Theorem 4.30. *Congruence modulo m is an equivalence relation.*

- (1) (*Reflexivity*) $a \equiv a \pmod{m}$;
- (2) (*Symmetry*) $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ if and only if $b \equiv a \pmod{m}$;
- (3) (*Transitivity*) $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and $b \equiv c \pmod{m}$ implies that $a \equiv c \pmod{m}$.

Theorem 4.31.

- (1) $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and $c \equiv d \pmod{m}$; implies that for all integers x, y we have $ax + cy \equiv bx + dy \pmod{m}$;
- (2) $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and $c \equiv d \pmod{m}$; implies that $ac \equiv bd \pmod{m}$;
- (3) $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and $d|m$ implies that $a \equiv b \pmod{d}$
- (4) $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ implies that for any polynomial $f(x)$ with integer coefficients we have $f(a) \equiv f(b) \pmod{m}$.

Okay. What we have in the previous stuff is what happens when we multiply, and we know that multiplication makes sense because we are in a ring.

We are not in general in a field, however, so the big issue to be dealt with is what happens when we want to divide.

Theorem 4.32. *Division in congruences involves the gcd of the modulus and the dividend.*

- (1) $ax \equiv ay \pmod{m}$ if and only if $x \equiv y \pmod{m/\gcd(a, m)}$;
- (2) $ax \equiv ay \pmod{m}$ and $\gcd(a, m) = 1$ implies that $x \equiv y \pmod{m}$;

Theorem 4.33. *Solving a linear congruence*

$$ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$$

is equivalent to performing the extended Euclidean algorithm. If we have

$$\gcd(a, m) \nmid b$$

then no such solution exists.

Proof. Assume we have a linear congruence

$$ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$$

to be solved for the indeterminate x . This is equivalent to determining x such that

$$ax - b = my$$

for some indeterminate y , and this is the same as searching for x and y such that

$$ax - my = b.$$

Clearly, if $\gcd(a, m) \nmid b$ then the equation cannot be solved.

If $\gcd(a, m) | b$ then we can perform the extended Euclidean algorithm to compute x_0 and y_0 such that

$$ax_0 - my_0 = b,$$

where $g = \gcd(a, m)$. This is the same as solving the equation

$$(a/g)x_0 - (m/g)y_0 = 1.$$

We can now multiply back to obtain

$$a(b/g)x_0 - m(b/g)y_0 = b,$$

where $a, b/g, x_0, m, b/g, y_0$ are all integers, and we have an integral solution to the necessary equation.

The fact that the extended Euclidean algorithm produces all the solutions to the linear congruence comes from Theorem (4.19). \square

Remark 4.34 (Snarky in the extreme). It should be noted that the term is *modular arithmetic* and not *modulo arithmetic*. The former has been in use in English since about the 1830s. The use of the latter, and incorrect, term, demonstrates the extent to which one has not been properly educated but has instead been raised by the intellectual equivalent of wolves (or perhaps that's generous, and one should suggest earthworms instead). This has come about only in the last few decades as modular arithmetic has been applied in other disciplines, and the error appears even at places like CERT that should be expected to know better.

Remark 4.35. We will refer to the least-residue solution of

$$ax \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$$

as $a^{-1} \pmod{m}$ so that we can represent multiplication by an inverse modulo m , when that is well defined, as integer arithmetic modulo m , and we will continue to write something like $1/a$ when the “division” might not produce an integer.

Theorem 4.36 (Chinese Remainder Theorem (CRT)). *Let m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k be k positive integers that are pairwise relatively prime (that is, for which $\gcd(m_i, m_j) = 1$ for any $i \neq j$). Then for any set of integers a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k , the simultaneous congruences*

$$x \equiv a_i \pmod{m_i}$$

have a unique solution X modulo $M = \prod_{i=1}^k m_i$.

First version. The first proof is a variation on Lagrange interpolation and is done by pulling the rabbit out of the hat in one step.

Let $M_j = M/m_j$. Since the m_i are pairwise relatively prime, we know that $\gcd(M_j, m_j) = 1$ and thus that we can find b_j such that $M_j b_j \equiv 1 \pmod{m_j}$. (We alleged that Theorem 4.9 was a big deal. We have just used it here.)

We then let

$$X = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i M_i.$$

Now, for any m_j , we have that $m_j \mid M_i$ for $i \neq j$, and thus that

$$X \equiv a_j b_j M_j \equiv a_j \cdot 1 \pmod{m_j}.$$

□

Second version. The first congruence is simple: the solutions of

$$x \equiv a_1 \pmod{m_1}$$

comprise exactly the integers

$$x_1 = a_1 + m_1 x_2$$

for $x_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$.

The second of our congruences,

$$x \equiv a_2 \pmod{m_2},$$

can be rewritten as

$$a_1 + m_1 x_2 \equiv a_2 \pmod{m_2},$$

which can be rewritten as

$$m_1 x_2 \equiv a_2 - a_1 \pmod{m_2},$$

Since we know that $\gcd(m_1, m_2) = 1$, we know that this congruence has solutions

$$x_2 \equiv (a_2 - a_1) \cdot m_1^{-1} \pmod{m_2}$$

which are

$$x_2 = A_1 + m_2x_3$$

for $x_3 \in \mathbb{Z}$, and where we write A_1 for the least positive reduced residue $(a_2 - a_1) \cdot m_1^{-1}$ taken modulo m_2 .

We now repeat the process:

$$x \equiv a_3 \pmod{m_3}$$

becomes

$$a_1 + m_1(A_1 + m_2x_3) \equiv a_3 \pmod{m_3}$$

which becomes

$$m_1m_2x_3 \equiv a_3 - a_1 - m_1A_1 \pmod{m_3}$$

□

Remark 4.37. We remark that the first proof is a beautiful example of an existential mathematical proof, and that it is very much the wrong thing to do if one wants actually to use the CRT to solve some simultaneous equations. The problem with the first proof is that the modulus M grows exponentially with the number of individual moduli m_i , and the first proof requires the use of full-length arithmetic throughout the computation.

On the other hand, the second proof, which is relatively easy to do but ungainly to state, is constructive and algorithmic and never requires doing arithmetic of size larger than the square of the largest of the moduli.

Remark 4.38. The CRT is an extremely powerful computational tool. Let's say that we have a polynomial equation $f(x) = 0$ that we wish to solve in integers. Finding a solution in integers could be a computationally painful thing, in part because one might very quickly need to use multiprecise arithmetic. However, finding a solution to the congruence $f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ for a prime p is much simpler and would not require arithmetic of values larger than p^2 . The power lies in the fact that the modulus is growing as the *product* of the individual prime moduli, so if the fraction of possible solutions is a relatively constant fraction of the primes, the possible solution set gets very thin very fast.

We illustrate this with an example. Let's say we want to solve

$$x^2 + x - 10100 = 0$$

Modulo 8, we have

$$0 : 0 + 0 - 4 \equiv -4 \equiv 4 \neq 0$$

$$1 : 1 + 1 - 4 \equiv -2 \equiv 6 \neq 0$$

$$2 : 4 + 2 - 4 \equiv 2 \neq 0$$

$$3 : 1 + 3 - 4 \equiv 0$$

$$4 : 0 + 4 - 4 \equiv 0$$

$$5 : 1 + 5 - 4 \equiv 2 \neq 0$$

$$6 : 4 + 6 - 4 \equiv 6 \neq 0$$

$$7 : 1 + 7 - 4 \equiv 4 \neq 0$$

and thus $x \equiv 3, 4 \pmod{8}$ is necessary.

Modulo 3, we have

$$0 : 0 + 0 - 2 \equiv -2 \equiv 1 \neq 0$$

$$1 : 1 + 1 - 2 \equiv 0$$

$$2 : 1 + 2 - 2 \equiv 1 \neq 0$$

and thus $x \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ is necessary.

Modulo 5, we have

$$0 : 0 + 0 - 0 \equiv 0$$

$$1 : 1 + 1 - 0 \equiv 2 \neq 0$$

$$2 : 4 + 2 - 0 \equiv 1 \neq 0$$

$$3 : 4 + 3 - 0 \equiv 2 \neq 0$$

$$4 : 1 + 4 - 0 \equiv 0$$

and thus $x \equiv 0, 4 \pmod{5}$ is necessary.

So let's build our solution. (And let's be careful to notice when we have equalities and when we have congruences.)

Start with $X = 3a + 1$ for a variable a .

We need $X \equiv 0, 4 \pmod{5}$

The first option is

$$X = 3a + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{5}$$

$$3a \equiv -1 \equiv 4 \equiv 9 \pmod{5}$$

$$a \equiv 3 \pmod{5}$$

$$a = 5b + 3$$

$$X = 3a + 1 = 3(5b + 3) + 1 = 15b + 10$$

for any value of b .

The second option is

$$\begin{aligned} X &= 3a + 1 \equiv 4 \pmod{5} \\ 3a &\equiv 3 \pmod{5} \\ a &\equiv 1 \pmod{5} \\ a &= 5b + 1 \\ X &= 3a + 1 = 3(5b + 1) + 1 = 15b + 4 \end{aligned}$$

for any value of b .

We now use these two and solve modulo 8. The first option is

$$\begin{aligned} X &= 15b + 10 \equiv 3 \pmod{8} \\ 15b &\equiv -b \equiv -7 \pmod{8} \\ b &\equiv 7 \pmod{8} \\ b &= 8c + 7 \\ X &= 15b + 10 = 15(8c + 7) + 10 = 120c + 115 \end{aligned}$$

for any value of c .

The second option is

$$\begin{aligned} X &= 15b + 10 \equiv 4 \pmod{8} \\ 15b &\equiv -b \equiv -6 \pmod{8} \\ b &\equiv 6 \pmod{8} \\ b &= 8c + 6 \\ X &= 15b + 10 = 15(8c + 6) + 10 = 120c + 100 \end{aligned}$$

for any value of c .

The third option is

$$\begin{aligned} X &= 15b + 4 \equiv 3 \pmod{8} \\ 15b &\equiv -b \equiv -1 \pmod{8} \\ b &\equiv 1 \pmod{8} \\ b &= 8c + 1 \\ X &= 15b + 4 = 15(8c + 1) + 4 = 120c + 19 \end{aligned}$$

for any value of c .

Finally, the fourth option is

$$\begin{aligned} X &= 15b + 4 \equiv 4 \pmod{8} \\ 15b &\equiv 0 \pmod{8} \\ b &\equiv 0 \pmod{8} \\ b &= 8c \\ X &= 15b + 4 = 15(8c) + 4 = 120c + 4 \end{aligned}$$

for any value of c .

Modulo 120, we have possible solutions

$$4, 19, 100, 115$$

We note that

$$\begin{aligned} 4 &\equiv 1 \pmod{3} \\ &\equiv 4 \pmod{5} \\ &\equiv 4 \pmod{8} \\ 19 &\equiv 1 \pmod{3} \\ &\equiv 4 \pmod{5} \\ &\equiv 3 \pmod{8} \\ 100 &\equiv 1 \pmod{3} \\ &\equiv 0 \pmod{5} \\ &\equiv 4 \pmod{8} \\ 115 &\equiv 1 \pmod{3} \\ &\equiv 0 \pmod{5} \\ &\equiv 3 \pmod{8} \end{aligned}$$

With a little bit of up front CRT calculation, we have reduced the brute force search for a solution by a factor of 30, since we need only test four possible solutions every 120 integers.

If we were to carry this one prime more, we would discover that we would need

$$X \equiv 2, 4 \pmod{7}$$

If we extended the CRT to include the prime 7, we would get only 8 possible solutions every 840 integers. With only four applications of the CRT, the brute force search is improved by a factor of more than 100.

And this was all done with arithmetic only as bad as the square of the largest modulus.

4.5. The Euler Totient

Definition 4.39. The *Euler phi function* also referred to as the *totient*, is defined for any positive integer n as

$$\phi(n) = |\{a : 0 \leq a < n, \gcd(a, n) = 1\}|$$

That is, $\phi(n)$ is the number of integers in a least positive residue set modulo n that are relatively prime to n .

We observe that $\phi(p) = p - 1$ for primes p .

Theorem 4.40. *The phi function is multiplicative. That is, if m and n are relatively prime, then*

$$\phi(mn) = \phi(m)\phi(n).$$

4.6. Fermat's Little Theorem

Theorem 4.41 (Fermat's Little Theorem (FLT)). *If p is a prime, then for any integer a , we have $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$.*

We observe that FLT is just a special case of Lagrange's theorem. Lagrange's theorem says that any element in a group, raised to the order of the group, is the identity. Since the order of the group of residues modulo a prime p is $p - 1$, then clearly FLT is a special case of Lagrange.

We note that FLT works only in one direction: if p is prime, then $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ holds for all a . There are pathological numbers n , called *Carmichael numbers*, which are not prime but for which $a^{n-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ holds for all a . The smallest and most famous of these is 561. There is a large literature on Carmichael numbers. We shall see later that one special case in which one can make FLT work both as an “if” and as an “only if” we get a powerful test for primality that is the way in which one finds new examples of “the largest known prime numbers”.

4.7. Exponentiation

We will frequently need to compute a^n for some element a in a group and some integer n . The naive way to exponentiate is to multiply a times itself n times.

The right way to exponentiate is to do it in binary.

Let's compute 3^{13} modulo 17.

We write $13 = 8 + 4 + 1$ in binary as 1101. We need a running product P , which we initialize to 1, and a running multiplier M , which we initialize to $a = 3$.

We now look at the rightmost bit. It's a 1, so we multiply $P = M \cdot P$ to get $P = 3$.

We shift left one bit and square the multiplier $M = M * M$. So now $M = 9 = 3^2$.

The bit we are looking at is a 0, so we do not multiply in to the running product.

We shift left one bit and square the multiplier $M = M * M$. So now $M = 81 = 13 = 3^4$.

The bit we are looking at is a 1, so we multiply $P = M \cdot P$ to get $P = 3 \cdot 13 = 39$, which we mod down by 17 to get 5.

Let's pause and think. The rightmost three bits of 13 are 101, which is 5 in binary. And we have as our running product the value $3^5 = 243$, mod down by 17 to 5. This is the steady state.

We shift left one bit and square the multiplier $M = M * M$. So now $M = 169 = 16 = -1$. The bit we are looking at is a 1, so we multiply $P = M \cdot P$ to get $P = 5 \cdot 16 = 80$, which we mod down by 17 to get 12.

One version of Python code for exponentiation is the following

There is a variation of this in which one processes the bits from left to right instead of right to left. In this version, one squares the running product as one moves across the bits of the exponent. This version has the disadvantage that you have to have a way to get at the bits in the middle of an exponent (in contrast to the right-to-left version above in which mod by 2 and divide by 2 do exactly what is needed for dealing with the bits). However, the left to right version means the multiplier never changes. This is the version that is used in elliptic curve cryptography, because elliptic curve group operations are expensive. In elliptic curves the squaring is much cheaper than multiplication, and if one is clever one can choose the multiplier to make the group operation especially simple, so the left-to-right version is more common.

Figure 4.1. Modular integer exponentiation

```
#####  
## MODULAR INTEGER EXPONENTIATION  
## computes  $a^b \bmod n$   
def starstar(a_value, b_value, n_value):  
    running_prod = 1  
    multiplier = a_value  
    local_exponent = b_value  
    while local_exponent > 0:  
        rightmost_bit = local_exponent % 2  
        if rightmost_bit == 1:  
            running_prod = (running_prod * multiplier) % n_value  
        multiplier = (multiplier * multiplier) % n_value  
        local_exponent = local_exponent // 2  
    return running_prod
```


Square Roots and Quadratic Symbols

We will do square roots modulo primes using primitive roots and exponents. This is a little different from the way that is done in many references, but we want to emphasize that it is the world of additive exponent arithmetic that is important. Modulo a prime p , the exponents work additively modulo $p - 1$.

When we get to RSA encryption, in which we have a modulus $N = pq$ for two large and unknown primes p and q , we cannot play the same exponent games as with primes because $N - 1$ is not $(p - 1)(q - 1)$, and it is the latter that determines the arithmetic on the exponents.

5.1. Square Roots

Theorem 5.1. *Let p be an odd prime. Let a be an integer, with a not congruent to 0 modulo p . Then*

$$x^2 \equiv a \pmod{p}$$

has either no solutions or two solutions modulo p .

Proof. Consider a primitive root g . Then all the linear residues are in the list

$$g, g^2, g^3, \dots, g^{p-1} \equiv 1$$

There is one integer k , $1 \leq k \leq p - 1$, such that $a = g^k$.

We have two cases.

Case 1: If k is odd, then we have no solutions.

There are no solutions because we would have to have, for some t ,

$$(g^t)^2 \equiv g^{2t} \equiv g^k$$

which would imply that we had

$$2t \equiv k \pmod{p-1}$$

This means that

$$2t = k + m \cdot (p-1)$$

for some integer m . But since $p-1$ is even, and k is odd, this can't possibly happen.

Case 2: If $k = 2\ell$ is even, then

$$(g^\ell)^2 \equiv a$$

and

$$(-g^\ell)^2 \equiv a$$

So we clearly have at least two solutions.

Can there be any others?

Well, if there's an m that is any solution, we have

$$(g^m)^2 \equiv g^{2\ell} \pmod{p}$$

which implies that

$$2m \equiv 2\ell \pmod{p-1}$$

and thus that

$$m \equiv \ell \pmod{(p-1)/2}$$

But if we have chosen ℓ, m such that $0 \leq \ell, m, < p-1$, then as integers (and not just congruences)

$$m = \ell$$

$$m = \ell + (p-1)/2$$

$$\ell = m + (p-1)/2$$

are the only options, depending on the relative sizes of ℓ and m . The first of these and exactly one of the second two are possible, so we know there are only the two solutions. \square

Theorem 5.2. *Let p be an odd prime and g a primitive root. Then*

$$g^{(p-1)/2} \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$$

Proof. Clearly

$$(g^{(p-1)/2})^2 \equiv g^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$$

We know there are two roots of 1, namely ± 1 , and we know from the previous theorem that there are only these two roots. And we know that

$$g^{(p-1)/2}$$

is not $+1$, because modulo an odd prime we don't get a primitive root powering up to 1 until we get to the $(p-1)$ -st power. So it has to be the case that

$$g^{(p-1)/2}$$

is the other square root of 1, and is -1 . \square

5.1.1. Examples. Let's look at things modulo 11 and modulo 13.

Modulo 11, with exponents in the first row and powers of 2 in the second:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
2	4	8	5	10	9	7	3	6	1
				-1	-2	-4			

Modulo 13, with exponents in the first row and powers of 2 in the second:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
2	4	8	3	6	12	11	9	5	10	7	1
				-1	-2	-4					

Notice the exponents. They suggest the following theorem, whose proof is easy using the exponents.

Theorem 5.3. *Let p be an odd prime. Then -1 is a square modulo p if and only if $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$*

Proof. Since we know that

$$g^{(p-1)/2} \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$$

we know that

$$x^2 \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$$

has no solutions or it has solutions

$$\pm 1 g^{(p-1)/4}$$

But now

$$(p-1)/4$$

is an integer if and only if $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$. \square

This is what we see modulo 11, which is 3 modulo 4, and modulo 13, which is 1 modulo 4.

Obviously, the residues that are even powers of a primitive root are squares and the residues that are odd powers are not. Since we know that the $(p-1)/2$ -st power is -1 , we know that -1 is a square exactly when $(p-1)/2$ is even, which is exactly when p is 1 modulo 4.

Theorem 5.4. *Let p be a prime, $p \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$, let y be an integer, and let*

$$x = y^{(p+1)/4}.$$

Then

$$z^2 \equiv y \pmod{p}$$

has no solutions or two solutions. If it has two solutions they are $\pm x$. If it has no solutions, then

$$z^2 \equiv -y \pmod{p}$$

has the two solutions $\pm x$.

Proof. We know that

$$(\pm x)^2 = y^{(p+1)/2} = y \cdot y^{(p-1)/2}$$

If y is a square, then $y = g^{2k}$ for some k . Thus

$$(\pm x)^2 = y^{(p+1)/2} = y \cdot (g^{2k})^{(p-1)/2} = y \cdot g^{k(p-1)} = y \cdot (g^{p-1})^k = y \cdot (1)^k = y$$

If y is not a square, then $y = g^{2k+1}$.

Then

$$-y = (g^{2k+1})(g^{(p-1)/2}) = g^{2k+1+(p-1)/2}$$

Now, since p is 3 modulo 4, $(p-1)/2$ is odd, so $1 + (p-1)/2$ is even, so the entire exponent above is even. That means that $-y$ is the square as claimed. \square

Theorem 5.5. *Let p be an odd prime, and a any integer not 0 modulo p . Then*

$$a^{(p-1)/2} \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{p}$$

Proof. We know that

$$x^2 \equiv a \pmod{p}$$

has solutions if and only if

$$a^{(p-1)/2} \equiv +1 \pmod{p}$$

Let $a = g^k$ for whatever k works. So if a is a square, then $a = g^{2m}$, and then

$$a^{(p-1)/2} \equiv g^{m(p-1)} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$$

On the other hand, if a is not a square, then it is $a = g^{2m+1}$, and then

$$a^{(p-1)/2} \equiv g^{(2m+1)(p-1)/2} \equiv g^{m(p-1)+(p-1)/2} \equiv g^{(p-1)/2} \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$$

□

5.2. Characters on Groups

Given any group $G = (S, *)$ which we shall write multiplicatively, a *character* on the group is a mapping

$$\chi : S \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

that preserves the group operation, that is, for which

$$\chi(ab) = \chi(a)\chi(b)$$

where the “multiplication” inside the parentheses on the left hand side is in the group, and the multiplication outside the parentheses on the right hand side is in the complex numbers.

We will use the Legendre symbols and the Jacobi symbols as characters on the group of integers modulo an integer.

5.3. Legendre Symbols

Let p be an odd prime. The *Legendre symbol*

$$\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$$

is defined to be

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) &= +1 && \text{if } x^2 \equiv a \pmod{p} \text{ is solvable} \\ &= -1 && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

The following theorem shows, among other things, that the Legendre symbol is a character on the group of integers modulo p .

Theorem 5.6. *Let p be an odd prime and a and b integers prime to p .*

(1) *If $a \equiv b \pmod{p}$, then*

$$\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{b}{p}\right)$$

(2) If a is not zero modulo p , then

$$\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = a^{(p-1)/2} \pmod{p}$$

(3) If $ab \neq 0$ modulo p , then

$$\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \left(\frac{b}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{ab}{p}\right)$$

(4)

$$\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right) = (-1)^{(p-1)/2}$$

which is 1 for primes p that are 1 modulo 4, and -1 otherwise.

(5)

$$\left(\frac{2}{p}\right) = (-1)^{(p^2-1)/8}$$

which is 1 for primes p that are 1 or 7 modulo 8, and -1 otherwise.

Proof. We have basically done all of these except the last, and we will leave that to the reader. \square

5.4. Quadratic Reciprocity

Gauss's *law of quadratic reciprocity* [NZM91] makes all this simple and computationally efficient.

Theorem 5.7. *Let p and q be distinct odd primes. Then*

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{p}{q}\right) &= -\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) \quad \text{if } p \equiv q \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \\ &= \left(\frac{q}{p}\right) \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

5.5. Jacobi Symbols

The Legendre symbol is defined for primes in the “denominator”. The *Jacobi symbol* is the extension by multiplicativity to composites in the “denominator”. Thus if we have n that factors as $n = rs$, then

$$\left(\frac{a}{n}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{rs}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{r}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{a}{s}\right)$$

Caveat. Note that having the Jacobi symbol come up $+1$ does *not* mean that the quadratic congruence is solvable, because it could be that there are an even number of nonsolutions making up the product. One such example is this.

$$\left(\frac{2}{15}\right) = \left(\frac{2}{3}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{2}{5}\right) = (-1)(-1) = 1$$

The symbol is $+1$, but the quadratic congruence

$$x^2 \equiv 2 \pmod{15}$$

has no solutions.

5.6. Extended Law of Quadratic Reciprocity

Gauss's *law of quadratic reciprocity* [NZM91] extends to composite integers.

Theorem 5.8. *Let M and N be odd, positive, and relatively prime. Then*

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{M}{N}\right) &= -\left(\frac{N}{M}\right) && \text{if } M \equiv N \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \\ &= \left(\frac{N}{M}\right) && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

We also note, without proof, that the last of the points in Theorem 5.6 carries over to composites. If Q is odd, then

$$\left(\frac{2}{Q}\right) = (-1)^{(Q^2-1)/8}$$

which is 1 for Q that are 1 or 7 modulo 8, and -1 otherwise.

We note that the reciprocity law allows quadratic symbols to be computed essentially as quickly as the greatest common divisor, because the division algorithm can be applied to reduce the size of the integers involved. For example,

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{10102}{7815}\right) &= \left(\frac{2287}{7815}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{7815}{2287}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{2287}{7815}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{7815}{2287}\right) \\
&= (-1) \left(\frac{954}{2287}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{2}{2287}\right) \left(\frac{477}{7815}\right) \\
&= (-1)(+1) \left(\frac{185}{477}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{477}{185}\right) \\
&= (-1) \left(\frac{107}{185}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{185}{107}\right) \\
&= (-1) \left(\frac{78}{107}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{2}{107}\right) \left(\frac{39}{107}\right) \\
&= (-1)(-1) \left(\frac{39}{107}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{107}{39}\right) \\
&= (-1) \left(\frac{29}{39}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{39}{29}\right) \\
&= (-1) \left(\frac{10}{29}\right) &= (-1) \left(\frac{2}{29}\right) \left(\frac{5}{29}\right) \\
&= (-1)(-1) \left(\frac{5}{29}\right) &= \left(\frac{29}{5}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{4}{5}\right) &= +1
\end{aligned}$$

Finite Fields of Characteristic 2

In this chapter we extend beyond integers modulo primes to consider finite fields of characteristic 2. For a more extensive presentation of finite fields, the reader should consult Lidl and Niederreiter [LN97]. For a different presentation of finite fields of characteristic 2, the reader could consult Golomb [Gol82].

6.1. Polynomials with Coefficients mod 2

6.1.1. An Example. We consider polynomials with coefficients taken modulo a prime number p , taken modulo “the right kind” of polynomial of degree n . This will generate a finite field of p^n elements whose multiplicative group of $p^n - 1$ elements is cyclic and generated by a primitive element entirely analogous to a primitive root modulo a prime integer.

We are going to do a congruence computation using polynomials with coefficients taken modulo 2.

We start with

$$n_{00} = 1$$

We multiply by x :

$$n_{01} = x$$

and then again

$$n_{02} = x^2$$

and again

$$n_{03} = x^3$$

But we're going to take the polynomials modulo

$$m = 1 + x + x^3$$

which is the same thing (with coefficients mod 2) as saying that

$$1 + x \equiv x^3$$

so we have

$$n_{03} = x^3 \equiv 1 + x \pmod{m}$$

We continue multiplying by x modulo m .

$$n_{04} = x + x^2$$

$$n_{05} = x^2 + x^3 \equiv 1 + x + x^2 \pmod{m}$$

Multiplying one more time by x modulo m we get

$$n_{06} = x + x^2 + x^3 \equiv x + x^2 + 1 + x \equiv 1 + x^2 \pmod{m}$$

and then multiplying by x one more time we get

$$n_{07} = x + x^3 \equiv x + 1 + x \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$$

and we are back where we started.

The Special Theory: We take $p = 2$ because binary arithmetic is especially easy to do in computer hardware, and we hope for every degree n to find an example of “the right kind” of polynomial so that the hardware to be implemented is even more especially easy.

In this example, the *primitive trinomial*

$$m = 1 + x + x^3$$

of degree 3 generates all seven not-all-zero bit patterns of 3 bits in length (which is the same as all seven nonzero integers modulo 8). These bit patterns, reading from lowest degree to highest, are

$$n_{00} = 100$$

$$n_{01} = 010$$

$$n_{02} = 001$$

$$n_{03} = 110$$

$$n_{04} = 011$$

$$n_{05} = 111$$

$$n_{06} = 101$$

$$n_{07} = 100$$

The polynomial is a trinomial because it has only three nonzero coefficients. Since the degree 0 term (the 1) and the degree n term are nonzero, a polynomial is a trinomial if there is only one nonzero coefficient between the terms of lowest and of highest degree. We say that such a polynomial $f(x)$ of degree n is *primitive* if the powers of x generate, modulo $f(x)$, all the $2^n - 1$ distinct polynomials of degree less than or equal to n upon multiplication by x .

What this gives us is a field structure entirely analogous to the structure of the integers modulo a prime p , complete with generators of the multiplicative cycle and the same “reasonably random” sequence of bit patterns that makes the discrete log problem hard.

We note further that we can run the bits going either direction. That is, we could write $1 + x + x^3$ or $x^3 + x + 1$, depending on personal tastes in such things, and as long as we do things “the same way” in both representations, we get the same bit patterns.

6.2. Linear Feedback Shift Registers

We will in this section describe what is true, but not necessarily prove the theorems. The proofs and a much more extended discussion of this material can be found in Golomb [Gol82] and in Lidl and Niederreiter [LN97].

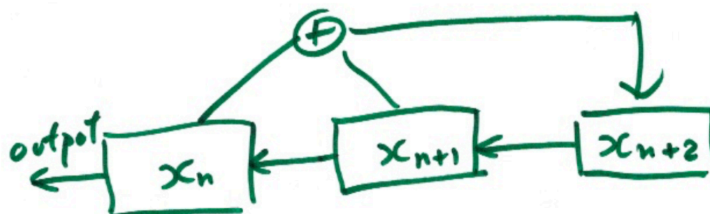
The *linear feedback shift register (LFSR)* representation of the first example generates the same set of bit patterns, but in a different order.

Let’s imagine an initial sequence of bits of length 3, viewed in a window of width 3:

$$n_{00} = |100|$$

We add bits to the right by adding in the sum mod 2 of the two leftmost bits in the window.

$$\begin{aligned} n_0 &= |100| \\ n_1 &= 1|001| \\ n_2 &= 10|010| \\ n_3 &= 100|101| \\ n_4 &= 1001|011| \\ n_5 &= 10010|111| \\ n_6 &= 100101|110| \\ n_7 &= 1001011|100| \end{aligned}$$

Figure 6.1. LFSR of $x_{n+3} = x_{n+1} + x_n$ 

At this point the sequence begins again, and we have an LFSR of *period* 7.

This is an example of a LFSR with two *taps* at x^0 and x^1 . The polynomial we are using is still $m = 1 + x + x^3$ and we are applying that polynomial to the window for n_i in order to generate as the next bit the coefficient of x^3 necessary to make $m \equiv 0$.

That is, the LFSR is a degree three recurrence relation

$$x_{n+3} = x_{n+1} + x_n$$

An LFSR can be viewed, not surprisingly given its name, as a shift register with an XOR, as in Figure 6.1. We have a register of bits with an initial fill (100, say). The register is shifted left, with the leftmost bit becoming the output, and the rightmost bit is filled in as the XOR (the modulo 2 sum) of the two leftmost bits. The output bits thus become eventually the sequence of bits that precede the window in n_7 above.

It is the shift register version that is a favorite of hardware designers. Registers are easy to build, shifts are easy, and the XOR of two bits

to fill in the empty slot on the right end is easy. One can show that the same characteristics of randomness that are displayed by taking powers of a generator modulo an irreducible polynomial are inherent in the sequence of output bits of an LFSR (although the bit sequence is, of course, deterministic, and it does repeat eventually). For this reason, they have been used as a means of generating “random” bits of cipher key to be XORed with plaintext bits to produce ciphertext bits.

The crucial fact here is that if the integer $P = 2^r - 1$ is a prime, that is, is a Mersenne prime, then an degree r LFSR will generate a sequence of P bits before repeating.

Let us look more closely at the mathematics of an LFSR, which can be done using matrix algebra modulo 2.

If we have a degree three recurrence relation, say, then we have an equation

$$x_{n+3} = a_2x_{n+2} + a_1x_{n+1} + a_0x_n$$

and we can write the recurrence as a matrix

$$M = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & a_0 \\ 1 & 0 & a_1 \\ 0 & 1 & a_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

with a 2×2 identity matrix below the main diagonal, zeros above the identity matrix, and the coefficients of the recurrence down the last column. For any 3-bit window, $(x \ y \ z)$, we have

$$(x \ y \ z) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & a_0 \\ 1 & 0 & a_1 \\ 0 & 1 & a_2 \end{pmatrix} = (y \ z \ a_0x + a_1y + a_2z)$$

More to the point, if we have the sequence of output bits, we can take those bits 3 at a time, form a matrix from them, and use that to produce the coefficients of the recurrence. Continuing with our example, and choosing the first three windows, we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

From this set of three windows it is trivial to compute the coefficients. But we could use any set of three windows, as a matrix, with the column vector on the right hand side being the modulo-2 sum.

Thus, perhaps $x_n + x_{n+1}$ for each row for our running example.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

from which we would get simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 1 \\ a_1 + a_2 &= 1 \\ a_0 + a_1 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

and a unique solution for the coefficients a_i .

This approach works in general. If we have a sequence of bits generated by an LFSR of degree r , we can set up the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_0 & \dots & x_{r-1} \\ \dots & & \\ x_{r-1} & \dots & x_{2r-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_0 \\ \dots \\ a_{r-1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_r \\ \dots \\ x_{2r} \end{pmatrix}$$

and solve uniquely for the coefficients.

The question then arises as to how we can determine the appropriate degree r of the recurrence. This is also a problem in matrix algebra. If we overconstrain the matrix, assuming perhaps that we should have

$$(6.1) \quad \begin{pmatrix} x_0 & \dots & x_r \\ \dots & & \\ x_r & \dots & x_{2r} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_0 \\ \dots \\ a_r \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_r \\ \dots \\ x_{2r} \\ x_{2r+1} \end{pmatrix}$$

We will find that the matrix has determinant 0 and the system cannot be solved. We can find zero determinants for r that are too small, just by chance, but if we really do have only r linearly independent coefficients, then matrices that are too large must reduce to matrices with rows of zeros. If the determinants of the matrices (6.1) and larger are all zero for a sequence of larger matrices, then the size of the matrix with the last nonzero is probably the appropriate degree. That we can then check by solving for the coefficients and running the putative recurrence to check against our known sequence of output bits.

Indeed, we can make this precise. Consider the leftmost column of a matrix like (6.1) or a matrix that is not just $r \times r$ but even larger. Assume the recurrence is

$$x_{n+r} = a_{r-1}x_{n+r-1} + \dots + a_0x_n.$$

What we have in the leftmost column is $(x_0 \dots x_{n+r})^T$, so if we sum the entries for which the a_i are nonzero, the sum must be 0. Shifting right one column, we have $(x_1 \dots x_{n+r+1})^T$, and the same property must hold. That is, adding the rows for which the a_i are nonzero produces exactly the r -th row, so adding the rows for which the a_i are nonzero to the r -th row produces a row of all zeros, and thus a zero determinant.

We note, but will not prove, that we can find a correspondence between an LFSR of degree r and period $2^r - 1$ by computing the characteristic polynomial

$$\det(M + \lambda I).$$

In the case of our example, this would be the determinant of

$$\begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & \lambda & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & \lambda \end{pmatrix}$$

which is, taking coefficients modulo 2, exactly what we expect:

$$\lambda^3 + \lambda + 1.$$

The actual theorem is this [Gol82, p. 37].

Theorem 6.1. *If an LFSR has an irreducible characteristic polynomial of degree r , then the period of the sequence is a factor of $2^r - 1$. If $P = 2^r - 1$ is prime, then every irreducible polynomial of degree r corresponds to an LFSR of period P .*

Theorem 6.1 builds on a theorem usually proved earlier, that we also will not prove.

Theorem 6.2. *Every irreducible polynomial modulo 2 of degree r divides the polynomial*

$$x^{2^r-1} + 1.$$

We note that

$$x^{2^3-1} + 1 = (x + 1)(x^3 + x + 1)(x^3 + x^2 + 1).$$

For completeness, as an example of the two theorems above, we note that the “other” recurrence of degree 3,

$$x_{n+3} = x_{n+2} + x_n,$$

has a matrix representation of

$$M = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and that the characteristic polynomial is

$$\det(M + \lambda I) = \det \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 + \lambda \end{pmatrix} = \lambda^3 + \lambda^2 + 1,$$

which is the other irreducible of degree 3 in the polynomial factoring above.

6.3. The General Theory

We are not going to prove everything here, in part because the proofs are fairly simple. What we will do is point out that polynomial arithmetic is entirely analogous to arithmetic modulo ordinary integers and modulo primes. We will restrict our study to polynomials with coefficients modulo 2, but versions of these results work for coefficients modulo any prime.

We work modulo 2 because the arithmetic can be done very efficiently in hardware, and therefore *if* we can get the mathematical structures we want working modulo 2, we will do that. Working modulo odd primes produces similar mathematical structures, but this would require adders and multipliers for each of the coefficients, where working modulo 2 requires only OR and AND capability. There are some concerns, to be sure, that there might be structure in the fields that has not yet been seen to be exploitable when used in a cryptographic setting, but with that caveat, it is clear that a great computational advantage comes from working with bits on a computer.

We observe that the “less than” condition has been useful, for example, in guaranteeing that the division algorithm (and thus the Euclidean algorithm) terminates after a finite number of steps. The analogous purpose is served for polynomials $f(x)$ by the degree of the polynomial, $\deg(f)$.

Proposition 6.3. The division algorithm works for polynomials. That is, for any two polynomials $f(x)$ and $g(x)$, there exist polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ such that

$$f(x) = q(x) \cdot g(x) + r(x),$$

with $\deg(r) < \deg(g)$.

Proposition 6.4. The Euclidean algorithm works for polynomials.

Definition 6.5. A polynomial $p(x)$ is called *irreducible* or *prime* if it has positive degree and if $p(x) = a(x)b(x)$ implies that one of $a(x)$ and

$b(x)$ is a constant. (And given that we are working with polynomials with coefficients mod 2, that constant has to be 1.)

Proposition 6.6. If we have, for an irreducible polynomial $p(x)$, that $p(x)|a(x)b(x)$, then either $p(x)|a(x)$ or $p(x)|b(x)$.

Proposition 6.7. The ring of polynomials with coefficients mod 2, taken modulo a polynomial $m(x)$, is a field if and only if $m(x)$ is irreducible.

As a convenience to the reader, we cross reference terminology of the field of residues modulo primes and of finite fields of characteristic 2.

- We say an integer p is prime if there are no divisors of p other than 1 and p .
- If an integer p is prime, then the least positive linear residues $0, 1, \dots, p-1$ form a field of p elements under modular addition and multiplication. The multiplicative group of the non-zero linear residues is of order $p-1$ and can be generated as the powers modulo p of a primitive root, and multiplication modulo p is the same as addition of the exponents of any fixed primitive root. The primitive roots modulo p are the least linear residues whose exponents, as powers of any primitive root, are relatively prime to $p-1$.
- We say that a polynomial $f(x)$, with coefficients 0, 1 taken modulo 2, is primitive if all polynomials taken modulo $f(x)$, and with coefficients taken modulo 2, can be generated as powers of x .
- We say that a polynomial $p(x)$, with coefficients taken modulo 2, is prime, or (equivalently) irreducible if no writing $p(x) = a(x)b(x)$ as polynomials can be done without either $a(x) = 1$ or $b(x) = 1$.
- The ring of polynomials with coefficients taken modulo 2 and taken modulo a polynomial $f(x)$ is a field if and only if $f(x)$ is irreducible.

Displayed in Tables 6.1-6.5 are the irreducible polynomials $f(x)$ of small degree, together with the least generator. Since the powers of x generate the entire set of residues of $f(x)$, a primitive polynomial is necessarily irreducible. We note that if a polynomial is irreducible, then its reverse is also irreducible, so of the pairs of polynomials we could list, we present the one with the least nonzero coefficients. Further tables can be found in Zierler and Brillhart [ZB68, ZB69].

Table 6.1. Degree 2, 3, 4 irreducibles and least generators

0	1	2	3	4	0	1
1	1	1			0	1
1	1	0	1		0	1
1	0	1	1		0	1
1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	1	0	1

Table 6.2. Degree 5 irreducibles and least generators

0	1	2	3	4	5	0	1
1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1

Table 6.3. Degree 6 irreducibles and least generators

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1
1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1
1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1

Table 6.4. Degree 7 irreducibles and least generators

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	0	1
1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1
1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1
1	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1
1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1

6.4. Normal Bases

It should come as no surprise to anyone who does computation that “ordinary” computers are not designed for the purpose of expediting computations in number theory. Computers intended for serious computation invariably are targeted at floating point computations, usually for solving differential equations, solving problems in linear algebra, or Monte Carlo simulations requiring random numbers. Integer arithmetic is usually very much a secondary priority, and arithmetic in finite fields modulo polynomials is thought of not much at all. Because of this, it has been normal in discrete mathematics and in number theory, including the mathematics that supports cryptography, to devise algorithms and representations that facilitate computation.

We have in this chapter represented the elements of a finite field $GF(2^n)$ as polynomials in the ordinary way, with coefficients of 0 or 1 that multiply times the powers of x . For computational purposes there is an alternative presentation that permits more efficient computation. Following Mullin, et al., [MOVW89] we rewrite the field in terms of a normal basis and then in terms of an optimal normal basis.

Table 6.5. Degree 8 irreducibles and least generators

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	0	1	2	3
1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1		
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1		
1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1		
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1		
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1		
1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1		
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1		
1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1
1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1		
1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1		
1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	
1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	
1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1		
1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1		
1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1		
1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	
1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	
1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1		
1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1		
1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1		
1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1		
1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1		
1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1		
1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		
1	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1		
1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1		
1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	1		
1	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1		
1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	

Definition 6.8. A *normal basis* for a finite field $GF(2^n)$ is a basis

$$N = \{\beta, \beta^2, \beta^4, \dots, \beta^{2^{n-1}}\}$$

so that every element α of $GF(2^n)$ can be written as a linear combination

$$A = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_i \beta^{2^i}$$

with a_i either 0 or 1 for all i .

Every finite field $GF(2^n)$ has a normal basis [LN97].

Using a normal basis is an exercise in linear algebra.

Without going into the details of the linear algebra, we notice that it permits us to play games with the coefficients, and thus to make computation simpler and faster, especially when done, as in this case, with binary coefficients for which computer hardware is naturally suited.

We recall the classic algorithm for exponentiation, attributed by Knuth [Knu81, pp. 441ff.] to the Arabs, for which we had Python code in Chapter 4. To compute a^e , we write e in binary. We keep a running multiplier m and a running product p , with m initialized to a and p initialized to 1. Reading the bits of e from right to left, we replace p with $p * a$ if the bit is a 1, do nothing if the bit is a 0, and then move left in the bits of e while squaring the running multiplier $m = m * m$.

Exponentiation is a crucial part of modern cryptography, and the first thing we can say about exponentiation is that the squaring in the middle of the iteration is especially easy when the finite field is written in a normal basis: If

$$A = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_i \beta^{2^i}$$

which we can write more simply as

$$A = (a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{n-1}),$$

then

$$A^2 = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_i \beta^{2^{i+1}}$$

written more simply as

$$A^2 = (a_{n-1}, a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{n-2}).$$

That is, squaring an element in the finite field can be done with a circular shift of the bits representing the element in a normal basis. Coefficients for general terms A^{2^k} are similarly just circular bit shifts.

One can further simplify the arithmetic to allow for all products of elements in the finite field to be done by coefficient shifting by adopting an *optimal normal basis* [MOVW89], which exists for all the finite fields $GF(2^k)$ relevant to cryptography.

Elliptic Curves

7.1. Basics

Definition 7.1. An *elliptic curve* \mathcal{E}_K over a field K is the set of points in satisfying an equation with integer coefficients that is quadratic in one variable and cubic in another.

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 + ax + b$$

An excellent more extended reference for this material is [HMOV04].

Remark 7.2. In general we might think we would have to consider the more general form

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 + ay = x^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$$

However, we can get rid of the linear term in y and the quadratic term in x provided we can divide by 2 and 3. Since we are going to start by being interested in *rational* number solutions, with $K = \mathbb{Q}$, we can substitute

$$y = y' - a/2$$

and

$$x = x' - b/3$$

and get a rationally equivalent polynomial without the linear y term or the quadratic x term.

Later on we will be dealing with curves whose points are taken not from the rational numbers but from elements in a finite field whose coefficients are taken mod 2, and in those cases we won't be able to divide by 2; we thus may have a linear term in y .

Remark 7.3. This is only one of several “standard” representations for the curve. We also sometimes see the Weierstrass form

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = 4x^3 - g_2x - g_3$$

The mathematical structures are the same regardless of the formulation. It’s only the high-school-level algebraic formulas that have to be redone.

An elliptic curve often has a graph like the one shown in Figure 7.1. This is really the plane cutting through a three-dimensional surface at a particular value of the z coordinate, and the general surface is similar to that of a saddle. As one pulls up in z , the neck between $x = 1$ and $x = 2$ gets smaller and eventually the bulge at the left becomes an isolated oval, as if it were the pommel on the saddle. As one pushes down in z , the neck gets wider and the prominence of the bulge gets smaller and smaller.

7.1.1. Straight Lines and Intersections. Since this is a cubic in x , a straight line should cut the graph of the curve in three points (counting multiplicities). That is, if we intersect the line

$$y = Mx + B$$

with the curve, we get

$$M^2x^2 + 2MBx + B^2 = x^3 + ax + b$$

which is

$$x^3 - M^2x^2 + (a - 2MB)x + b - B^2 = 0$$

and if we factor the cubic, we get

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (x - x_1)(x - x_2)(x - x_3) \\ &= x^3 - (x_1 + x_2 + x_3)x^2 + x^2(*) + x(*) - x_1x_2x_3 \end{aligned}$$

where we don’t really care about the middle terms. What we do care about are the Newton equations

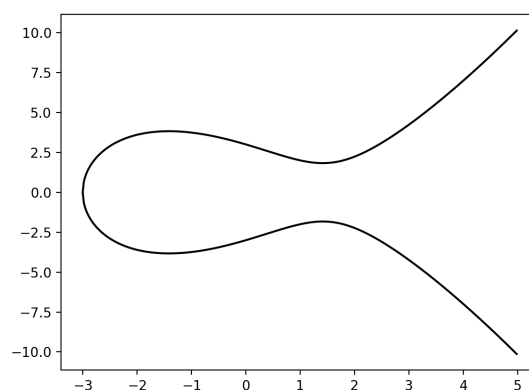
$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = M^2$$

and

$$x_1x_2x_3 = B^2 - b$$

Therefore, given two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) with *rational* coordinates, then

$$M = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

Figure 7.1. Graph of $y^2 = x^3 - 6x + 9$ 

is rational, and so is

$$B = y_1 - x_1 \cdot \left(\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \right)$$

Since x_1 is rational, x_2 is rational, and M is rational, then x_3 must be rational. Then, since x_3 is rational, and B is rational, we have that y_3 is rational.

That is, two points with rational coordinates determine a straight line that intersects the curve in a third point that also has rational

coordinates. We note that this is not a property only of rational numbers; if we consider solutions whose coordinates lie in any field, the same result obtains: the third point intersecting a straight line that joins two points with coordinates in the field will also have coordinates in the field.

7.1.2. Tangent Lines. The formulas above work for looking at the straight line determined by two different points. What about two points that are the same point?

For this we need the tangent, so we differentiate.

$$2yy' = 3x^2 + a$$

and thus

$$y' = \frac{3x^2 + a}{2y}$$

which says that the slope M of the tangent line at a point (x_1, y_1) is

$$M = \frac{3x_1^2 + a}{2y_1}$$

and thus that

$$x_3 = \left(\frac{3x_1^2 + a}{2y_1} \right)^2 - 2x_1$$

Again, if we start with rational coordinates, then the third point has rational coordinates.

7.1.3. Formulas. We use the curve

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 + ax + b$$

If we have two points with rational coordinates

$$P_1 = (x_1, y_1)$$

$$P_2 = (x_2, y_2)$$

then they determine a line

$$y = Mx + B$$

with

$$M = \frac{3x_1^2 + a}{2y_1}$$

or

$$M = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

depending on whether $P_1 = P_2$ or not, and

$$B = y_1 - Mx_1$$

By the Newton equations for the roots, we have that the straight line intersects the curve in a third point

$$P_3 = (x_3, y_3)$$

with

$$x_3 = M^2 - x_1 - x_2.$$

This is enough to determine y_3 up to sign, and we can determine the sign by

$$M = \frac{y_3 - y_1}{x_3 - x_1}$$

7.1.4. The Mordell-Weil Group. The first thing we observe about this operation is that this operation turns the set of points that are solutions to the equation into an abelian group, which is normally written additively.

The group law is that

- (1) the identity of the group is the “point at infinity”.
- (2) the negative (inverse) of a point $P = (x, y)$ is the point $-P = (x, -y)$ that is the reflection about the x -axis.
- (3) the three points collinear on a straight line sum to the identity

The last item is the same as saying that if we have three collinear points

$$P_1 = (x_1, y_1), P_2 = (x_2, y_2), P_3 = (x_3, y_3)$$

then we have in the group that

$$P_1 + P_2 = -P_3 = (x_3, -y_3)$$

Example 7.4. Let

$$y^2 = x^3 - 36x$$

and consider the points

$$P = (-3, 9)$$

$$Q = (-2, 8)$$

Summing $P + Q$:

For $P + Q$ we get

$$M = \frac{9 - 8}{-3 + 2} = \frac{1}{-1} = -1$$

so

$$x_3 = 1 + 3 + 2 = 6$$

In this case we don't have to worry about the sign of y_3 because

$$y_3^2 = 216 - 216 = 0$$

so we have

$$y_3 = 0$$

and

$$P + Q = (6, 0)$$

Doubling P :

To compute $2P$, we need

$$y' = \frac{3x^2 - 36}{2y}$$

and thus

$$M = \frac{27 - 36}{18} = \frac{-1}{2}$$

from which we get

$$x_3 = \frac{1}{4} + 3 + 3 = \frac{25}{4}$$

and then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{-y_3 - 9}{25/4 + 3} &= \frac{-1}{2} \\ -y_3 &= 9 + \frac{-1}{2} \cdot \frac{37}{4} = \frac{72}{8} - \frac{37}{8} = \frac{35}{8} \end{aligned}$$

so

$$2P = (25/4, -35/8)$$

Example 7.5. Now let

$$y^2 = x^3 + 1$$

and consider the point

$$P = (2, 3)$$

Then for $2P$ we have

$$M = 3x^2/2y = 12/6 = 2$$

and thus

$$x_3 = 4 - 2 - 2 = 0$$

This means $y_3 = \pm 1$ and we determine from the slope that $y_3 = 1$.

We then find

$$3P = (2, 3) + (0, 1)$$

getting

$$M = 1$$

$$x_3 = -1$$

$$y_3 = 0$$

so

$$3P = (2, 3) + (0, 1) = (-1, 0)$$

We then find

$$4P = (2, 3) + (-1, 0)$$

getting

$$M = 1$$

$$x_3 = 0$$

$$y_3 = -1$$

so

$$4P = (2, 3) + (-1, 0) = (0, -1)$$

We then find

$$5P = (2, 3) + (0, -1)$$

getting

$$M = 2$$

$$x_3 = 2$$

$$y_3 = -3$$

so

$$5P = (2, 3) + (-1, 0) = (2, -3)$$

Now, when we try to add to get

$$6P = (2, 3) + (2, -3)$$

we get a zero in the denominator for M . The two points lie on a vertical line, so they are inverse to each other in the group, and the third point on the line is the point at infinity. What is somewhat cute about this is that we will find the answer we want exactly at the point that the arithmetic fails.

7.2. Observation

One should note that since we have

$$x_3 = \left(\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \right)^2 - x_1 - x_2$$

the denominators in the fractions are essentially being squared with each addition of points. So the arithmetic, as rational number arithmetic, is pretty horrible; with every addition or doubling, the number of bits needed to represent the coordinates of a point essentially doubles.

7.3. Projective Coordinates and Jacobian Coordinates

In many cases, it is simpler to shift to *projective coordinates* *Jacobian coordinates* x, y, z instead of standard coordinates x, y . This is actually quite simple: We choose not to work with

$$\mathcal{E} : Y^2 = X^3 + aX + b$$

because it would require us to do rational arithmetic. Instead, we notice that if a and b are integers, then the rational numbers that are the coordinates

$$(X, Y)$$

will be

$$(x/z^2, y/z^3)$$

for integers x, y , and z . If we clear denominators we get the equation for the curve as

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 + axz^4 + bz^6$$

We consider a point on the curve to be the triple

$$(x : y : z)$$

all of which are integers.

What this really does, after one rewrites all the formulas for doubling or adding points, is provide a gentler way (gentler, that is, than division by zero) to determine that one is about to add two points that lie on a vertical line.

7.4. An Example of a Curve with Many Points

A nontrivial curve with a surprisingly large number of integer points is

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 - 3024x - 1353456$$

which has points

$$\begin{aligned}
P_1 &= (120, \pm 108) \\
P_2 &= (156, \pm 1404) \\
P_3 &= (192, \pm 2268) \\
P_4 &= (228, \pm 3132) \\
P_5 &= (552, \pm 2052) \\
P_6 &= (588, \pm 14148) \\
P_7 &= (1020, \pm 32508) \\
P_8 &= (1488, \pm 57348) \\
P_9 &= (10056, \pm 1008396) \\
P_{10} &= (22080, \pm 3280932) \\
P_{11} &= (34356, \pm 6368004) \\
P_{12} &= (561360, \pm 420593148)
\end{aligned}$$

7.5. Curves Modulo a Prime p

What we have been discussing above are curves whose points are taken from the field of rational numbers.

We can equally well look at curves whose points are taken from a field of integers modulo a prime p , or from a field generated by an irreducible polynomial with binary coefficients.

For example, if we consider points modulo 11 on the curve

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 + x + 6$$

then the points are

$$\begin{aligned}
&(2, 4), (2, 7) \\
&(3, 5), (3, 6) \\
&(5, 2), (5, 9) \\
&(7, 2), (7, 9) \\
&(8, 3), (8, 8) \\
&(10, 2), (10, 9)
\end{aligned}$$

and doing the curve arithmetic, but this time doing all arithmetic modulo 11, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 P &= (2, 4) \\
 2P &= (5, 9) \\
 3P &= (8, 8) \\
 4P &= (10, 2) \\
 5P &= (8, 3) \\
 6P &= (5, 2) \\
 7P &= (2, 7) \\
 8P &= \mathcal{O}
 \end{aligned}$$

7.6. Hasse's Theorem

We shall see later in Section 11.2.1 and beyond that cryptography can be done in finite groups modulo a prime p , provided that the order of the group is relatively small modulo p and that the identity of the group can be connected to some algebraic expression becoming zero modulo p . We have seen with the projective representation of the curve that the second condition is met: the identity of the curve group can be recognized with the z -coordinate becomes zero modulo p .

That the first condition, on the size of the group, is met is Hasse's Theorem [HMOV04, p. 82].

Theorem 7.6 (Hasse's Theorem). *Let $\#\mathcal{E}(F_p)$ be the number of points on an elliptic curve \mathcal{E} taken modulo a prime p . Then*

$$\#\mathcal{E}(F_p) = p + 1 - t$$

where we have

$$|t| < 2\sqrt{p}$$

That is to say, the number of points on a curve modulo p is within $2\sqrt{p}$ of $p + 1$.

Mathematics, Computing, and Arithmetic

We have remarked earlier that actually doing cryptography requires combining mathematics and computing. We will have occasion to use several algorithms and computation tricks that make it possible to do the discrete mathematics that is cryptography on computers that have not necessarily been designed to provide robust support for discrete mathematics. This chapter covers a few of these tricks and algorithms necessary for understanding how one might actually do cryptography in the real world.

8.1. Mersenne Primes

Every so often (for example, on 19 January 2016) it is announced that a new Mersenne prime is discovered. This is a brief introduction of how and why that happens, why it is that the largest known prime numbers are almost invariably Mersenne numbers, and why this apparently esoteric activity in some sense a model for how computing is done in the real world. The lesson to be learned is the interplay between the mathematics and the computing. One can prove that testing certain numbers for primality can be done more quickly (in theory, with a big- \mathcal{O} estimate) than testing a random number, and fortunately, for these certain numbers, there is a computational trick that can be used

to make primality testing not just theoretically feasible but actually feasible in practice.

8.1.1. Introduction. The largest known prime number as of this writing is

$$2^{57885161} - 1,$$

a number of 17,425,170 decimal digits, found on 25 January 2013.

No, scratch that. The announcement was made on 19 January 2016 that a new largest prime has been found,

$$2^{74207281} - 1,$$

a number of 22,338,618 decimal digits.

This is the third number of more than ten million decimals that has been proved prime. (A number of the form $2^N - 1$ is called a *Mersenne number*.)

Although this may seem like a rather abstract enterprise, proving such numbers prime is a combination of theory, algorithm, and implementation that serves as a good model for how to think about solving problems, especially problems in discrete mathematics, on a computer.

It also happens to be the case that if one analyzes the computational cost of finding the largest known prime number, that cost tracks fairly well the raw computing power of the best available computing platforms. In essence, since this computation is so huge, and yet so completely predictable, one can argue that the narrow group of extreme Mersenne fans do us a favor by running a computation that tracks an otherwise difficult measurement of the raw capability of computing power.

8.1.2. Theory.

8.1.2.1. General Purpose Theory. First off, how is that we prove a number to be prime? There is a general purpose algorithm call the AKS algorithm (after the initials of the inventors) that runs reasonably quickly [AKS04]. This caused quite a stir back in 2002 by being the first algorithm that tested numbers for primality that could be proved to run in polynomial time. In the case of primality testing, this means polynomial in the number of bits in the number to be tested. If the number is P , and has N bits (and thus we have $2^{N-1} \leq P < 2^N$, then AKS runs in time polynomial in N , which is polynomial in $\lg P$. Actually, the best version runs in time roughly $(\lg P)^6$.

As good as this algorithm is, however, the algorithm is too complicated to be used to test a number of 17 million decimals. Instead, we have to rely on simpler methods if we are going to test these huge numbers.

The basis for this kind of heroic computation is Fermat's Little Theorem.

8.1.2.2. More General Purpose Theory.

Theorem 8.1 (Fermat's (Little) Theorem). *For any prime integer P , and any integer a , then P divides $a^{P-1} - 1$.*

Actually, this is really just Lagrange's theorem that any element in a group, raised to the order of the group, is the identity. The order of the multiplicative group modulo a prime P is just $P - 1$, so this is just Lagrange.

This is a very useful theorem, but it is not a theorem that can be used to prove a number is prime. What this says is that if for any a we have that a^{P-1} is *not* 1 modulo P , then P cannot be a prime. But for general numbers it only works in that direction and is not an "if and only if" theorem. In fact, there is an infinite set of what are called *Carmichael numbers* which are integers C that are *not* prime but for which N divides $a^{C-1} - 1$ for all a . The smallest Carmichael number is 561.

8.1.2.3. Special Purpose Theory. One of the reasons that the largest known primes have (almost) always been Mersenne primes is that for this special kind of number it is in fact possible to get an if-and-only-if variation on Fermat's Little Theorem to work.

Theorem 8.2 (Lucas-Lehmer Test). [HW60, pp. 223-225] *Let N be an odd prime congruent to 3 modulo 4. Let $P = 2^N - 1$ be a Mersenne number, and recursively define $s_0 = 4$ and*

$$s_i = s_{i-1}^2 - 2 \pmod{P}$$

for $i > 0$. If P divides s_{N-2} , that is, if the residue s_{N-2} is zero modulo P , then P is prime. Otherwise, P is not prime.

This isn't really just Lagrange (or Fermat Little), but it is quite similar, in that we are required to compute a single power, and then we get to determine primality both yes or no based on the outcome of this test.

What this gives us is a theoretical test that runs in time that is linear in the number of bits; we need $\mathcal{O}(N)$ squarings. This is asymptotically not much different from the general AKS algorithm, but of course this only works for Mersenne numbers.

The condition that N is an odd prime is not an important condition, because high school algebra shows that

$$2^{ab} - 1 = (2^a - 1) \cdot (2^{ab-a} + 2^{ab-2a} - 2^{ab-3a} \dots + 1)$$

so there is an algebraic factoring of $2^{ab} - 1$ if both a and b are larger than 1 and we wouldn't even need to do a real test for primality.

8.1.2.4. Preprocessing. In any real search for primes, we want to filter out as soon as possible the integers that can't possibly be primes. For example, if $N \equiv 4 \pmod{5}$, then $2^N - 1$ will be zero modulo 5. There is a similar set of conditions that can be applied for all primes, so a search for Mersenne primes starts by filtering out all the exponents that can't possibly work. In general, the mantra is that one filters until one just can't stand it any more, or until the cost benefit of running the filter drops below the cost of testing an exponent that remains after the filter.

8.1.2.5. Algorithms. Now, given that we have a theorem that allegedly runs in polynomial time in the number of bits, how can we make this computationally effective?

Fact 8.3. We do not need to compute s_{N-2} to full precision; we only need to compute s_{N-2} modulo P , so we can reduce modulo P with every squaring, and our arithmetic only gets twice as large as P itself. That is, we only need to deal with integers of size $2N$ bits.

This is an obvious fact to a number theorist, but it's also very powerful in computation because it keeps the size of the numbers down. If a is a number of n bits, then a^2 is a number of $2n$ bits (give or take one or two based on carries or no carries), and a^4 is a number of $4n$ bits. The actual number that would be s_{N-2} without reduction would be a number of $2^{N-2} \approx P$ bits, exponentially larger than P itself.

But because we are allowed to reduce modulo P , we could keep the arithmetic necessary down to about 17 million decimals at every stage, if we were testing what is now the largest known prime.

In the case of the current second largest Mersenne prime, we need to compute about 74 million squares.

The headliner algorithm we use is *fast multiplication with the Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)*. [Lei92, Qui94] If we were not to think too

Figure 8.1. Naive multiplication of integers

			7	2	3
			2	5	6
				1	8
			1	2	
		4	2		
			1	5	
		1	0		
	3	5			
			6		
		4			
1	4				
1	8	5	0	8	8

hard, we would do the squarings using naive schoolchild arithmetic, which is basically multiplying one array of numbers times another array of numbers, accumulating the products into a third array, and settling the carries.

On modern computers, we would do this not base 10, but base 2^{32} , since on a serious computer we can accumulate a $32 \times 32 = 64$ -bit product without overflow. For the second largest Mersenne prime, a single calculation of an intermediate value of s_i would take $74207281/32 = 2318978$ “digits” (rounding up for the last digit). Naively, multiplication of an n -digit number times an m -digit number takes $n \times m$ multiplications. Squaring is twice as fast as multiplication, because we don’t have distinct cross-products, but a naive squaring is still $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ multiplications.

However, the *Fast Fourier Transform*, or FFT, can be adapted from its usual signal processing use to produce a multiplication algorithm that runs not in $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ time but in the much faster $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$ time.

Algorithmically, then, proving any particular Mersenne number $2^N - 1$ to be prime requires about N squarings (and then a one-digit subtraction) of a number that is N bits long, and each of these squarings can be done in something like $(N/32) \cdot \log(N/32)$ integer multiplications of single-precision 32-bit numbers. After each squaring, we

must reduce a double-length product of $2N$ bits down to a single-length result of N bits.

8.1.3. Implementation. We are still not able to test for primality in feasible time using only these simplifications. If the complexity of FFT multiplication were exactly $n \log n$, then a single squaring of a number of 74207281 bits would take about 34 million integer multiplication machine instructions, and the total number of multiplications would be more than 2.5×10^{15} . At 10 nanoseconds per multiplication, this puts the cost of multiplication in the ballpark of 2.5×10^7 seconds, which is about ten months. This would be acceptable, if this were all that we have to do, and if we only needed to test a single exponent, but in fact we have this nasty business of reducing a double length product down to single length. Unfortunately, a genuine multiprecision division is usually maybe 50 to 100 times more expensive than a multiplication. If we had to do a genuine division by $2^N - 1$ in order to reduce the double-length squared value down to a single length number for the next squaring, we would not be able to finish the test of a Mersenne number for primality.

At this point we rely on an implementation trick based on the nature of computers built with binary arithmetic. Any of the values s_i computed in the intermediate steps of the Lucas-Lehmer test can be written as a single “digit” D base 2^N . When we square D , we get a “two-digit” number $A \cdot 2^N + B$, where each of A and B are single digits base 2^N , that is, they are integers of N bits in length. We now do a minor bit of algebraic sleight of hand:

$$\begin{aligned} A \cdot 2^N + B &= \\ A \cdot 2^N - A + A + B &= \\ A \cdot (2^N - 1) + A + B &\equiv \\ \equiv A + B \pmod{2^N - 1}. \end{aligned}$$

If we are interested in reducing the product modulo $2^N - 1$, then the task is easy. The remainder of this expression upon dividing by $2^N - 1$ is clearly $A + B$, with possibly one subtraction by $2^N - 1$ if the addition generated a carry.

Think for a moment what this means. In steady state we have an intermediate value s_i that is a remainder modulo $2^N - 1$, that is, an integer of N bits. When we square this number as part of the process of computing $s_{i+1} = s_i^2 - 2$ modulo $2^N - 1$, we get an integer of $2N$ bits,

or of two digits base 2^N . In order to compute the remainder modulo $2^N - 1$, however, we do not need to do any divisions at all. Instead, we take the left “digit” A , that is to say, the left half of the product, shift it over, and add it to the right half of the product, the right “digit” B . Addition is a linear-time operation, not a quadratic time operation (like multiplication), and certainly not as expensive as is division itself.

We note that in adding A and B together, we will on average half the time have a carry and get a number of $N + 1$ bits, larger than $2^N - 1$. To complete the reduction we would then have to subtract $2^N - 1$, but we would have to subtract only once. The cost of the “division”, which is really a modular reduction, is thus for Mersenne numbers only $1 - 1/2$ times the linear cost of a single addition. (One addition all the time is one linear cost, plus one more linear cost half the time on average for the cases in which the addition generates a carry, comes out to $1 - 1/2$ linear operations on average.)

8.1.4. Summary: Feasibility. The ability to prove huge Mersenne numbers to be prime thus comes from the convergence of several factors.

- (1) First, for these numbers there is a theoretical result (the Lucas-Lehmer test) that allows for one test to determine for a number of this special form either if the number is prime or is not prime.
- (2) Second, there is a basic algorithm (the FFT) that cuts a naively n^2 number of “steps” down to a more tractable $n \log n$ number of “steps”.
- (3) Finally, there is an implementation trick that turns an otherwise intractable modular division in the innermost loop into a very tractable linear time addition.

Without all of these working together, it would not be possible to prove that numbers of this magnitude were prime.

8.1.5. Fermat Numbers. The discussion above has been about Mersenne numbers, of the form

$$M_n = 2^n - 1.$$

A similar discussion can be had about the Fermat numbers

$$F_n = 2^{2^n} + 1.$$

Fermat conjectured that these were prime for all n . In fact, they have been seen to be prime only for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$.

There is an analogous test, due to Pépin, for testing these to be prime: F_n is prime if and only if

$$3^{(F_n-1)/2} \equiv -1 \pmod{F_n}.$$

The same arguments apply here as for Mersenne numbers. We have an if-and-only-if test for primality that is a refinement of Lagrange's theorem in groups, and we can apply the arithmetic trick

$$\begin{aligned} A \cdot 2^N + B &= \\ A \cdot 2^N + A - A + B &= \\ A \cdot (2^N + 1) - A + B &\equiv \\ \equiv B - A \pmod{2^N + 1}. \end{aligned}$$

to do a modular reduction not by division but by a subtraction of the two N -bit halves of a $2N$ -long product.

8.1.6. The Arithmetic Trick Is Important. We will talk later about elliptic curve crypto. The elliptic curves recommended by NIST for use in cryptography all have primes that have Mersenne/Fermat like shape as

$$2^n + f(.) + 1$$

where $f(.)$ is a polynomial that is at most a few powers of 2, so that analogous fast reduction games can be played with the arithmetic by using additions or subtractions instead of division.

8.2. Multiprecise Arithmetic and the Fast Fourier Transform

8.2.1. Background.

Theorem 8.4. *Any oscillatory squiggle can be written as a sum of sine waves.*

That is, any function with $f(t)$ a function of time t “in the time domain” can also be written “in the frequency domain” as

$$f(\theta) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} a_n \exp(2\pi i \theta / n)$$

Going from $f(t)$ to get the coefficients a_n for $f(\theta)$ and back again is done by the *Fourier transform* and its inverse.

8.2.2. Polynomial Multiplication. Polynomial multiplication is actually the same problem.

Let $f(x) = \sum a_i x^i$ and $g(x) = \sum b_i x^i$

Then $h(x) = f(x) \cdot g(x) = \sum c_i x^i$ where

$$c_0 = a_0 b_0$$

$$c_1 = a_0 b_1 + a_1 b_0$$

$$c_2 = a_0 b_2 + a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_0$$

$$c_3 = a_0 b_3 + a_1 b_2 + a_2 b_1 + a_3 b_0$$

$$c_4 = a_0 b_4 + a_1 b_3 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_1 + a_4 b_0$$

The coefficients c_i are *convolution products*.

In general, then, to multiply two polys of degrees n and m would take nm multiplies of all coeffs against all other coeffs (and then some adds that we don't count because addition is so much cheaper than multiplication).

But maybe we can do it faster?

- (1) Evaluate the polys f and g at $2n + 1$ points (assuming $n > m$)
This costs time linear in n .
- (2) Multiply the $2n + 1$ values together coordinatewise. This costs time linear in n .
- (3) We know that the poly passing through the points is unique and must be the product h of f and g
- (4) Interpolate to determine the unique h .

Doing Lagrange interpolation in the naive way, we have $2n$ summands, each of which takes $2n$ multiplies. so this is naively order n^2 multiplications. This sounds like *more* work – How can this be faster?

The trick that is the “fast” part of “fast Fourier transform” is that if we interpolate at roots of unity then the sums of the cross product terms collapse to zero and don't need to be computed.

And, of course, it's a trivial jump from polynomial multiplication to multiprecise multiplication of integers. The decimal integer 2345, for example, is simply the polynomial

$$2x^3 + 3x^2 + 4x + 5$$

evaluated at the radix 10. Multiplication of two k -digit numbers (in whatever radix is used) is done by multiplying the two polynomials of

degrees $k - 1$ together and then evaluating the product polynomial for x equal to the radix.

8.2.3. Complex Numbers as Needed for Fourier Transforms.

We define $i = \sqrt{-1}$ and do simple algebra with this, so we have

$$\begin{aligned} i^2 &= (\sqrt{-1})^2 = -1, \\ i^3 &= (\sqrt{-1})^3 = (\sqrt{-1})^2 \cdot (\sqrt{-1}) = -\sqrt{-1} = -i, \\ i^4 &= (i^2)^2 = (-1)^2 = 1. \end{aligned}$$

Consider points in the *Argand plane* with axes x and $iy = \sqrt{-1}y$.

We define $e^{i\theta}$ to be $\cos \theta + i \sin \theta$.

With this definition, $e^{i\theta}$ is a vector of length 1 in the Argand plane, thus a unit vector with an angle of θ above the x -axis.

Then $(e^{i\theta})^2 = e^{2i\theta} = \cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta$ (do the trigonometry...)

All we need of complex arithmetic is that the n -th roots of unity, which are the solutions to the equation $x^n = 1$, are the complex numbers $e^{2\pi i k/n}$. These are the points on the unit circle with angles $2\pi k/n$, for $k = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$. Multiplying these roots of unity can be done just by adding the exponents, which is the same as adding the angles. And of course values of k larger than n can be reduced modulo n , since we're just going around in a circle...

8.2.4. The Fourier Transform. We'll use an 8-point FFT as an example.

Let ω be a primitive 8-th root of unity, that is, $\omega = \exp(2\pi i/8)$, so we have $\omega^8 = 1$. Part of the mathematical trick we will use, to get the convolution products to collapse to zero, is the observation that

$$0 = (w^8 - 1) = (w - 1)(w^7 + w^6 + w^5 + w^4 + w^3 + w^2 + w^1 + w^0).$$

Since we have 0 on the left hand side, one of the two factors on the right hand side must be 0. It can't be $w - 1$, because we specifically chose w to be $e^{2\pi i/8}$, which is most definitely not 1. Therefore, the sum of the roots of unity in the second term of the right hand side must be zero. This is why the cross product terms in the Fourier transform disappear.

Consider the matrix

$$F = (\omega^{ij}) = \begin{pmatrix} \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^1 & \omega^2 & \omega^3 & \omega^4 & \omega^5 & \omega^6 & \omega^7 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 & \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^3 & \omega^6 & \omega^1 & \omega^4 & \omega^7 & \omega^2 & \omega^5 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^5 & \omega^2 & \omega^7 & \omega^4 & \omega^1 & \omega^6 & \omega^3 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 & \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^7 & \omega^6 & \omega^5 & \omega^4 & \omega^3 & \omega^2 & \omega^1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & \omega^1 & \omega^2 & \omega^3 & -1 & -\omega^1 & -\omega^2 & -\omega^3 \\ 1 & \omega^2 & -1 & -\omega^2 & 1 & \omega^2 & -1 & -\omega^2 \\ 1 & \omega^3 & -\omega^2 & \omega^1 & -1 & -\omega^3 & \omega^2 & -\omega^1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -\omega^1 & \omega^2 & -\omega^3 & -1 & \omega^1 & -\omega^2 & \omega^3 \\ 1 & -\omega^2 & -1 & \omega^2 & 1 & -\omega^2 & -1 & \omega^2 \\ 1 & -\omega^3 & -\omega^2 & -\omega^1 & -1 & \omega^3 & \omega^2 & \omega^1 \end{pmatrix}$$

We note that the inverse $F^{-1} = (\omega^{-ij})$.

Then if $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_7x^7$ the *discrete Fourier transform* of f is

$$\begin{pmatrix} f(\omega^0) \\ f(\omega^1) \\ f(\omega^2) \\ f(\omega^3) \\ f(\omega^4) \\ f(\omega^5) \\ f(\omega^6) \\ f(\omega^7) \end{pmatrix} = F \cdot \begin{pmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \\ a_4 \\ a_5 \\ a_6 \\ a_7 \end{pmatrix}$$

The Fourier transform takes coefficients to points.

The inverse transform takes points to coefficients.

But the matrix multiplication is an n^2 computation, because it's n rows dotted with the column vector of height n .

8.2.5. The Cooley-Tukey Fast Fourier Transform. Now for the *fast* part of the FFT.

We don't really have to do the n^2 multiplications of the matrix multiplication.

We can use the structure of the roots of unity to do the Fourier transform in $\mathcal{O}(n \lg n)$ time.

To evaluate a polynomial $f(x)$ of degree n at the n -th roots of unity, let

$$f^{[0]}(x) = a_0 + a_2x + a_4x^2 + \dots a_{n-2}x^{n/2-1}$$

$$f^{[1]}(x) = a_1 + a_3x + a_5x^2 + \dots a_{n-1}x^{n/2-1}$$

The first polynomial has even subscript coefficients and the second one has odd subscript coefficients so we have

$$f(x) = f^{[0]}(x) + x f^{[1]}(x),$$

and to evaluate $f(x)$ at the n -th roots of unity we need to evaluate $f^{[0]}(x)$ and $f^{[1]}(x)$ at

$$(\omega^0)^2, (\omega^1)^2, (\omega^2)^2, \dots, (\omega^{n-1})^2$$

and then in n multiplications we will get $f(x)$ at all n -th roots.

Theorem 8.5. *If n is positive and even, the squares of the n -th roots of unity are identical to the $n/2$ -th roots of unity.*

We apply this reduction recursively: To compute the n -th order FT, we need to evaluate two polynomials at the $n/2$ -th roots of unity and then do n multiplications.

That is, to compute the n -th order FT, we need to do two $n/2$ -th order FTs and then do n multiplications.

Recursively,

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n \\ &= 4T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right) + n + n/2 \\ &= \dots \\ &= n \lg n + n(1 + 1/2 + 1/4 + \dots) \\ &= n \lg n + 2n \\ &= \mathcal{O}(n \lg n) \end{aligned}$$

We will do an example first, and then we will present the algorithmic process that implements the FFT.

8.2.6. An Example. We're going to multiply

$$f(x) = 1 + 2x + 3x^2$$

and

$$g(x) = 9 + 8x + 7x^2 + 6x^3$$

using a Fourier Transform.

First of all, we'll do the multiplication the long way

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \begin{array}{cccccc}
 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
 * & 9 & 8 & 7 & 6 & 0 & 0 \\
 \hline
 & 9 & 18 & 27 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
 + & 0 & 8 & 16 & 24 & 0 & 0 \\
 + & 0 & 0 & 7 & 14 & 21 & 0 \\
 + & 0 & 0 & 0 & 6 & 12 & 18 \\
 \hline
 & 9 & 26 & 50 & 44 & 33 & 18
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

or

$$h(x) = 9 + 26x + 50x^2 + 44x^3 + 33x^4 + 18x^5$$

Now, in order to do this as a power-of-two transform, we'll have to do an eight point transform, since 8 is the least power of 2 larger than the degree (5) of the product.

We do the multiplication

$$\begin{pmatrix}
 \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^1 & \omega^2 & \omega^3 & \omega^4 & \omega^5 & \omega^6 & \omega^7 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 & \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^3 & \omega^6 & \omega^1 & \omega^4 & \omega^7 & \omega^2 & \omega^5 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^5 & \omega^2 & \omega^7 & \omega^4 & \omega^1 & \omega^6 & \omega^3 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 & \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^7 & \omega^6 & \omega^5 & \omega^4 & \omega^3 & \omega^2 & \omega^1
 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and the multiplication

$$\begin{pmatrix}
 \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^1 & \omega^2 & \omega^3 & \omega^4 & \omega^5 & \omega^6 & \omega^7 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 & \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^3 & \omega^6 & \omega^1 & \omega^4 & \omega^7 & \omega^2 & \omega^5 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^5 & \omega^2 & \omega^7 & \omega^4 & \omega^1 & \omega^6 & \omega^3 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 & \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 \\
 \omega^0 & \omega^7 & \omega^6 & \omega^5 & \omega^4 & \omega^3 & \omega^2 & \omega^1
 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ 8 \\ 7 \\ 6 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

to get two column vectors

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^0 + 3 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 \\ 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^1 + 3 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 \\ 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^2 + 3 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 \\ 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^3 + 3 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 \\ 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^4 + 3 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 \\ 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^5 + 3 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 \\ 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^6 + 3 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 \\ 1 \cdot \omega^0 + 2 \cdot \omega^7 + 3 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^0 + 7 \cdot \omega^0 + 6 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^1 + 7 \cdot \omega^2 + 6 \cdot \omega^3 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^2 + 7 \cdot \omega^4 + 6 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^3 + 7 \cdot \omega^6 + 6 \cdot \omega^1 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^4 + 7 \cdot \omega^0 + 6 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^5 + 7 \cdot \omega^2 + 6 \cdot \omega^7 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^6 + 7 \cdot \omega^4 + 6 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 8 \cdot \omega^7 + 7 \cdot \omega^6 + 6 \cdot \omega^5 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 \end{pmatrix}$$

where we have left in all the coefficients because we're going to make them all collapse later.

We do the componentwise multiplication and we know what we're going to get because this problem is small enough that we can do the multiplication by hand.

$$hvec = \begin{pmatrix} 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^0 + 44 \cdot \omega^0 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^1 + 50 \cdot \omega^2 + 44 \cdot \omega^3 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^5 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^2 + 50 \cdot \omega^4 + 44 \cdot \omega^6 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^3 + 50 \cdot \omega^6 + 44 \cdot \omega^1 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^7 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^4 + 50 \cdot \omega^0 + 44 \cdot \omega^4 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^5 + 50 \cdot \omega^2 + 44 \cdot \omega^7 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^1 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^6 + 50 \cdot \omega^4 + 44 \cdot \omega^2 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 \\ 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^7 + 50 \cdot \omega^6 + 44 \cdot \omega^5 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^3 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now we multiply this column vector by the inverse matrix for the Fourier Transform. This matrix is

$$F^{-1} = (\omega^{-ij}) = \begin{pmatrix} \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 & \omega^0 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^7 & \omega^6 & \omega^5 & \omega^4 & \omega^3 & \omega^2 & \omega^1 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 & \omega^0 & \omega^6 & \omega^4 & \omega^2 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^5 & \omega^2 & \omega^7 & \omega^4 & \omega^1 & \omega^6 & \omega^3 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 & \omega^0 & \omega^4 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^3 & \omega^6 & \omega^1 & \omega^4 & \omega^7 & \omega^2 & \omega^5 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 & \omega^0 & \omega^2 & \omega^4 & \omega^6 \\ \omega^0 & \omega^1 & \omega^2 & \omega^3 & \omega^4 & \omega^5 & \omega^6 & \omega^7 \end{pmatrix}$$

So let's do the multiplication line by line. The first line of the result will be the dot product of the first line of F^{-1} with $hvec$, that is, of

$$(\omega^0 \ \omega^0 \ \omega^0 \ \omega^0 \ \omega^0 \ \omega^0 \ \omega^0 \ \omega^0)$$

with $hvec$. What we get is just the sum of the lines of $hvec$, since $\omega^0 = 1$: This is

$$\begin{aligned} & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^0 + 44 \cdot \omega^0 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^1 + 50 \cdot \omega^2 + 44 \cdot \omega^3 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^5 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^2 + 50 \cdot \omega^4 + 44 \cdot \omega^6 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^3 + 50 \cdot \omega^6 + 44 \cdot \omega^1 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^7 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^4 + 50 \cdot \omega^0 + 44 \cdot \omega^4 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^5 + 50 \cdot \omega^2 + 44 \cdot \omega^7 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^1 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^6 + 50 \cdot \omega^4 + 44 \cdot \omega^2 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^7 + 50 \cdot \omega^6 + 44 \cdot \omega^5 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^3 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 \end{aligned}$$

and now we can see the advantage of not collapsing things earlier. Adding up the first column of the above tableau we get

$$9 \cdot \omega^0 = 9 \cdot 1 = 9$$

added up 8 times, which is 72. In every other column we get the coefficient times

$$\omega^0 + \omega^1 + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7$$

But this sum is zero, because these are roots of unity, so we have

$$0 = \omega^8 - 1 = (\omega^1 - 1) \cdot (\omega^0 + \omega^1 + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7)$$

The product is zero, but since the first factor $(\omega^1 - 1)$ isn't zero, the second factor must be zero.

So, going down every column except the column for the coefficient 9, we get a coefficient (26, 50, 44, 33, 18) times zero. The first line of the product of F^{-1} and $hvec$ is thus just the 72.

Now we'll do the second line, and this will be all we'll need to see the pattern. Take the second line of F^{-1} ,

$$(\omega^0 \ \omega^7 \ \omega^6 \ \omega^5 \ \omega^4 \ \omega^3 \ \omega^2 \ \omega^1),$$

and multiply this times $hvec$. We get

$$\begin{aligned} & 9 \cdot \omega^0 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^0 + 44 \cdot \omega^0 + 33 \cdot \omega^0 + 18 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^7 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^1 + 44 \cdot \omega^2 + 33 \cdot \omega^3 + 18 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^5 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^6 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^2 + 44 \cdot \omega^4 + 33 \cdot \omega^6 + 18 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^5 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^3 + 44 \cdot \omega^6 + 33 \cdot \omega^1 + 18 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^7 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^4 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^4 + 44 \cdot \omega^0 + 33 \cdot \omega^4 + 18 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^0 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^3 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^5 + 44 \cdot \omega^2 + 33 \cdot \omega^7 + 18 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^1 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^2 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^6 + 44 \cdot \omega^4 + 33 \cdot \omega^2 + 18 \cdot \omega^0 + 0 \cdot \omega^6 + 0 \cdot \omega^4 \\ & \quad + \\ & 9 \cdot \omega^1 + 26 \cdot \omega^0 + 50 \cdot \omega^7 + 44 \cdot \omega^6 + 33 \cdot \omega^5 + 18 \cdot \omega^4 + 0 \cdot \omega^3 + 0 \cdot \omega^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now, let's look carefully at this. In the 26 column, we get ω^0 all the way down, so that column sum is $8 \cdot 26 = 208$. In the 9, 50, and 33 columns and the first 0 column, we get the previous sum

$$\omega^0 + \omega^1 + \omega^2 + \omega^3 + \omega^4 + \omega^5 + \omega^6 + \omega^7,$$

so these columns sum to zero. In the 44 and the second 0 column we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \omega^0 + \omega^2 + \omega^4 + \omega^6 + \omega^0 + \omega^2 + \omega^4 + \omega^6 \\ & = 1 + \omega^2 - 1 - \omega^2 + 1 + \omega^2 - 1 - \omega^2 \\ & = 0 \end{aligned}$$

and in the 18 column we have

$$\begin{aligned}\omega^0 + \omega^4 + \omega^0 + \omega^4 + \omega^0 + \omega^4 + \omega^0 + \omega^4 \\ = 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 \\ = 0.\end{aligned}$$

So what we get as the final sum for the second line entry in the column vector for $h(x)$ is just the 228.

If we now look at the third line, we'll get something entirely similar to what just happened for the second line. Everything will sum to zero except the 50 column, and we'll get $8 \cdot 50 = 400$ there.

Because we're doing the Fourier Transform with power-of-2 roots of unity, we'll get

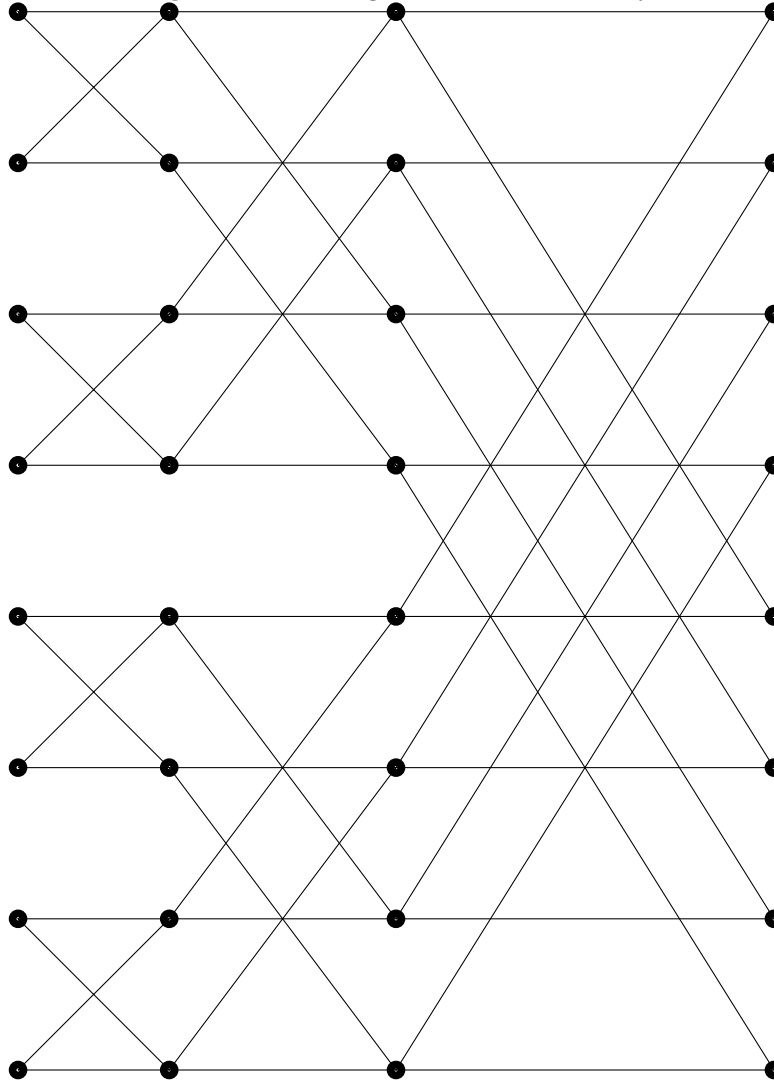
$$F^{-1} \cdot hvec = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \cdot 9 \\ 8 \cdot 26 \\ 8 \cdot 50 \\ 8 \cdot 44 \\ 8 \cdot 33 \\ 8 \cdot 18 \\ 8 \cdot 0 \\ 8 \cdot 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and when we divide out the 8, we get the coefficients for $h(x)$.

8.2.7. The FFT Butterfly. Now, how do we implement this so as to be efficient? Details can be found in several references [Lei92, Qui94] The key is the communication pattern known as the FFT butterfly, shown in Figure 8.2. The key to the butterfly is first that the communication from the first column of nodes to the second is to locations one away, from the second to the third is to locations two away, from the third to the fourth to locations four away, and so forth, depending on how many stages are needed, and second, that the flow from one column of nodes to the next is a single multiplication and a single addition of the intermediate data at each respective node. For the butterfly shown, the eight locations are for an 8-point FFT, for which there are $\log_2 8 = 3$ stages.

The computation itself is as follows, where ω is an eighth root of unity. (The powers of ω that multiply in are called “twiddle factors” by those who do FFTs.) In the first stage we combine at stride one.

Figure 8.2. An Eight-Point FFT Butterfly



a_0	$a_0 + a_4$
a_4	$a_0 + a_4\omega^4$
a_2	$a_2 + a_6$
a_6	$a_2 + a_6\omega^4$
a_1	$a_1 + a_5$
a_5	$a_1 + a_5\omega^4$
a_3	$a_3 + a_7$
a_7	$a_3 + a_7\omega^4$

Then we combine at stride two.

$a_0 + a_4$	$a_0 + a_4 + a_2 + a_6$
$a_0 + a_4\omega^4$	$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + (a_2 + a_6\omega^4)\omega^2$
$a_2 + a_6$	$a_0 + a_4 + (a_2 + a_6)\omega^4$
$a_2 + a_6\omega^4$	$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + (a_2 + a_6\omega^4)\omega^6$
$a_1 + a_5$	$a_1 + a_5 + a_3 + a_7$
$a_1 + a_5\omega^4$	$a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + (a_3 + a_7\omega^4)\omega^2$
$a_3 + a_7$	$a_1 + a_5 + (a_3 + a_7)\omega^4$
$a_3 + a_7\omega^4$	$a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + (a_3 + a_7\omega^4)\omega^6$

And in the final stage we have

$a_0 + a_4 + a_2 + a_6$	$a_0 + a_4 + a_2 + a_6 + a_1 + a_5 + a_3 + a_7$
$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + a_2\omega^2 + a_6\omega^6$	$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + a_2\omega^2 + a_6\omega^6 + (a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + a_3\omega^2 + a_7\omega^6)\omega$
$a_0 + a_4 + (a_2 + a_6)\omega^4$	$a_0 + a_4 + a_2\omega^4 + a_6\omega^4 + (a_1 + a_5 + a_3\omega^4 + a_7\omega^4)\omega^2$
$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + (a_2 + a_6\omega^4)\omega^6$	$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + a_2\omega^6 + a_6\omega^2 + (a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + a_3\omega^6 + a_7\omega^2)\omega^3$
$a_1 + a_5 + a_3 + a_7$	$a_0 + a_4 + a_2 + a_6 + (a_1 + a_5 + a_3 + a_7)\omega^4$
$a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + (a_3 + a_7\omega^4)\omega^2$	$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + a_2\omega^2 + a_6\omega^6 + (a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + a_3\omega^2 + a_7\omega^6)\omega^5$
$a_1 + a_5 + (a_3 + a_7)\omega^4$	$a_0 + a_4 + a_2\omega^4 + a_6\omega^4 + (a_1 + a_5 + a_3\omega^4 + a_7\omega^4)\omega^6$
$a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + (a_3 + a_7\omega^4)\omega^6$	$a_0 + a_4\omega^4 + a_2\omega^6 + a_6\omega^2 + (a_1 + a_5\omega^4 + a_3\omega^6 + a_7\omega^2)\omega^7$

Rearranging the terms of the second column of this tableau by subscript coefficient, we get the same pattern as in the example.

8.3. Montgomery Multiplication

The FFT allows us to multiply quickly. However, much of public-key cryptography is not just multiplication, but *modular* multiplication: at each step of the cryptographic algorithm, we multiply two residues modulo N , that are $\lg N$ bits long, to get a product that is $2 \lg N$ bits in length, and then we have to reduce that product modulo N to get a residue in the range 0 to $N - 1$, of $\lg N$ bits. That modular reduction naively requires a division with remainder. Division with remainder naively is done with a repetition of subtractions and bit shifts. For N of, say, 2048 or 4096 bits, that could be very slow indeed.

Reduction modulo N , as is needed for most public-key cryptography, can be made much faster using *Montgomery multiplication*, invented by Peter Montgomery and published in 1985.[Mon85] The idea is so important that hardware has been designed for doing Montgomery multiplication[BD97, EW93].

The basic idea is an extraordinary extrapolation from the trick used for arithmetic modulo Mersenne numbers. Thrown in for good measure is the trick used to make division itself computationally faster: if we wish to divide n by m , we would normally have the trial-and-error of finding a trial quotient, and then correcting the trial quotient, but that trial and correction can be made simpler if we premultiply the operands by an appropriate integer. Montgomery multiplication works in much the same way.

Assume we're going to do a lot of arithmetic modulo some fixed N . Choose $R = 2^k > N$ for a suitable k . Assuming that R and N are relatively prime (and if not, bump k by one and we should be able to get an R that is relatively prime), then we can solve for R' and N' such that $RR' - NN' = 1$.

What we will then do is multiply everything by R . All the constants, all the numbers, etc., will be multiplied by R . So instead of doing arithmetic with integers a and b , say, we will be doing arithmetic with integers aR and bR . And then, at the very end of the computation, we multiply any result by R' . Since $RR' \equiv 1 \pmod{N}$, we recover the result we would have had.

Addition and subtraction are fine, since

$$a + b = c \Leftrightarrow aR + bR = cR.$$

The problem is with multiplication:

$$aR \cdot bR = abR^2$$

which means that we have an extra factor of R . What we want to do is have a function to which we can pass the product abR^2 and that will return abR . We could do this by multiplying modulo N by R' , but that would be a multiplication modulo N , and it's exactly that that we are trying to avoid.

Here's how we do it. Start with $T = abR^2$.

$$\begin{aligned} m &\leftarrow (T \pmod{R}) \cdot N' \pmod{R} \\ t &\leftarrow (T + mN)/R \end{aligned}$$

and we return either t or $t - N$, whichever lies in the range 0 to $N - 1$.

Example: Let $N = 79$, and instead of using a power of 2 for R , we'll use $R = 100$ for readability. We find that $64 \cdot 100 - 81 \cdot 79 = 1$, so we have $R = 100$, $R' = 64$, $N = 79$, $N' = 81$.

Now let's say that we multiply $a = 17$ times $b = 26$ to get 442. The number 17 is really $a' \cdot 100$ modulo 79 for some a' . Multiplying $17 \cdot 64 \equiv 61 \pmod{79}$, we find that $a' = 61$. Similarly, $26 \cdot 64 \equiv 5 \pmod{79}$. So when we multiply 17 and 26 in this representation, we're really trying to multiply $61 \cdot 5 = 305 \equiv 68 \pmod{79}$.

Knowing that we can in fact work modulo 79, we know that what we have is

$$\begin{aligned} 17 \cdot 26 &= 442 \equiv (61 \cdot 100) \cdot (5 \cdot 100) \\ &\equiv 305 \cdot 100 \cdot 100 \\ &\equiv 68 \cdot 100 \cdot 100 \pmod{79} \end{aligned}$$

and if we multiply by 64 and reduce modulo 79 we should get the right answer:

$$442 \cdot 64 \equiv 28288 \equiv 6 \equiv 68 \cdot 100 \pmod{79}.$$

The function we want is the function that will take as input the 442 and return 6. And the function described above does exactly that:

$$\begin{aligned} m &= (442 \pmod{100}) \cdot 81 \pmod{100} \\ &= 42 \cdot 81 \pmod{100} \\ &= 3402 \pmod{100} \\ &\equiv 2 \pmod{100} \\ t &= (442 + 2 \cdot 79)/100 \\ &= (442 + 158)/100 \\ &= 600/100 \\ &= 6 \end{aligned}$$

and we return $t = 6$ as the result.

The proof that the algorithm works runs as follows. We assume that T is a product, and hence is double length. Since we choose $R > N$ but not too much bigger, the products can be taken to be double length in R .

The first modular reduction simply converts T to a single length number modulo R . Again, modulo R , we have that $m = TN'$. Thus

$$mN \equiv TN'N \equiv -T \pmod{R}.$$

So when we take $T + mN$ we get an integer that is zero modulo R and we can legitimately divide out the R and get an integer quotient for t .

Now the fact that we get the right quotient comes from the fact that

$$tR = T + mN \equiv T \pmod{N}$$

so that modulo N we have $t \equiv TR'$.

8.3.1. The Computational Advantage. Montgomery multiplication replaces a multiprecise division of two integers by a reduction modulo R , a multiplication modulo R to produce m , an addition, and then a division by R . This doesn't sound at first like a win, but ... if R is a power of two (and not the power of 10 of the example), then reduction of the right hand side used to produce m modulo R is simply taking the rightmost bits of that product, and then division by R is simply taking the leftmost bits. There is, of course, just as with the Mersenne prime trick, the possibility that our integers wind up one bit too long, but the possible one more subtraction to correct that is a very small price.

8.4. Arithmetic in General

We remark finally that arithmetic on large integers is crucial to public-key cryptography, and it, as with computations in number theory in general, has thus been studied extensively. [Leh69] Hardware has been designed and built [Bri89, CRB85, Chi86a, Chi86b, RCB84, TK99]. Software and algorithms have been devised [Eld91, Gra01, Mül97, SS71, WE90]. This continues to be topic of study, especially as key sizes increase; the theoretically faster algorithms that might not have been practically faster for smaller key sizes might become practical for larger keys.

Modern Symmetric Ciphers — DES and AES

9.1. History

Early in the 1970s, it was realized by the United States National Bureau of Standards (NBS)¹ that a cryptographically secure algorithm for electronic communication was needed. The search began in 1972. A proposal was published in 1975, and was criticized for several reasons at the time. Nonetheless, the Data Encryption Standard (DES) was published on 15 January 1977 as FIPS (Federal Information Processing Standard) Publication 46 [NIS99b]. The standard was reaffirmed several times and not revoked until well after its expected time for secure use. A primary reason for establishing a cryptographic standard was to enable financial institutions to conduct their business over secured communication channels; even into the late 1970s and early 1980s many banks² were reconciling accounts data with the regional Federal Reserve banks over unencrypted telephone lines.

9.1.1. Criticism and Controversy. The precursor to DES was an IBM cryptographic algorithm called LUCIFER. Unlike LUCIFER, which had a 112-bit key, the key for DES is only 56 bits. Given the fact that the United States National Security Agency (NSA) was known to have

¹The name was changed in 1988 to the National Institute for Standards and Technology (NIST).

²Including the author's own, apparently.

been involved in the design of DES³ There were many conspiracy theories floated about how DES had been deliberately done as a version of LUCIFER that was sufficiently weakened that NSA could crack it.

Almost immediately, a plan for how to crack DES was laid out [DH77]. The Diffie-Hellman plan called for parallel computing, perhaps enhanced with special purpose hardware. One version was for a \$20-million computer that would crack a DES key in 12 hours.

Additional criticism was that part of the encryption system (famously known as the “*S*-boxes” had deliberately been created to be a group operating on the input bits. As will be discussed later in the context of discrete logarithms, if part of the encryption is a group operation

$$g : \text{bits} \rightarrow \text{other_bits}$$

then there is an inverse g^{-1} in the group to the operation g , and this inverse could be a back door that would allow those who knew about the group structure (presumably, the NSA) to undo without any real effort the ostensibly cryptographically important action of the *S*-boxes.

Although there is something in human nature that would have us be enamored with conspiracy theories, it is not clear that any of these have substance. Don Coppersmith, for example [COS86] showed that the *S*-boxes did not have a group structure to them. His proof was, in essence, a computational demonstration that if there were a group structure, then the order of the group would have to be much larger than the largest possible group that could operate on the input bits.

So much for the group structure.

More to the point, it was in fact true that the Electronic Frontier Foundation (EFF) cracked DES, using distributed parallel computing, in 22 hours and 15 minutes, in 1999. This feat was entirely consistent with the original proposal for how to crack a 56-bit key of this nature using parallel computation, as that computation improved in capability over time.

What seems to be overlooked by those who love conspiracy theories, however, is that although DES was reaffirmed several times, the original plan was that it would be an algorithm to provide cryptographic security for 15 years.

³NIST is a branch of the Department of Commerce, charged with making standards that benefit U.S. commercial activity. NIST has expertise in cryptography in-house, but is generally required under federal law to work with NSA on matters of technical expertise (like cryptography) for which NSA is the official government agency.

A 1977 publication, plus 15 years, takes us to 1992, seven years before the EFF cracks DES in the obvious way. Yes, DES can be cracked, and yes, DES can be cracked in exactly the way it was shown when promulgated to be crackable. But there were many people and institutions with a somewhat vested interest in demonstrating that DES was flawed from the start, and it is not at all clear that they have made their point [Lan00b, NIS99a].

9.2. The Advanced Encryption Standard

In part due to concerns about security, many of those using DES by the 1990s were using “Triple DES,” encrypting three times instead of just once. It was clear to NIST by the middle 1990s that a new encryption standard was necessary. In spite of the fact that the conspiracy theories about DES did not seem to be justified, NIST took a totally different approach to cipher design when it began work in 1997 on the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) that would be the successor to DES. This would be an algorithm to be used for sensitive, but not for classified, information.

This time, very little was done in secret. In fact, the design determination was opened up as a competition in January of 1997.

All contenders were asked to submit proposed designs, and all contenders were permitted to implement and to attack the proposals.

A number of NIST criteria were outlined in advance. The goal was a cryptosystem that was at least as secure as Triple DES that was in moderately wide use, but a cryptosystem that was much more efficient than Triple DES.

The constraints on speed and implementation on low-capability devices required serious contenders to be implementable on such devices. The Rijndael/AES algorithm, for example, is strongly byte-oriented, making it clean and efficient in a high-level language on a standard processor but also relatively straightforward to implement on the kind of minimal-capability processor as might be found on a smart card. The NIST specification was for a block length of 128 bits and for key lengths of 128, 192, and 256 bits.

Finally, there were stringent standards set regarding intellectual property issues. No proposal would be adopted, for example, if its implementation and use were limited by intellectual property constraints; NIST intended AES to be an open standard without encumbrances from patents or other claimed proprietary content.

Submissions were made and evaluated in a series of public conferences [NIS98a, NIS98b, NIS00b] before the final announcement was made in 2001 [NIS00a].

There were 15 original submissions accepted for the first AES round of evaluation. These were presented at a conference held in Ventura, California, in August 1988, and are shown in Figure 9.1. A second conference was held in March 1999, coinciding with the annual Fast Software Encryption Workshop at which researchers presented implementations, analyses, and criticisms of the 15 submissions. In August of 1999 the list of fifteen candidates was reduced to five—MARS, RC6, Rijndael, Serpent, and Twofish, and researchers presented work on these five at the Fast Software Encryption Workshop in April 2000.

The initial three criteria of security, cost, and implementation characteristics were modified somewhat during the evaluation process. Although security remained the primary concern, the analysis of the proposed algorithms resulted in a refinement of the other two criteria. The cost criteria included both software efficiency and the cost, both in general silicon area and in memory required, of a hardware implementation. Implementation characteristics included the specifics of implementation in silicon, in Field Programmable Gate Arrays, and on general purpose processors with a high degree of instruction level parallelism. Also considered were the flexibility of the algorithm to accommodate parameters outside the original requirements of AES (in case attacks on the original algorithm were discovered).

At the end of that third conference, a survey of the cryptographers overwhelmingly backed Rijndael, the submission of Vincent Rijmen and Joan Daemen. The selection of Rijndael as the AES was announced in a press release on 2 October 2000 and followed by the publication of FIPS-197 on 26 November 2001 [NIS00a]. The security of all the finalists had been judged to be adequate. In general, the choice of Rijndael can be traced to the simplicity of the operations it requires and the byte orientation of those operations. These led to relatively high execution efficiency both in software and hardware, although the extensive use of memory tables results in a relatively large silicon area among the finalist algorithms. Finally, Rijndael as proposed incorporated the variations in key and block size beyond the original specifications for AES that would be needed in a flexible algorithm.

Although a few weaknesses have been found in AES, none have been fundamental or lead to attacks that would cause the use of AES to be abandoned.

Figure 9.1. The Original AES Candidates

Cryptosystem	Submitter(s)
CAST-256	Entrust (Canada)
Crypton	Future Systems (KR)
DEAL	Outerbridge and Knudsen (USA and Denmark)
DFC	ENS-CNRS (France)
E2	NTT (Japan)
Frog	TecApro (CR)
HPC	Schroeppel (USA)
LOKI97	Brown, et al. (Australia)
Magenta	Deutsche Telekom (Germany)
MARS	IBM (USA)
RC6	RSA (USA)
Rijndael	Daemen and Rijmen (Belgium)
SAFER+	Cylink (USA)
Serpent	Anderson, Biham, Knudsen (UK, Israel, Denmark)
Twofish	Counterpane (USA)

9.3. The AES Algorithm

AES is a *key-alternating block cipher*, with plaintext enciphered in blocks of 128 bits. The key sizes in AES can be 128, 192, or 256 bits. It is an *iterated block cipher* because a fixed encipherment process, usually called a *round*, is applied a number of times to the block of bits. Finally, we mean by *key-alternating* that the cipher key is XORed to the *state* (the running version of the block of input bits) alternately with the application of the round transformation.

The original Rijndael design allows for any choice of block length and key size between 128 and 256 in multiples of 32 bits. In this sense, Rijndael is a superset of AES; the two are not identical, but the difference is only in these configurations initially put into Rijndael but not part of the AES specifications.

The only other distinction to be noted is in the labelling of the transformations of AES. We will follow the labelling of the FIPS and of the inventors' book [DR02] and not that of the original submission of Rijndael to the AES competition. For example, the original submission referred to a **ByteSub** transformation, and the FIPS now refers to **SubBytes**.

9.3.1. Polynomial Preliminaries: the Galois Field $GF(2^8)$. AES makes extensive use of the polynomial

$$m(x) = x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1,$$

of degree eight, and the finite field of $2^8 = 256$ elements generated by this polynomial.

We now note that we can dispense with the polynomial notation and view the polynomials simply as bit strings, with the 8-bit byte that is the bit string $b_7b_6b_5b_4b_3b_2b_1b_0$ being used as a shorthand notation for the degree-seven polynomial

$$b_7x^7 + b_6x^6 + b_5x^5 + b_4x^4 + b_3x^3 + b_2x^2 + b_1x^1 + b_0x^0$$

that is an element of the finite field of 256 elements defined by $m(x)$.

AES makes extensive use of the fact that bit strings can be taken a byte at a time and interpreted in this way as coefficients of polynomials. What is crucial to the performance of AES is that the fact that the nonzero polynomials can be generated as powers of a single polynomial $x + 1$. This permits us to use the powers of the generator to create a table of logarithms and do multiplication in the Galois field by table lookup. Indeed, much of what it takes to understand software that implements AES is to understand that the byte-oriented table lookup does in fact implement the more sophisticated mathematics.

9.3.1.1. More Polynomial Arithmetic. As part of the encryption and decryption processes, AES uses groups of four bytes to define polynomials $f(X)$ of degree three in an indeterminate X ; each byte is taken to define an element of $GF(2^8)$ that is one of the coefficients of $f(X)$. The AES process then does arithmetic on these polynomials modulo the polynomial $X^4 + 1$. We will write these polynomials as

$$a_3 \odot X^3 + a_2 \odot X^2 + a_1 \odot X + a_0$$

and write the coefficients a_i in hexadecimal notation, so a specific coefficient $a_3 = x^5 + x^3 + 1 \leftrightarrow 00101001$ would be written as 29.

Although there is a mathematical basis for these operations, from a computational point of view we can regard this almost as a positional notation for the arithmetic. Since $X^4 \equiv 1 \pmod{X^4 + 1}$, multiplication of a polynomial $f(X)$ by $b \odot X$ modulo $X^4 + 1$ is really a coefficient-wise multiplication by b in $GF(2^8)$ and a left circular shift of the coefficients:

$$\begin{aligned} (b \odot X) \cdot (a_3 \odot X^3 + a_2 \odot X^2 + a_1 \odot X + a_0) &\equiv \\ (b * a_2) \odot X^3 + (b * a_1) \odot X^2 + (b * a_0) \odot X + (b * a_3) &\pmod{X^4 + 1} \end{aligned}$$

Figure 9.2. Byte-by-byte view of the 128 bits of a plaintext block

p_0	p_4	p_8	p_{12}
p_1	p_5	p_9	p_{13}
p_2	p_6	p_{10}	p_{14}
p_3	p_7	p_{11}	p_{15}

where the multiplication $*$ of the coefficients takes place in $GF(2^8)$. It is in part to recognize this purely formal nature of these polynomials that we use the \odot symbol for multiplication by the coefficients.

9.3.2. Byte Organization. The input to AES is the *plaintext*, a sequence of blocks of 128 bits each of the message to be encrypted, and the *key*, a block of $K = 128, 192$, or 256 bits, with the size an option of the user. The blocks of plaintext are encrypted using the key to produce a *ciphertext* of blocks of bits of 128 bits each. AES is a *symmetric* cipher, in that the ciphertext produced by plaintext and key is converted back to plaintext using the same key.

Viewed simplistically, AES is almost (but not quite) an outer loop of N_r iterations, each called a *round*, of bit-transformations, and an inner set of four stages of transformations per round. The current pattern of bits as input to or output from one of these transformations is referred to as the *state*.

The AES plaintext block is 128 bits long. AES is strongly byte-oriented; if we view the stream of bytes of both plaintext and key as being numbered in increasing order

$$p_0 p_1 \dots p_{15}$$

and

$$k_0 k_1 \dots k_{K/8},$$

then the bytes of both plaintext and key are usually viewed as a two-dimensional array in column-major order, shown for the plaintext in Figure 9.2; the key can be represented similarly.

A key would be arranged in a similar pattern of four rows and $K/32 = 4, 6$, or 8 columns, respectively, for the key lengths of $K = 128, 192$, or 256 bits.

9.4. The Structure of AES

9.4.1. The Outer Structure of the Rounds. The Rijndael reference book [DR02] has code for AES and test data in Appendices D and E. The code in the appendices is slightly different from what is shown in the text of the book. We present here and in an appendix in this book a modified version of the C implementation from Appendix E. For the most part, the differences are simply a renaming of functions; original names in the Rijndael proposal were changed in the AES standard. One change is less minor—the Appendix E (and our) implementation stores the expanded key as a three-dimensional array, with the outer subscript being the subscript for the round number, while the reference book uses a two-dimensional array with the key for each round coming from a slice of columns of the two-dimensional array.

A much more substantive problem with the code of Appendix E is that the decryption function is wrong. AES is a symmetric cipher, and the decryption is thus the same process as encryption, but run in the opposite direction, and with some of the functions replaced with their inverses. Fortunately, it is easy to know that one has the decryption function done properly, because it will reverse the encryption and change ciphertext back into plaintext.

The outer structure of encryption using AES is shown in Figure 9.3. For key lengths of $K = 128, 192,$ and 256 bits, we use $N_r = 10, 12,$ and 14 round transformations respectively.

9.4.2. General Code Details. We remark that the code fragments shown here, and shown more completely in Appendix E, use several global definitions, which we list in Figure 9.4. The `MAXBC` constant is the maximum number of 32-bit sub-blocks in a plaintext block, which is set to 8 for the more general Rijndael but would be taken as 4 for AES. In the implementation of the Daemen and Rijmen reference ??DAEMEN, the variable `BC` set to 4, 6, or 8 allows for testing all of the Rijndael options.

The `MAXKC` constant is the maximum number of 32-bit sub-blocks in a key, also set to 8; The `KC` variable can be 4, 6, or 8 for keys of lengths 128, 192, or 256.

The `MAXROUNDS` constant is set at 14, and the `ROUNDS` value for different key lengths is set using the global `numrounds` array.

Figure 9.3. Outer encryption structure of AES

```

Rijndael(State, CipherKey) {
    KeyExpansion(CipherKey, ExpandedKey);
    AddRoundKey(State, ExpandedKey[0]);
    for( i = 1; i < Nr; i++) {
        SubBytes(State);
        ShiftRows(State);
        MixColumns(State);
        AddRoundKey(State, ExpandedKey[i]);
    }

    SubBytes(State);
    ShiftRows(State);
    AddRoundKey(State, ExpandedKey[Nr]);
}

```

Figure 9.4. (Some of the) global definitions

```

typedef unsigned char word8;
typedef unsigned int word32;

#define MAXBC 8
#define MAXKC 8
#define MAXROUNDS 14

bool testd2, testd3, testtext;
int BC, KC, ROUNDS;

static int numrounds[5][5] = {{10, 11, 12, 13, 14},
                               {11, 11, 12, 13, 14},
                               {12, 12, 12, 13, 14},
                               {13, 13, 13, 13, 14},
                               {14, 14, 14, 14, 14} };

```

9.4.3. KeyExpansion. CAVEAT: THIS SECTION AS PRESENTLY WRITTEN (17 AUGUST 2020) IS NOT REALLY CORRECT. IT ISN'T REALLY "WRONG", BUT THE NOTATION IS BASED ON THE NOTATION IN THE RIJNDAEL BOOK, NOT ON THE NOTATION OF THE CODE IN THE APPENDIX TO THE RIJNDAEL BOOK OR THE CODE IN THE APPENDIX TO THIS TEXT. THIS

SECTION WILL BE REWRITTEN WITH THE CORRECT NOTATION.

The input key is first expanded with the **KeyExpansion** function to produce a key that is $N_r + 1$ times its original size. The expanded key is then taken in blocks of K bits at a time. One block is added to the state prior to the round iterations, $N_r - 1$ blocks are added in at the end of each of the rounds in the loop, and the final block is added in as the last of the transformations.

The key addition steps require significant numbers of bits of key. These bits are obtained from the initial key by an expansion process. Care must be taken, of course, when expanding an input key, since the resulting key bits cannot contain any more inherent randomness than is present in the initial key prior to the deterministic expansion.

With ten, twelve, or fourteen rounds in AES, the algorithm will need $128 \cdot 11 = 1408$, $128 \cdot 13 = 1664$, or $128 \cdot 15 = 1920$ bits of key in order to perform the **AddRoundKey** step. One 128-bit block of key is used prior to the iteration of the rounds, and then additional 128-bit blocks are used for each iteration within the rounds. The key bits are obtained via a **KeyExpansion** function that is applied to the initial key value.

For a version of AES with N_r rounds, the expanded key can be viewed as a three-dimensional array, with the outer subscript being the round number and the inner part of the array being four rows and 4, 6, or 8 columns of key for keys of length 128, 192, or 256 bits.

91 word32 RC[30] = 0x00, 0x01, 0x02, 0x04, 0x08, 0x10, 0x20, 0x40, 0x80, 92 0x1b, 0x36, 0x6c, 0xd8, 0xab, 0x4d, 0x9a, 0x2f, 0x5e, 93 0xbc, 0x63, 0xc6, 0x97, 0x35, 0x6a, 0xd4, 0xb3, 0x7d, 94 0xfa, 0xef, 0xc5; 95 96 static word8 shifts[5][4] = 0, 1, 2, 3, 97 0, 1, 2, 3, 98 0, 1, 2, 3, 99 0, 1, 2, 4, 100 0, 1, 3, 4 ; 101

zork

For a version of AES with N_r rounds, the expanded key should be viewed as a two-dimensional array of four rows and $4 \cdot (N_r + 1)$ columns, which we subscript as $W[0..3][0..4 \cdot (N_r + 1)]$. If we set N_k to 4, 6, or 8 according as the key length is 128, 192, or 256 bits, then the first $4 \times N_k$ block receives the original key in column-major order as in Figure 9.15, and the key is then expanded by the application of the recursive function detailed below. Columns of bytes of key are produced recursively:

Figure 9.5. Key expansion

```

int KeyExpansion(word8 k[4][MAXKC], word8 W[MAXROUNDS+1][4][MAXBC]) {
    // Calculate the required round keys.
    int i, j, t, RCpointer = 1;
    word8 tk[4][MAXKC];
    for (j = 0; j < KC; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            tk[i][j] = k[i][j];
        }
    }
    t = 0;
    // Copy values into round key array.
    for (j = 0; (j < KC) && (t < (ROUNDS+1)*BC); j++, t++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            W[t / BC][i][t % BC] = tk[i][j];
        }
    }
    while (t < (ROUNDS+1)*BC) {
        // While not enough round key material calculated, calc new values.
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            tk[i][0] ^= S[tk[(i+1)%4][KC-1]];
        }
        tk[0][0] ^= RC[RCpointer++];
        if (KC <= 6) {
            for (j = 1; j < KC; j++) {
                for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                    tk[i][j] ^= tk[i][j-1];
                }
            }
        }
        else {
            for (j = 1; j < 4; j++) {
                for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                    tk[i][j] ^= tk[i][j-1];
                }
            }
            for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                tk[i][4] ^= S[tk[i][3]];
            }
            for (j = 5; j < KC; j++) {
                for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                    tk[i][j] ^= tk[i][j-1];
                }
            }
        }
    }
    // Copy values into round key array.
    for (j = 0; (j < KC) && (t < (ROUNDS+1)*BC); j++, t++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            W[t / BC][i][t % BC] = tk[i][j];
        }
    }
}
return 0;
}

```

- (1) If the column subscript $j \geq N_k$ is neither 0 modulo N_k nor 4 modulo N_k for $N_k = 8$, then we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} W[0][j] \\ W[1][j] \\ W[2][j] \\ W[3][j] \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} W[0][j - N_k] \\ W[1][j - N_k] \\ W[2][j - N_k] \\ W[3][j - N_k] \end{bmatrix} \oplus \begin{bmatrix} W[0][j - 1] \\ W[1][j - 1] \\ W[2][j - 1] \\ W[3][j - 1] \end{bmatrix}$$

- (2) If $N_k = 8$ (256-bit keys) and the column subscript j is 4 modulo 8, then we XOR the $(j - N_k)$ -th column not with the $(j - 1)$ -st column but with the bits obtained by first applying S to that column. That is, we have the bit operations below. In this, S is the combined $GF(2^8)$ and affine transformation used in **SubBytes**.

$$\begin{bmatrix} W[0][j] \\ W[1][j] \\ W[2][j] \\ W[3][j] \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} W[0][j - N_k] \\ W[1][j - N_k] \\ W[2][j - N_k] \\ W[3][j - N_k] \end{bmatrix} \oplus \begin{bmatrix} S_{RD}(W[0][j - 1]) \\ S_{RD}(W[1][j - 1]) \\ S_{RD}(W[2][j - 1]) \\ S_{RD}(W[3][j - 1]) \end{bmatrix}$$

- (3) If the column subscript i is 0 modulo N_k , then we have the bit operations below. In addition to the S_{RD} operation, we have a circular shift down of the bytes of column $j - 1$ before the application of S_{RD} and the XOR in byte 0 of a **round constant** RC , where

$$\begin{bmatrix} W[0][j] \\ W[1][j] \\ W[2][j] \\ W[3][j] \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} W[0][j - N_k] \\ W[1][j - N_k] \\ W[2][j - N_k] \\ W[3][j - N_k] \end{bmatrix} \oplus \begin{bmatrix} S_{RD}(W[1][j - 1]) \oplus RC[j/N_k] \\ S_{RD}(W[2][j - 1]) \\ S_{RD}(W[3][j - 1]) \\ S_{RD}(W[0][j - 1]) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$RC[1] = x^0 \quad \text{that is, 01}$$

$$RC[2] = x^1 \quad \text{that is, 02}$$

...

$$RC[j] = x^{j-1} \quad \text{in } GF(2^8)$$

The **ExpandedKey[i]** value as used in the pseudo-code description of the algorithm refers to columns $N_b \cdot i$ through $N_b \cdot (i + 1) - 1$ when viewed as columns, or bytes $4 \cdot N_b \cdot i$ through $4 \cdot N_b \cdot (i + 1) - 1$ taken in column-major order. Thus, key bits are extracted from the **ExpandedKey** in blocks of 128 bits at a time, but the key bits are generated column by column as needed, not necessarily in blocks of 128 bits.

Figure 9.6. Key expansion for 128- or 192-bit keys

```

def KeyExpansion(byte K[4][Nk], byte W[4][Nb*(Nr+1)]):
    for j in range(0, Nk):
        for i in range(0, 4):
            W[i][j] = K[i][j]

    for j in range(Nk, Nb*(Nr+1)):
        if j % Nk == 0:
            W[0][j] = W[0][j-Nk] XOR S[W[1][j-1]] XOR RC[j/Nk]
            for i in range(1, 4):
                W[i][j] = W[i][j-Nk] XOR S[W[i+1 % 4][j-1]]
        else:
            for i in range(0, 4):
                W[i][j] = W[i][j-Nk] XOR W[i][j-1]

```

Specifically, for key lengths of 128 or 192 bits, the `ExpandedKey` is created with the function of Figure 9.6. For key lengths of 256 bits, the `ExpandedKey` is created with the function of Figure 9.7.

zork

9.4.4. SubBytes.

9.4.4.1. Encryption. The `SubBytes` step is nonlinear, and is in fact the only nonlinear step in AES. Each individual byte

$$a = a_7a_6a_5a_4a_3a_2a_1a_0$$

(written as a string of bits) of the state is subjected (at least conceptually) to a two-stage transformation

$$a \rightarrow a^{-1} \text{ in } GF(2^8) \rightarrow f(a^{-1})$$

where $y = f(x)$ is the transformation of Figure 9.8 and the $GF(2^8)$ arithmetic is defined by the polynomial $m(x)$ above.

9.4.4.2. Decryption. For decryption, the inverse to `SubBytes` would be accomplished with the function f^{-1} of Figure 9.9 followed by a byte inversion in $GF(2^8)$. In point of fact, it can be done with the same C code but with a lookup table that is inverse to the table used in encryption.

9.4.4.3. Implementation — The S function. A crucial feature of AES is that its predilection for computation on bytes makes for efficient implementation. Although the `SubBytes` operation is conceptually a Galois field inversion followed by an affine transformation, these two

Figure 9.7. Key expansion for 256-bit keys

```

def KeyExpansion(byte K[4][Nk], byte W[4][Nb*(Nr+1)]):
    for j in range(0, Nk):
        for i in range(0, 4):
            W[i][j] = K[i][j]
    for j in range(Nk, Nb*(Nr+1)):
        if j % Nk == 0:
            W[0][j] = W[0][j-Nk] XOR S[W[1][j-1]] XOR RC[j/Nk]
            for i in range(1, 4):
                W[i][j] = W[i][j-Nk] XOR S[W[i+1 % 4][j-1]]
        else:
            for i in range(0, 4):
                W[i][j] = W[i][j-Nk] XOR W[i][j-1]

KeyExpansion(byte K[4][Nk], byte W[4][Nb*(Nr+1)])
{
    for(j = Nk; j < Nb*(Nr+1); j++) } /* expansion loop on columns */
{
    if(0 == j mod Nk) /* if-then for bytes down columns */
    {
        W[0][j] = W[0][j-Nk] XOR S[W[1][j-1]] XOR RC[j/Nk];
        for(i = 1; i < 4 i++)
        {
            W[i][j] = W[i][j-Nk] XOR S[W[i+1 mod 4][j-1]];
        }
    }
    else if(4 == j mod Nk)
    {
        for(i = 0; i < 4 i++)
        {
            W[i][j] = W[i][j-Nk] XOR S[W[i][j-1]];
        }
    }
    else
    {
        for(i = 0; i < 4 i++)
        {
            W[i][j] = W[i][j-Nk] XOR W[i][j-1];
        }
    } /* end if-then down columns */
} /* end expansion loop on columns */
} /* end KeyExpansion */

```

Figure 9.8. The function $f(x)$ in SubBytes

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} x_7 \\ x_6 \\ x_5 \\ x_4 \\ x_3 \\ x_2 \\ x_1 \\ x_0 \end{pmatrix} \oplus \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} y_7 \\ y_6 \\ y_5 \\ y_4 \\ y_3 \\ y_2 \\ y_1 \\ y_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Figure 9.9. The function $f^{-1}(x)$ for inverting SubBytes

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} y_7 \\ y_6 \\ y_5 \\ y_4 \\ y_3 \\ y_2 \\ y_1 \\ y_0 \end{pmatrix} \oplus \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_7 \\ x_6 \\ x_5 \\ x_4 \\ x_3 \\ x_2 \\ x_1 \\ x_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

can be combined and implemented with a 256-long table lookup, which is the function **S** in the code in our Appendix E. The inverse operation, used in decryption, is the same function but with the inverse lookup table **Si**.

For high level language code or for implementation on any standard processor, this is almost certainly the most efficient approach, since the intra-word bit manipulations of Galois inversion and the affine transformation will not be supported by CPU instructions. For hardware implementations, implementation of the actual arithmetic is not out of the question, as we will discuss later.

9.4.5. ShiftRows.

9.4.5.1. Encryption. The second stage of the inner loop of AES is the **ShiftRows** operation. In this stage, the bytes of the four rows of the state are circularly shifted left. Row 0 of the state is not shifted; row 1 is shifted left one byte, row 2 shifted two bytes, and row 3 shifted

Figure 9.10. SubBytes

```

void SubBytes(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 box[255]) {
    // Replace every byte of the input by the byte
    // at that place in the non-linear S-box.
    int i, j;
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] = box[a[i][j]];
        }
    }
}

```

Figure 9.11. Byte transformations of the ShiftRows step

B_0	B_4	B_8	B_{12}	\rightarrow	B_0	B_4	B_8	B_{12}
B_1	B_5	B_9	B_{13}		B_5	B_9	B_{13}	B_1
B_2	B_6	B_{10}	B_{14}		B_{10}	B_{14}	B_2	B_6
B_3	B_7	B_{11}	B_{15}		B_{15}	B_3	B_7	B_{11}

left circularly by three bytes. A graphical tableau for **ShiftRows** is as in Figure 9.11. Code for the function is shown in Figure 9.12.

9.4.5.2. Decryption. In decryption, the inverse of the **ShiftRows** step is simply the appropriate right circular shift of the bytes of the state.

9.4.6. MixColumns.

9.4.6.1. Encryption. In the SubBytes stage, The bits

$$b_7b_6b_5b_4b_3b_2b_1b_0$$

of a byte were viewed as coefficients of a polynomial

$$b_7x^7 + b_6x^6 + b_5x^5 + b_4x^4 + b_3x^3 + b_2x^2 + b_1x^1 + b_0$$

that represented an element of the finite field $GF(2^8)$, and this element was inverted in $GF(2^8)$. In the **MixColumns** stage, we carry that representation one step further. The four bytes of a column in the state are each viewed as elements of $GF(2^8)$ that are now coefficients of a cubic polynomial. For example, a column of state (with bytes written as two hexadecimal digits)

Figure 9.12. ShiftRows

```
// (Global value included here for completeness.)
static word8 shifts[5][4] = {{0, 1, 2, 3},
                             {0, 1, 2, 3},
                             {0, 1, 2, 3},
                             {0, 1, 2, 4},
                             {0, 1, 3, 4} };

void ShiftRows(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 d) {
    // Row 0 remains unchanged.
    // The other three rows are shifted a variable amount.
    word8 tmp[MAXBC];
    int i, j;

    if (d == 0) {
        for (i = 1; i < 4; i++) {
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                tmp[j] = a[i][(j + shifts[BC-4][i]) % BC];
            }
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                a[i][j] = tmp[j];
            }
        }
    }
    else {
        for (i = 1; i < 4; i++) {
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                tmp[j] = a[i][(BC + j - shifts[BC-4][i]) % BC];
            }
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                a[i][j] = tmp[j];
            }
        }
    }
}
```

1F
3D
5B
79

would be taken to represent the polynomial

$$1\text{F} \odot X^3 + 3\text{D} \odot X^2 + 5\text{B} \odot X + 79$$

with, for example, the last coefficient $79 = 01111001$ being taken to mean the polynomial

$$0 \cdot x^7 + 1 \cdot x^6 + 1 \cdot x^5 + 1 \cdot x^4 + 1 \cdot x^3 + 0 \cdot x^2 + 0 \cdot x^1 + 1 \cdot x^0$$

as an element of $GF(2^8)$.

The columns of the state, viewed as polynomials in X with coefficients in $GF(2^8)$, are multiplied by

$$c(X) = 03 \odot X^3 + 01 \odot X^2 + 01 \odot X + 02$$

modulo $X^4 + 1$. The polynomial $c(X)$ is invertible modulo $X^4 + 1$, with inverse

$$d(X) = c^{-1}(X) = 0\text{B} \odot X^3 + 0\text{D} \odot X^2 + 09 \odot X + 0\text{E}.$$

Since this is more complicated than most of the stages of AES, we will go into somewhat more detail. Assume we have a column of state

a_3
a_2
a_1
a_0

Then the multiplication of **MixColumns** is

$$(a_3 \odot X^3 + a_2 \odot X^2 + a_1 \odot X + a_0) \cdot (03 \odot X^3 + 01 \odot X^2 + 01 \odot X + 02)$$

which is rewritten as

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
X^6. & (& 03 \odot a_3) \\
X^5. & (& 03 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3) \\
X^4. & (& +03 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3) \\
X^3. & (03 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 02 \odot a_3) \\
X^2. & (01 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 02 \odot a_2) \\
X^1. & (01 \odot a_0 + 02 \odot a_1) \\
X^0. & (02 \odot a_0)
\end{array}$$

and which reduces to

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
X^5. & (& 03 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3) \\
X^4. & (& +03 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3) \\
\equiv X^3. & (03 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 02 \odot a_3) \\
X^2. & (01 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 02 \odot a_2 + 03 \odot a_3) \\
X^1. & (01 \odot a_0 + 02 \odot a_1) \\
X^0. & (02 \odot a_0)
\end{array}$$

then to

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
X^4. & (& +03 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3) \\
X^3. & (03 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 02 \odot a_3) \\
\equiv X^2. & (01 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 02 \odot a_2 + 03 \odot a_3) \\
X^1. & (01 \odot a_0 + 02 \odot a_1 + 03 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3) \\
X^0. & (02 \odot a_0)
\end{array}$$

and finally to

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
X^3. & (03 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 02 \odot a_3) \\
X^2. & (01 \odot a_0 + 01 \odot a_1 + 02 \odot a_2 + 03 \odot a_3) \\
\equiv X^1. & (01 \odot a_0 + 02 \odot a_1 + 03 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3) \\
X^0. & (02 \odot a_0 + 03 \odot a_1 + 01 \odot a_2 + 01 \odot a_3)
\end{array}$$

where the reduction is done modulo $X^4 + 1$.

The entire operation on columns of the state can thus be done as a matrix multiplication in $GF(2^8)$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} b_3 \\ b_2 \\ b_1 \\ b_0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 03 & 01 & 01 & 02 \\ 01 & 01 & 02 & 03 \\ 01 & 02 & 03 & 01 \\ 02 & 03 & 01 & 01 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_3 \\ a_2 \\ a_1 \\ a_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

9.4.6.2. Decryption. The inverse to `MixColumns`, called `InvMixColumns`, is a multiplication of the columns by the inverse $d(X)$, all taken modulo $X^4 + 1$. As above, the operation can be condensed into a matrix

Figure 9.13. Code for the MixColumns function

```

word8 mul(word8 a, word8 b) {
    // multiply two elements of GF(256)
    // required for MixColumns and InvMixColumns
    if (a && b) return Alogtable[(Logtable[a] + Logtable[b])%255];
    else return 0;
}

void MixColumns(word8 a[4][MAXBC]) {
    // Mix the four bytes of every column in a linear way.
    word8 b[4][MAXBC];
    int i, j;

    for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            b[i][j] = mul(2, a[i][j])
                ^ mul(3, a[(i+1)%4][j])
                ^ a[(i+2)%4][j]
                ^ a[(i+3)%4][j];
        }
    }
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] = b[i][j];
        }
    }
}

```

operation on the columns of state as follows.

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_3 \\ a_2 \\ a_1 \\ a_0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0E & 0B & 0D & 09 \\ 09 & 0E & 0B & 0D \\ 0D & 09 & 0E & 0B \\ 0B & 0D & 09 & 0E \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_3 \\ b_2 \\ b_1 \\ b_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

9.4.6.3. Implementation. The code for MixColumns and for InvMixColumns are presented in Figure 9.13 and Figure 9.14

Figure 9.14. Code for the InvMixColumns function

```

void InvMixColumns(word8 a[4][MAXBC]) {
    // Mix the four bytes of every column in a linear way.
    // This is the opposite operation of MixColumns.
    word8 b[4][MAXBC];
    int i, j;

    for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            b[i][j] = mul(0xe, a[i][j])
                ^ mul(0xb, a[(i+1)%4][j])
                ^ mul(0xd, a[(i+2)%4][j])
                ^ mul(0x9, a[(i+3)%4][j]);
        }
    }
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] = b[i][j];
        }
    }
}

```

Figure 9.15. AddRoundKey operating on the 128 bits of a plain-text block

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline p_0 & p_4 & p_8 & p_{12} \\ \hline p_1 & p_5 & p_9 & p_{13} \\ \hline p_2 & p_6 & p_{10} & p_{14} \\ \hline p_3 & p_7 & p_{11} & p_{15} \\ \hline \end{array} \oplus \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k_0 & k_4 & k_8 & k_{12} \\ \hline k_1 & k_5 & k_9 & k_{13} \\ \hline k_2 & k_6 & k_{10} & k_{14} \\ \hline k_3 & k_7 & k_{11} & k_{15} \\ \hline \end{array} = \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline p'_0 & p'_4 & p'_8 & p'_{12} \\ \hline p'_1 & p'_5 & p'_9 & p'_{13} \\ \hline p'_2 & p'_6 & p'_{10} & p'_{14} \\ \hline p'_3 & p'_7 & p'_{11} & p'_{15} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

9.4.7. AddRoundKey. The key addition step is labelled **AddRoundKey**. Since this is an XOR of bits of the expanded key with the state, the **AddRoundKey** step is its own inverse. The key addition is displayed in Figure 9.15; the code itself is displayed in Figure 9.16.

Figure 9.16. Code for the `AddRoundKey` function

```

void AddRoundKey(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 rk[4][MAXBC]) {
    // XOR corresponding text input and round key input bytes.
    int i, j;
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] ^= rk[i][j];
        }
    }
}

```

9.5. Implementation issues

AES was designed so that it would perform well on a range of processors, including smart cards with small 8-bit processors, fast standard processors, and even on special purpose hardware. Because the functions of AES are bit manipulations, and because many of these functions are not provided in the Instruction Set Architecture (ISA) of a standard processor, some accommodation for the bit-processing must be made in an implementation on a standard processor. On the other hand, AES has been designed so that these tweaks are relatively straightforward and so that high performance can be achieved even on relatively low-performance processors.

Just to review the operations necessary, we summarize the operations to be performed:

- (1) **KeyExpansion**: Most of the key expansion operations are XORs. The other operation is the application of the S function from **SubBytes**.
- (2) **SubBytes**: Mathematically, the computation in **SubBytes** includes the $GF(2^8)$ arithmetic followed by the affine transformation $f(x)$. Computationally, this can all be done by table lookup in a 256-long table and is referred to as the S function.
- (3) **ShiftRows**: This consists entirely of byte-oriented memory moves of the array of state.
- (4) **MixColumns**: Mathematically, the **MixColumns** operation involves modular polynomial operations using polynomials in X whose coefficients are elements of $GF(2^8)$. Computationally, the polynomial arithmetic is just byte moves in memory following arithmetic on

the coefficients in $GF(2^8)$. In the case of encryption, the coefficient arithmetic is very easy because one needs only to multiply coefficients by 1, x , and $x + 1$. In the case of decryption, the multipliers are more complicated and the arithmetic is thus harder to implement in hardware. In the case of a software implementation, neither is a complicated operation since the multiplication is usually done with a table lookup.

- (5) **AddRoundKey**: This operation is simply an XOR of the key for the round and the state.

9.5.1. Software Implementations. The primary points of concern for any software implementation clearly come down to three computations.

- (1) The $GF(2^8)$ arithmetic appearing in several places.
- (2) The byte-oriented finite field operations in **MixColumns**.
- (3) The issue of memory storage and/or access for the expanded key bits.

Since AES operates entirely on bytes, we can ignore the XOR operations and the byte movements of the **ShiftRows** step; there are no operations here that are not well-supported by the ISA of a standard processor.

We have already pointed out that the combined **SubBytes** operation can be done by table lookup with the S function. If not for this, then at other points in the computation one will need to be able to do arithmetic in $GF(2^8)$. Fortunately, this can be done with fixed arithmetic steps and does not need complex loops with decisions. The polynomial modulus is

$$m(x) = x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1,$$

so we have

$$\begin{aligned} x \cdot \sum_{i=0}^7 a_i x^i &= \sum_{i=0}^7 a_i x^{i+1} \\ &\equiv a_6 x^7 + a_5 x^6 + a_4 x^5 + (a_3 \oplus a_7) x^4 + (a_2 \oplus a_7) x^3 + a_1 x^2 + \\ &\quad (a_0 \oplus a_7) x^1 + a_7 \pmod{m(x)} \end{aligned}$$

The modulus $m(x)$ is a 9-bit pattern 1|00011011. Multiplication of the 8-bit pattern $a_7 a_6 a_5 a_4 a_3 a_2 a_1 a_0$ produces the 9-bit pattern

$$a_7 | a_6 a_5 a_4 a_3 a_2 a_1 a_0 0,$$

so in the case that $a_7 = 1$ we XOR the right-hand 8 bits with a mask 00011011 to perform the reduction modulo $m(x)$. In software, this can be implemented as a shift left that is possibly followed by an XOR with a mask 00011011. Multiplication by any element of $GF(2^8)$ can be accomplished by breaking that element down into its powers of x (in effect, by using the usual recursive doubling approach), so that the fundamental operation of multiplication by x (a.k.a. 02) is sufficient as a kernel.

One of the reasons for the choice of the polynomial $c(x)$ was that the coefficients 01, 02, and 03 allow for multiplication as a simple operation. Multiplication by 01 is in fact not multiplication; multiplication by 02 is the operation defined above, and multiplication by 03 is multiplication by 02 followed by an XOR. Unfortunately, the coefficients 09, 0B, and 0D, and 0E of the `InvMixColumns` step are not inherently so simple, if only because the nontrivial entries are more dense and the number of 1-bits greater, making for more bit operations required for the $GF(2^8)$ operation.

Fortunately, as pointed out by Daemen and Rijmen [DR02], P. Barreto has observed that the `InvMixColumns` multiplication is separable into two matrix products as follows.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0E & 0B & 0D & 09 \\ 09 & 0E & 0B & 0D \\ 0D & 09 & 0E & 0B \\ 0B & 0D & 09 & 0E \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 02 & 03 & 01 & 01 \\ 01 & 02 & 03 & 01 \\ 01 & 01 & 02 & 03 \\ 03 & 01 & 01 & 02 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 05 & 00 & 04 & 00 \\ 00 & 05 & 00 & 04 \\ 04 & 00 & 05 & 00 \\ 04 & 04 & 00 & 05 \end{pmatrix}$$

This permits the `InvMixColumns` to be implemented with the following preprocessing step followed by the same multiplication as used in `MixColumns`.

On 32-bit or larger processor platforms, the same intraword operations can be implemented as on 8-bit platforms, but the longer wordlength can be an advantage in that one can handle four-byte columns in a single step.

Software for AES is relatively straightforward to implement, and use of the software features mentioned above mitigates substantially any complexities due to ISA shortcomings. As part of the original AES competition and selection process, it was necessary for reference code for each algorithm to be submitted. Reference code by P. Barreto and V. Rijmen appears in Daemen and Rijmen [DR02] and totals fewer than 350 lines of C, including four major tables for lookup of the $GF(2^8)$ arithmetic.

Several authors have reported during and then soon after the selection of AES the processing rate of software implementations of AES. Timings are notoriously quick to become obsolete, and timings are often difficult to compare. Lipmaa reported [Lip04] 260 cycles per encryption, or 1.437 gigabits per second, for encryption and 257 cycles per decryption, or 1.453 gigabits per second, for decryption, with assembly language programs on a 3.05MHz Pentium 4 processor, and 319 cycles (0.861 Gbit per second) and 344 cycles (0.798 Gbit per second) for encryption and decryption, respectively, with C programs (gcc 3.0.2) on a 2.25MHz Athlon processor. Other implementations are reported at between 226 and 376 cycles on lesser processors, with the faster implementations being in assembly language and the slower implementations in C or C++. Gladman reported similar timings [Gla98].

It is worth pointing out that the speed of AES in software is somewhat slower than either DES or Triple DES, but not significantly slower [SASR01].

9.5.2. Hardware Implementations. AES was designed so that it might be suitable for smart-card and similar applications. Thus, although software implementations are of interest, the various hardware or programmable-logic implementations of AES are of interest, and in addition to speed, issues of silicon resources and attendant power consumption become relevant. Many of the hardware implementations were done prior to the adoption of Rijndael as the AES, and the papers were published in the AES conference proceedings. A number of these papers provide a comparative analysis of the five finalist algorithms. Some comparisons have also been published in other journals or conferences [ADPR00].

Hardware implementations of AES have been quite varied, in part due to the varied many different uses to which AES could be put. Many of these implementations have either been specific ASICs or ASIC designs; some have been architectural specifications for a processor that would support AES computations in a “native” mode. A large number of implementations have been made on Field Programmable Gate Arrays (FPGAs). Work continues on algorithmic means by which processing could be sped up under the assumption that one has, in hardware, substantial flexibility in how the bits are manipulated; among these studies are some on the best way by which the Galois Field arithmetic can be supported in hardware.

Hardware implementations, although varied, can generally be said to address one or more of the following questions.

- (1) If one were designing an ASIC for AES, what design would yield the absolutely the fastest throughput?
- (2) If one were designing an ASIC for AES, what design would yield the the fastest throughput and use no more hardware than might be available on a smart card?
- (3) If one were designing an ASIC for AES, what design would yield the the fastest throughput and use no more hardware than might be available on a network interface card?
- (4) If one were implementing AES on reconfigurable hardware (FPGAs), what design would yield the absolutely the fastest throughput?
- (5) If one were implementing AES on reconfigurable hardware, what design would yield the the fastest throughput and use no more hardware than might be available on a smart card?
- (6) If one were implementing AES on reconfigurable hardware, what design would yield the the fastest throughput and use no more hardware than might be available on a network interface card?

The FPGA-based implementations add another dimension to the definition of “best” in that they permit designing an implementation with the look and feel of an ASIC, but they must be placed on specific commercial chips. Where software implementations are constrained by the ISA of the processor, the FPGA implementations are constrained by the size and nature of the FPGA resources. In most instances, the eventual constraint on throughput is not on the AES core but on the bandwidth through the device of which the FPGA is a part.

Further, on either ASICs or FPGAs, there are methods either for improving performance or for decreasing size by rearranging the steps of the algorithm. If hardware size is not an issue, then the iterative loop of the rounds can be unrolled to pipeline the rounds themselves. This should permit increased throughput, at the cost of a latency that will not be noticed in steady state, but which will require hardware for each individual round instead of a single hardware module used repeatedly.

One effect of the loop unrolling is that the number of lookup tables might increase dramatically, since one would prefer to keep the tables physically close to the logic that uses the stored values. To

avoid the hardware cost of the $GF(2^8)$ lookup tables, one can perform the arithmetic in hardware; one comparison showed a very dramatic decrease in hardware utilization and an increase in speed when this change was made to a design. An additional benefit is that memory access is inherently going to be sequential, working against the parallelism of hardware, and the on-chip memory resources of FPGAs is not sufficient to provide for all the tables needed in a fully unrolled AES design.

Even if the outer loop of rounds cannot be fully unrolled, there is also the possibility in hardware for combining the flow of processing inside the rounds. In general, the larger the hardware circuit to be synthesized by design tools, the more efficient and higher-performing the circuit will be (until the circuit is so large that the tools can no longer function properly). Larger designs provide more opportunity for synthesis tools to extract parallelism. Also, breaking a large design into modules often requires signals that must propagate from one module to another to be registered both on output and on input; if multiple modules are synthesized together, then such signals can be dealt without the artificial modularization.

9.6. Security

The primary reason for existence of a cryptographic algorithm is to maintain **confidentiality** of data, that is, to prevent disclosure of data to unauthorized parties. In its simplest application, a user would encrypt a data file so that it could be transmitted “in the clear” without fear that the contents could be read by someone not possessing the key. Conscious user action to encrypt the data can provide the security required, although in a corporate setting the data transmission software could be configured to make this transparent. Either way, the data need only be encrypted and decrypted once per transmission in this end-to-end method, and the management of keys is simplest of all the scenarios because keys need only be distributed to users.

A more complicated setting would exist if the goal were to encrypt the data payloads of individual packets after the transmission process has begun, and if the process of decryption and re-encryption were to take place at every link along the path from sender to receiver. Since the number of packets and the number of links would normally each be much larger than the number of files transmitted, and since the process would now have to be completely transparent to the users involved, this

situation requires a much higher speed of encryption and decryption. This also requires a much different standard for the integrity of the key distribution process, since all the link-to-link connections must be provided with keys.

Regardless of the application, the fundamental question to be addressed with regard to any cryptographic algorithm is, “Is it secure?” The initial attempts at cryptanalysis, done as part of the AES evaluation process, are detailed in the NIST report. There has been subsequent work attacking AES, and one summary of some of perhaps most prominently by Courtois, who maintains (or maintained) a website [Cou04]. Courtois is clearly skeptical about AES. In response to the NESSIE (New European Schemes for Signatures, Integrity and Encryption) press release (2003) that states that no weakness has been found in AES (or in 16 other algorithms submitted to the European competition), Courtois argues “This is simply not true and such a recommendation could have serious consequences.” Much more positive, or at least less skeptical, about the status of AES is Landau [Lan00a], who writes “The cryptography community is a rather contentious lot, but it has been virtually unanimous in its praise of NIST’s AES effort and the choice of Rijndael as the Advanced Encryption Standard. This is high praise indeed.”

In spite of the complaints of Courtois, then, the future of AES seems assured. The NIST website, in the response to a frequently-asked-question, says that AES “has the potential to remain secure well beyond twenty years.” It seems likely, then, that AES will continue to be an approved algorithm for U. S. government use for many years to come.

Asymmetric Ciphers — RSA and Others

10.1. History

AES is at present the state of the art in asymmetric encryption. The algorithm was vetted in a rigorous competition, promulgated by NIST as a U. S. national standard, and has proven to be resistant to all attempts at finding practical attacks. But AES is nonetheless a symmetric encryption system that requires both sender and receiver to know the key, and this therefore requires that sender and receiver have had some other, secure, mechanism by which to transmit that key.

The problem of secure key distribution has plagued throughout the centuries all those who would use cryptography. Anyone who uses cryptography must always remember that the best crypto available is totally compromised if the keys have not been kept secret.

It was thus a major new idea when Whit Diffie and Martin Hellman published a paper that argued that asymmetric encryption might be possible, in which the key used to encrypt was not the same as the key used to decrypt [DH76]. Diffie and Hellman proposed a scheme by which a publicly-available key would allow anyone to encrypt a message to be sent to a receiver, but encryption would not be the same as decryption, and it would require a separate, private, key, held only by the receiver, to decrypt the message.

Diffie and Hellman did not propose an algorithm that might permit this “non-secret” encryption. That came almost immediately from

Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman, in their seminal paper describing what is now known as the RSA algorithm [RSA78] and that almost (due to the efforts of the U. S. government) never saw the light of day. The two papers have been the classic public beginnings of public-key cryptography.

As of today, because their papers were the first to be published, these authors remain the ones credited with the discoveries (or inventions?). There is a contrary view, however, from the United Kingdom. In the late 1990s, the British government released documents that suggest that its researchers should get credit for first having these ideas. The work of Diffie, Hellman, Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman, was in fact perhaps already done by Clifford Cocks, James Ellis, and Malcolm Williamson, with some prodding by Nick Patterson, at GCHQ (Government Communications Headquarters) in the United Kingdom nearly a decade earlier [Ell97]. The actual origins of public-key cryptography are thus up for discussion, but the utility is accepted.

10.2. RSA Public-Key Encryption

The fundamental question for public-key cryptography is this: Is there an algorithm that will allow publication of an encryption key, that anyone can see and use, that will produce via encryption a “random” bits version of a message, and that can only be decrypted by the intended recipient by use of a private key held private by the recipient?

The answer to this, by Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman, is “yes”, provided we accept the assumptions that encryption should be fast, that decryption by those who know the private key should be fast, but that decryption (by something possibly better than brute-force encryption) should be at least “computationally impossible” even for adversaries with state-of-the-art computational facilities.

And the answer comes from one of the deep and as yet still-difficult problems in computational number theory.

10.2.1. The Basic RSA Algorithm. Let us choose two primes, p and q , each of 1024 bits, and consider the 2048-bit product $N = pq$. We can view a 2048-bit block of a message to be an integer M modulo 2^{2048} . We choose an exponent e , an integer modulo 2^{2048} , as the publicly-known encryption exponent. We publish e to the known universe, and we thus allow anyone to send us the value $E = M^e \pmod{N}$, the encrypted version of the message M .

We know the values of p and q , but we have kept them secret. We know that the order of the group modulo N is $\phi(N) = (p-1)(q-1)$, but no one else knows this, because no one else has the factoring of N into p and q .

Since the integer residues modulo N form a group modulo N of order $\phi(N)$, and since we know the value of $\phi(N)$, we know that we can determine a value d such that $ed \equiv 1 \pmod{\phi(N)}$. Since $\phi(N)$ is the order of the group modulo the composite integer N , we know that $x^{ed} \equiv x^1 \pmod{N}$ for any x .

Therefore, ...

$$E^d \equiv (M^e)^d \equiv M^{ed} \equiv M^1 \equiv M \pmod{N}$$

We publish the product N and the encryption exponent e . We keep secret the factoring of N into the product $N = pq$ and the decryption exponent d . Anyone who wants to send us a secure message M can send $M^e \equiv E \pmod{N}$. Only we have the value of d and can decrypt.

This is the basic RSA encryption scheme. It relies for security on the difficulty of determining d given e and N .

Current theory is that there is no good computational mechanism for getting d from e and N without knowing $\phi(N)$, and that there is no good computational mechanism for knowing $\phi(N)$ without factoring N into p times q .

Current theory thus says that breaking the RSA algorithm requires the ability to factor large integers (of, say, 2048 bits), and current theory and practice say that this is in general a computationally infeasible problem.

10.3. Implementation

To implement an RSA encryption scheme, we must first find large primes p and q , each of (say) 1024 bits. That is not in fact all that difficult. The prime number theorem says that the number of primes less than or equal to x is approximately

$$\frac{x}{\log x}.$$

This means that there are approximately

$$2^{1024}/1024$$

primes of 1024 bits or less, and approximately

$$2^{1023}/1023$$

primes of 1023 bits or less, so by a rough count there are almost as many 1024-bit primes as there are primes of less than or equal to 1023 bits. Finding primes is not that hard.

(We will see in Chapters 11 and 12 that there are certain kinds of primes to avoid, but this is an easy thing to determine, and the primes that are poor choices can easily be avoided.)

We need to determine e , and then d . As with the choice of primes, there are certain values of e to avoid, but there are lots of suitable e to use. Given e , determining d no more difficult than two applications of a generalized Euclidean algorithm, followed by one application of the Chinese Remainder Theorem. The hard part of setting up an RSA cryptosystem, then, is determining suitable p , q , and then e .

Given that, we can publish N and e and wait for messages to be sent to us with the cryptosystem.

10.3.1. An Example. We will illustrate the RSA cryptosystem with an example. As can be inferred from Chapters 3 and 4, the order of the group modulo $N = pq$ is $\phi(N) = (p - 1)(q - 1)$. If we were to choose p and q such that both $(p - 1)/2$ and $(q - 1)/2$ were prime, we would have the longest possible multiplicative cycle and fewest number of zero divisors for any group of size about N for which N had exactly two prime factors.

We will choose

$$p = 4294900427 = 2 \times 2147450213$$

and

$$q = 4294901243 = 2 \times 2147450621,$$

where we note that 2147450213 and 2147450621 are both prime. These happen to be two such primes of 32 bits each, so the product

$$N = 18446173182483530761$$

is 64 bits in length, and

$$\phi(N) = (4294900427 - 1) * (4294901243 - 1) = 18446173173893729092.$$

We need an encryption exponent e and a decryption exponent d chosen such that

$$ed \equiv 1 \pmod{\phi(N)}.$$

If we choose $e = 111111111$, a simple Euclidean algorithm shows that the decryption exponent $d = 13522443910346794455$ and that

$$111111111 \cdot 13522443910346794455 \equiv 1 \pmod{18446173173893729092}.$$

If our message to be encrypted is the eight-byte message “the text”, this becomes

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} t & h & e & & t & e & x & t \\ 74 & 68 & 65 & 32 & 74 & 65 & 78 & 74 \end{array}$$

with the second row being the ASCII code in hexadecimal, and thus the message, in ASCII, whose bits are interpreted as a 64-bit integer, is the integer

$$8392569455039047796.$$

We now encrypt, compute

$$8392569455039047796^{111111111} \pmod{N} \equiv 2134423211333931089$$

and then (miracle of miracles) decrypt as a check:

$$2134423211333931089^{13522443910346794455} \pmod{N} \equiv 8392569455039047796.$$

Clearly, for longer messages, we can break the message into eight-byte blocks and encrypt each block separately. For a serious implementation of RSA, we might choose p and q each to be 1024 bits long, for N of 2048 bits, and then encrypt in 256-byte blocks.

10.4. How Hard Is It to Break RSA?

Clearly, RSA is only secure if it is computationally infeasible to determine the decryption exponent d given the modulus N and the encryption exponent e . The current state of the theory is that there is no way to compute d from e without knowing $\phi(N)$, and that there is no way to know the value of $\phi(N)$ without factoring N . The security of RSA, then, relies on the difficulty of factoring large integers N , then, where N might be 2048 bits long and is the product of two primes p and q of about equal size.

There are certainly bad choices of p and q that can be made, as we will see in the next chapters. There are also bad choices of e . But as mentioned above, there are lots of primes, and choosing good ones is not really a difficult task. Further, factoring was a difficult computational problem even before it became something of cryptographic interest, and it has remained difficult even with the enormous interest that comes with its cryptographic significance. The recent history of

Table 10.1. Record factorings from the RSA challenge numbers

Name	Decimals	Bits	Factoring Announced
RSA-129	129	426	April 1994
RSA-130	130	430	April 1996
RSA-140	140	463	February 1999
RSA-150	150	496	2004
RSA-160	160	530	April 2003
RSA-170	170	563	December 2009
RSA-576	174	576	December 2003
RSA-180	180	596	May 2010
RSA-190	190	629	November 2010
RSA-640	193	640	November 2005
RSA-200	200	633	May 2005
RSA-210	210	696	September 2013
RSA-704	212	704	July 2012
RSA-220	220	729	May 2016
RSA-230	230	762	August 2018
RSA-232	232	768	February 2020
RSA-768	232	768	December 2009
RSA-240	240	795	November 2019
RSA-250	250	829	February 2020

factoring records includes the following in Table 10.1 from a list of challenge numbers published by Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman. In many instances, the computations needed to factor these challenge values took months or years of computing.

10.5. Other Groups

It should be clear that there is no real magic in the choice of integer factoring for this kind of asymmetric cryptography in which knowing how to encrypt a message does not imply knowing how to decrypt someone else's messages. What is key to using RSA as a cryptographic algorithm is that one has a group modulo N , and that, given a public value e used to encrypt, it is difficult to determine the inverse value d in the group because it is difficult to determine the order $\phi(N)$ of the group. We need to have a large cycle in the group order (hence our choice, in the example, of primes p and q for which $p-1$ and $q-1$ were twice a prime) in order to make brute force attacks infeasible.

But there are other groups that could be used and that have been suggested in the literature. The most important of these is the group of points on an elliptic curve; cryptography using elliptic curves is the topic of Chapter 14. The two major advantages of elliptic curves lie in the ability to get the same degree of computational infeasibility with far fewer bits (and thus less computation) and in the absence of even the kind of attack that is the General Number Field Sieve for factoring.

Other than elliptic curves, however, the suggestions for using other groups, while cryptographically as secure, have failed to be promising alternatives. At the heart of an RSA-like method is the exponentiation of an element in a group. For RSA, that exponentiation is modular multiplication so as to compute a^b in a group. For the other groups that have been suggested, the basic group operation is much more complicated and thus much slower, hence the lack of adoption of such ideas.

For example, one can devise an RSA-like cryptosystem using the class group of a complex quadratic field. With a sufficiently large discriminant, and a proper choice of discriminant, the order of the group could be computationally difficult to determine, just as it is difficult to determine the order $\phi(N)$ of the group modulo N . Class groups of quadratic fields tend to be nearly cyclic, so one could find groups with a large single cycle, and a generator analogous to a generator of the cycle modulo N . However, although such a group provides the same cryptographic security as RSA (assuming large discriminants analogous to large N), the computation of a generator to an exponent requires substantially more (modular) arithmetic than is needed for the simple exponentiation of RSA. Virtually all the other group-based suggestions require modular arithmetic modulo large integers, and it is essentially impossible to do the same mathematics with fewer arithmetic operations than RSA needs. One squaring for each bit of N , and one multiplication for the (roughly) half that many bits that happen to be 1, is about as simple as could be imagined.

On the other hand, RSA as a cryptographic algorithm is slower than, say, AES, and RSA *per se* is not extensively used for cryptography. One of the major features of AES is that it is byte-oriented and can be made table-driven, while exponentiation modulo N requires multiplication with multiprecision integers and is inherently slow. For this reason, as we will see in Chapter 13, RSA is not widely used for cryptography but a variant idea, based on largely the same underlying number theory, is used for key exchange.

How to Factor a Number

Dedication. We dedicate this chapter to the memory of Richard Guy, whose paper with the same title [Guy76] as this chapter is a legendary contribution to the literature on factoring (and thus on cryptography). Richard Guy died, at 103 years old, on 9 March 2020, contributing to professional mathematics until only a few weeks before his death. It is our hope that this chapter does justice to a great scholar and friend.

Introduction

In general, we are going to look at RSA encryption using a modulus $N = pq$, where p and q are large primes (of, say, 2048 bits each). It is generally agreed that even the heavy-duty factoring algorithms won't succeed on moduli N of 4096 bits with well-chosen p and q factors. But there are a number of factoring algorithms that are relatively cheap to run and that will provide a factoring of N if p and q are chosen badly, and there are middle-grade algorithms that will also succeed some of the time. It is incumbent on anyone who might choose to implement RSA encryption that one bangs at N with these lesser algorithms just to make sure that good primes have been used, or at least to avoid primes known likely to lead to a lower-cost factoring of N .

Some of the factoring methods described below are heuristics and won't always produce a factor quickly. Some will essentially always produce a factoring, but with a running time that is provably too long to be of use in attacking the RSA implementation.

We remark at the outset that at least one factor of any integer N must be smaller than the square root of N , but that trial division of N by all the primes less than \sqrt{N} is so infeasible as to be dismissed outright as a possibility. The Prime Number Theorem [HW60] says that the number of primes less than or equal to x , which we write as $\pi(x)$, satisfies

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\pi(x)}{\frac{x}{\ln x}} = 1$$

and for values of x as large as come up in RSA encryption, the limit of 1 is nearly reached. That is, there are, within at worst a factor not much different from 1, more than 10^{600} primes of 2048 bits. If we thus assume $N = pq$ with p and q each of 2048 bits, we would need to do trial division by more than 10^{600} primes, which is simply impossible; planet Earth has only been in existence for about $4.5 \cdot 10^{18}$ nanoseconds.

Factoring was a curious academic enterprise prior to the publication of the RSA algorithm. For many years the standard reference of “hard” factorings to be attempted was the “Cunningham tables” first done by Allan J. C. Cunningham beginning in 1925 and then updated by a number of authors[BLS⁺83]. An extensive literature exists from before the invention of the Number Field Sieve (the NFS, which we almost introduce in Chapter 12) [Bre80, BP81, Bue87, BLP93, Cha91a, Cha91b, Cha91c, Cop98, Copar, Dix81, Dix84, Ger83, Len96, LLMP93, LP92, Pom83, Pomar, WSar, Wil82, Wil84]. Since the introduction of the NFS, most work on factoring has been to improve the running time, but not the basic algorithm.

11.1. Pollard rho

The Pollard rho factoring method [Guy76, Pol75] is a heuristic that only works for certain integers one might want to factor. However, it is a simple and fast method and can always be tried just to see if it’s going to work.

Let’s assume we are trying to factor $N = 1037 = 17 \cdot 61$.

We iterate a simple function, like $x_n^2 = x_{n-1}^2 - 1$ repeatedly. We start with x_1 and x_2 , and then iterate x_1 to x_2 and iterate x_2 twice to get x_3 and then x_4 . We then iterate x_2 once and x_4 twice. In steady state, we do three iterations of the function to obtain the values of x_m and x_{2m} , all taken modulo $N = 1037$. As we go, we take $\gcd(x_m - x_{2m}, N)$ and hope to get a factor of N popping out.

m	x_m	x_{2m}	$x_m - x_{2m}$	gcd
1	2	8	-6	1
2	3	63	-60	1
3	8	252	-244	61
4	63	369	-306	17
5	857			
6	252			
7	246			
8	369			

What happens is this: As one runs the x_i at single speed and double speed, the values x_i and x_{2i} must eventually collide, because there are only finitely many values modulo p for any prime factor p of N . The “rho” comes from the appearance of the cycle, and we use the term *epact* for the prime p for the least m such that we have $x_{2m} \equiv x_m \pmod{p}$ and m is not less than the tail length that leads in to the cycle. If N is the product of two primes, we hope that the epacts for the two factors will not be the same, or else we would get N for the gcd and not just one of the two factors. In practice, with large primes, this won’t be a problem.

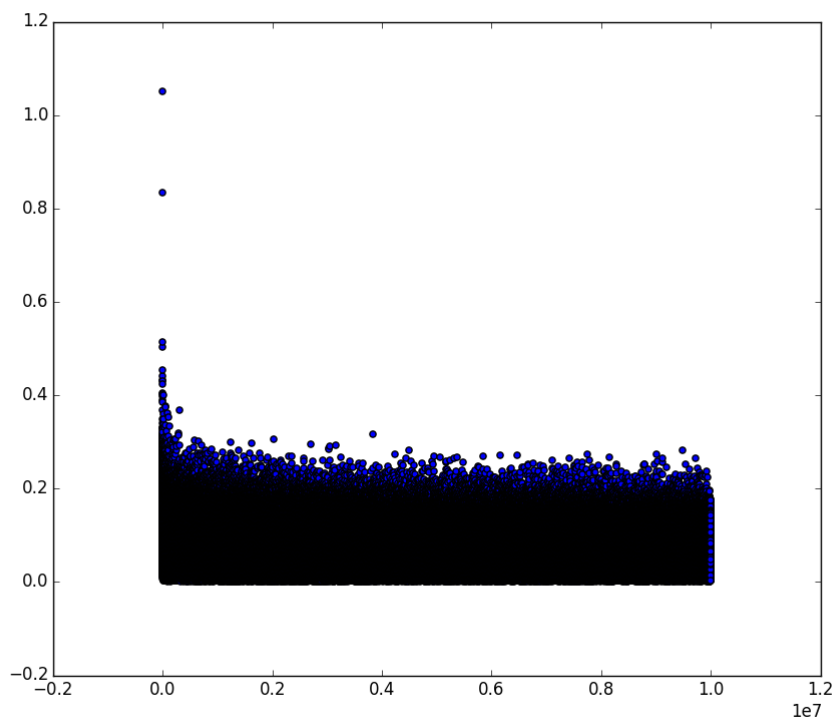
And in general, rather than take the gcd with every step, we would accumulate a running product modulo N and only take gcd’s every 100 steps, or perhaps every 1000 steps, depending on one’s taste.

Finally, we present a scatter plot of all epacts for primes to ten million. The scatter plot is actually of

$$\frac{\text{epact}(p)}{\sqrt{p} \ln p}$$

which can be seen to be a slowly decreasing constant generally smaller than 0.2 for primes p of this size.

We note, however, that this method almost certainly won’t factor integers that would be used for RSA encryption. If $N = pq$ and the primes p and q are each 2048 bits long, then we would expect to have to step the iteration more than $2^{1024} \approx 10^{308}$ times before we hit the epact and found a factor.



11.2. Pollard $p - 1$

The Pollard $p - 1$ factoring method [Pol74] is the forerunner of a number of methods.

We remember that the order of the multiplicative group mod a prime p is $p - 1$ and that any element raised to the order of the group is the identity (this is Lagrange's Theorem).

To factor an integer N , then, we first compute an enormous exponent $M = \prod q_i^{e_i}$ that is the product of all small primes q_i to high powers e_i , for some vague definitions of “all”, “small”, and “high”. For example, one could take the 78498 primes up to one million raised to the highest exponent such that $q_i^{e_i}$ is still a 32-bit number. This value of M is an integer of about 3 million bits.

We now choose a residue a (like 3) and compute

$$a^M \equiv b \pmod{N}.$$

Now, if it happens that N is divisible by a prime p for which $p - 1$ divides M , then we have

$$a^M \equiv b \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$$

and by taking

$$\gcd(b - 1, N)$$

we extract the factor p .

In general, we would not expect to be able to factor RSA-type N using this approach. In order for the $p - 1$ method to work, the order of the group modulo some factor of N would have to be “crumbly”, that is, would have to comprise only small prime factors, and that’s not likely. However, the existence of this factoring attack implies that one should specifically guard against being susceptible to it when one chooses the two primes with which to create N . Part of choosing primes p and q with which to create $N = pq$ must be to verify that each of $p - 1$ and $q - 1$ have a very large prime factor; that would prevent this attack from being successful.

11.2.1. The General Metaphysics of $p - 1$. The $p - 1$ method is the forerunner of a number of such algorithms.

We assume that we have a group, such as the group of residues under multiplication modulo a prime. We assume that we have a way to “hack for” the order of the group to a factor of N ; in the case of traditional $p - 1$, that’s the $\gcd(b - 1, N)$ part. The entire method is a bit of a hack in the original sense of the term. But it works.

So we simply exponentiate a group element to a large power M in hopes of getting the factor to pop out from the group structure.

This basic approach shows up later in other factoring methods that use different groups instead of just the integers themselves modulo N .

11.2.2. Step Two of $p - 1$. What has been described above is Step one of the $p - 1$ method. Step two is as follows:

Beyond a certain point, one would not expect $p - 1$, the order of the group, to be divisible by the square of a prime, so we need only include in M primes to the first power. And beyond a certain point we might assume that we were missing only a single prime in the order of the group, that is, that M contained all of $p - 1$ except for one last large-ish prime. So we exponentiate one more prime at a time.

If we have originally chosen to take the primes to 100 thousand, then the next primes would be 100003, 100019, 100043, 100049, and

100057. We exponentiate to the 100003-rd power to add 100003 to M , and either take the gcd or multiply in the $b - 1$ value to a running product just as we did with Pollard rho. Then we exponentiate only 16 more steps to replace 100003 by 100019, then 24 more steps to replace 100019 with 100043, and so forth. This is cheap and can be effective.

11.3. CFRAC

CFRAC, the continued fraction algorithm, was first proposed by Lehmer and Powers back about 1930, but was not implemented seriously until 1970, because it doesn't always work. That makes it annoying if done by hand, but less so if it's the computer that simply fails several times before succeeding. Indeed, Morrison and Brillhart's [MB71, MB75] use of it in 1970 to factor $F_7 = 2^{2^7} + 1$, an integer of 39 decimals, began an entirely new era in research on factoring.

11.3.1. Continued Fractions. We illustrate the concept of a continued fraction by example. Consider the value $267/111$. We write this as

$$\begin{aligned}
 267/111 &= 2 + 45/111 \\
 &= 2 + \frac{1}{\frac{111}{45}} \\
 &= 2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{21}{45}} \\
 &= 2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{\frac{45}{21}}{1}} \\
 &= 2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{3}{21}}} \\
 &= 2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{\frac{21}{3}}}} \\
 &= 2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{7}}}
 \end{aligned}$$

The algorithm should be obvious (although it might not necessarily be clear why anyone would care to implement such an algorithm):

- Write the quantity as $a_0 + z_0$, where $0 \leq z_0 < 1$.
- Write z_0 as $\frac{1}{1/z_0}$, noting that $1/z_0 > 1$.

- Write $\frac{1}{1/z_0}$ as $\frac{1}{a_1+z_1}$, where $0 \leq z_1 < 1$.
- Rinse and repeat.

Let's motivate the recurrences to follow with something that isn't quite a proof but is close and should make the recurrences more understandable.

Let's say we have a continued fraction

$$a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1 + \frac{1}{a_2 + \frac{1}{a_3 + \dots}}}$$

which we will write as

$$R = [a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots]$$

for integers a_i , and for the moment we won't care whether it's a finite or infinite continued fraction.

We're going to evaluate

$$\begin{aligned} R_0 &= p_0/q_0 = [a_0] \\ R_1 &= p_1/q_1 = [a_0, a_1] \\ R_2 &= p_2/q_2 = [a_0, a_1, a_2] \\ R_3 &= p_3/q_3 = [a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3] \end{aligned}$$

These are all rational numbers, since the a_i are integers, and thus we can assume p_i and q_i are integers. We will call p_i and q_i the *convergents*.

So let's unwind the algebra.

$$R_0 = p_0/q_0 = [a_0]$$

so we have

$$\begin{aligned} p_0 &= a_0 \\ q_0 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Now

$$R_1 = p_1/q_1 = a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1} = \frac{a_0 a_1 + 1}{a_1}$$

so we have

$$\begin{aligned} p_1 &= a_0 a_1 + 1 = a_1(p_0) + 1 \\ q_1 &= a_1 = a_1(q_0) + 0 \end{aligned}$$

Continuing, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 R_2 = p_2/q_2 &= a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1 + \frac{1}{a_2}} \\
 &= a_0 + \frac{1}{\frac{a_1 a_2 + 1}{a_2}} \\
 &= a_0 + \frac{a_2}{a_1 a_2 + 1} \\
 &= \frac{a_0 a_1 a_2 + a_0 + a_2}{a_1 a_2 + 1} \\
 &= \frac{a_2(a_0 a_1 + 1) + a_0}{a_2(a_1) + 1} \\
 &= \frac{a_2(p_1) + p_0}{a_2(q_1) + q_0}
 \end{aligned}$$

so we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 p_2 &= a_2(a_0 a_1 + 1) + a_0 = a_2(p_1) + p_0 \\
 q_2 &= a_2(a_1) = a_2(q_1) + q_0
 \end{aligned}$$

Finally,

$$\begin{aligned}
 R_3 = p_3/q_3 &= a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1 + \frac{1}{a_2 + \frac{1}{a_3}}} \\
 &= a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1 + \frac{1}{\frac{a_2 a_3 + 1}{a_3}}} \\
 &= a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1 + \frac{a_3}{a_2 a_3 + 1}} \\
 &= a_0 + \frac{1}{\frac{a_1 a_2 a_3 + a_1 + a_3}{a_2 a_3 + 1}} \\
 &= a_0 + \frac{a_2 a_3 + 1}{a_1 a_2 a_3 + a_1 + a_3} \\
 &= \frac{a_0 a_1 a_2 a_3 + a_0 a_1 + a_0 a_3 + a_2 a_3 + 1}{a_1 a_2 a_3 + a_1 + a_3} \\
 &= \frac{a_3(a_0 a_1 a_2 + a_0 + a_2) + a_0 a_1 + 1}{a_3(a_1 a_2 + 1) + a_1}
 \end{aligned}$$

so we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 p_3 &= a_3(a_0 a_1 a_2 + a_0 + a_2) + a_0 a_1 + 1 = a_3(p_2) + p_1 \\
 q_3 &= a_3(a_1 a_2 + 1) + a_1 = a_3(q_2) + q_1
 \end{aligned}$$

Now, we don't have our subscripts exactly synched up here with what follows below, but I would hope that the basic recurrences below are motivated by this.

Theorem 11.1. *If r is a rational number, then it has a finite continued fraction expansion.*

Theorem 11.2. *If $z \in \mathbb{R}$, then it has a continued fraction expansion that is eventually periodic if and only if it is $a + b\sqrt{n}$, where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.*

The second of these theorems says that quadratic irrationals have cf expansions that are eventually periodic.

Definition 11.3. If (a, b, c) is a binary quadratic form of discriminant Δ , then the *principal root* of the form is the quadratic irrational

$$\frac{-b + \sqrt{\Delta}}{2a}$$

Theorem 11.4. *If z is a quadratic irrational, then the preperiod part of its cf expansion corresponds to the reduction of the BQF for which the irrational is a principal root, and the periodic portion of the cf corresponds to the cycling through the cycle of reduced forms.*

(Or at least this is a mostly true theorem. There are some technical issues, but this is essentially true, and true for our purposes here.)

11.3.2. CFRAC, continued fraction version. We will start by presenting the continued fraction version of CFRAC.

Our goal is to factor N and we expand what is essentially the continued fraction for \sqrt{N} . What motivates us is the thought that if we can create a congruence

$$X^2 \equiv Y^2 \pmod{N},$$

then we would have

$$(X - Y)(X + Y) \equiv 0 \pmod{N},$$

and it just might happen that one of the two factors of N would divide $X - Y$ and the other would divide $X + Y$. If this were the case, then computing $\gcd(N, X - Y)$ would cause a factor of N to pop out.

Let

$$\begin{aligned}
 i &= 0 \\
 P_0 &= 0 \\
 Q_0 &= 1 \\
 a_0 &= \lfloor \sqrt{N} \rfloor \\
 p_{-2} &= 0 \\
 p_{-1} &= 1 \\
 q_{-2} &= 1 \\
 q_{-1} &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

We now repeat:

$$\begin{aligned}
 p_i &= a_i \cdot p_{i-1} + p_{i-2} \pmod{N} \\
 q_i &= a_i \cdot q_{i-1} + q_{i-2} \pmod{N} \\
 P_{i+1} &= a_i \cdot Q_i - P_i \\
 Q_{i+1} &= \frac{N - P_{i+1}^2}{Q_i} \\
 a_i &= \left\lfloor \frac{P_{i+1} + \sqrt{N}}{Q_{i+1}} \right\rfloor
 \end{aligned}$$

We factor the $(-1)^i Q_i$ over a *factor base* of small primes, where we only save the parity of the exponents. If we get to a point where we have a subset of subscripts S such that

$$\begin{aligned}
 X &= \prod_{i \in S} p_{i-1} \pmod{N} \\
 Y &= \sqrt{\prod_{i \in S} (-1)^i Q_i} \pmod{N}
 \end{aligned}$$

with Y an integer, then we have

$$X^2 \equiv Y^2 \pmod{N}$$

and with any luck, $\gcd(X - Y, N)$ or $\gcd(X + Y, N)$ will yield factors of N .

We will call an integer *smooth* if it factors completely over the factor base. The CRAC algorithm succeeds if one can get enough smooth numbers, with their factorings, to allow for the linear combinations that produce two squares congruent to each other modulo N . The size of the factor base is important. If it is chosen too small, not enough

of the Q_i will factor completely. If it is chosen too large, then testing individual integers for smoothness will be too slow.

There is always the possibility that we could get a gcd that was either 1 or all of N . This is the place where the algorithm can fail and was the reason it was not pursued when first invented. When humans do the calculations, success needs to be the outcome; when computers are used, one can simply have the program keep working until success is finally achieved.

We note that we always have

$$p_i^2 - Nq_i^2 = (-1)^{i+1}Q_{i+1}.$$

The square value on one side, p_i^2 , is always present. It's creating the square on the other side by factoring the Q_i that is the harder part.

11.3.3. Example. Let $N = 1000009$.

i	p_{i-1}	q_{i-1}	P_i	Q_i	a_i	Q_i factored
1	1000	1	1000	9	222	$[-1, 3, 3]$
2	222001	222	998	445	4	
3	889004	889	782	873	2	
4	1000000	2000	964	81	24	$[3, 3, 3, 3]$
5	888788	48889	980	489	4	
6	555116	197556	976	97	20	
7	991009	999982	964	729	2	$[-1, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3]$
8	537116	197502	494	1037	1	
9	528116	197475	543	680	2	$[-1, 2, 2, 2, 5, 17]$
10	593339	592452	817	489	3	
11	308115	974822	650	1181	1	
12	901454	567265	531	608	2	$[2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 19]$
13	111005	109334	685	873	1	
14	12450	676599	188	1105	1	$[5, 13, 17]$
15	123455	785933	917	144	13	$[-1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3]$
16	617356	893638	955	611	3	
17	975514	466820	878	375	5	$[-1, 3, 5, 5, 5]$
18	494881	227711	997	16	124	$[2, 2, 2, 2]$
19	340200	702732	987	1615	1	$[-1, 5, 17, 19]$
20	835081	930443	628	375	4	$[3, 5, 5, 5]$
21	680497	424468	872	639	2	
22	196057	779370	406	1307	1	
23	876554	203829	901	144	13	$[-1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3]$
24	591160	429120	971	397	4	
25	241167	920300	617	1560	1	$[-1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 5, 13]$

We now look for subsets of this list where the factorings have exponents that all sum to zero mod 2 (meaning that the product of the corresponding Q_i would be a perfect square). We note that we treat -1 as if it were a prime; we need an even number of -1 values in our factorings in order to get a square (and not the negative of a square).

We find that

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\{4\} \\
 &\{18\} \\
 &\{1, 7\} \\
 &\{1, 15\} \\
 &\{1, 23\} \\
 &\{1, 17, 20\} \\
 &\{9, 12, 19\} \\
 &\{9, 14, 20, 25\}
 \end{aligned}$$

are the subsets that work.

If we look at line 18, we have a Q_i that is itself a perfect square, and thus

$$\begin{aligned}
 X &= 494881 \\
 Y &= 4
 \end{aligned}$$

and we find that

$$\gcd(494877, N) = 293$$

for a factoring.

In general, we would not expect to get a Q_i that was a perfect square all by itself, but we could look at lines 1 and 23:

$$\begin{aligned}
 X &= 1000 \cdot 876554 \equiv 546116 \pmod{N} \\
 Y &= 36
 \end{aligned}$$

and we find that

$$\gcd(546152, N) = 293$$

for a factoring.

11.3.4. Computation. In all factoring methods that actually work, there is an interplay between the mathematics and the computation. In the case of CFRAC, we observe two things that make the computation feasible. First, the Q_i that we try to factor completely over the factor base are always smaller than \sqrt{N} . That could still be a large number, but it is at least under control.

Equally important, if not more so, the determination of which Q_i can be multiplied together to form a square can be done with matrix reduction, and with matrix reduction on bits and not actually on integers. We produce a matrix in which only the exponent modulo 2 of the factorings is present, and we reduce that matrix modulo 2. Any row that reduces to all zeros corresponds to a subset of Q_i that lead to an

$X^2 \equiv Y^2 \pmod{N}$ congruence. In our example above, we would start with a matrix

	-1	2	3	5	13	17	19
1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
12	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
14	0	0	0	1	1	1	0
15	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
17	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
18	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
19	1	0	0	1	0	1	1
20	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
23	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
25	1	1	1	1	1	0	0

Indeed, for an RSA-sized N to factor, this will be a large matrix, and we will also need the companion matrix as we reduce in order to determine which rows of the matrix combine to generate products of Q_i that are perfect squares, but the fact that we need only reduce modulo 2 is an enormous computational advantage. We will see later, in the context of the discrete logarithm problem, a matrix similar to this but for which we will need to keep all the integer values of the matrix reduction.

11.3.5. CFRAC, binary quadratic forms version. CFRAC can be done using binary quadratic forms. It is slightly tedious to make the complete translation from the usual continued fraction version to the forms version, so I won't do that. I will mention, however, that the first step is to realize that expanding the continued fraction for \sqrt{N} is the same as expanding the principal cycle of forms for discriminant $4N$, not N .

Let

$$i = 0$$

$$a_0 = \left[\frac{-1 + \sqrt{N}}{2} \right]$$

$$z = -a_0 + \frac{-1 + \sqrt{N}}{2}$$

$$P_{-2} = 0$$

$$P_{-1} = 1$$

$$Q_{-2} = 1$$

$$Q_{-1} = 0$$

We now repeat:

$$P_i = a_i \cdot P_{i-1} + P_{i-2} \pmod{N}$$

$$Q_i = a_i \cdot Q_{i-1} + Q_{i-2} \pmod{N}$$

$$M_i = 2P_i + Q_i$$

Example: Let's let $\Delta = 4 * 1000009$. (Note that the first of the technical complications is that the cf expansion of N corresponds to dealing with forms of discriminant $4N$. But we can deal with this.)

We start with the form

$$(1, 0, -1000009)$$

which has a preperiod

$$\begin{array}{l} 0 \text{ --} (\quad 1, \quad 0, -1000009) \\ 0 \text{ --} (-1000009, \quad 0, \quad 1) \\ 1000 \text{ --} (\quad 1, \quad 2000, \quad -9) \end{array}$$

before it gets to the reduced form

$$(1, 2000, -9)$$

Then we cycle

$$\begin{array}{l} 1: \quad 0 \text{ --} (\quad 1, \quad 2000, \quad -9) \\ 2: \quad -222 \text{ --} (\quad -9, \quad 1996, \quad 445) \\ 3: \quad 4 \text{ --} (\quad 445, \quad 1564, \quad -873) \\ 4: \quad -2 \text{ --} (\quad -873, \quad 1928, \quad 81) \\ 5: \quad 24 \text{ --} (\quad 81, \quad 1960, \quad -489) \\ 6: \quad -4 \text{ --} (\quad -489, \quad 1952, \quad 97) \\ 7: \quad 20 \text{ --} (\quad 97, \quad 1928, \quad -729) \\ 8: \quad -2 \text{ --} (\quad -729, \quad 988, \quad 1037) \\ 9: \quad 1 \text{ --} (\quad 1037, \quad 1086, \quad -680) \end{array}$$

10:	-2	--(	-680,	1634,	489)
11:	3	--(	489,	1300,	-1181)
12:	-1	--(	-1181,	1062,	608)
13:	2	--(	608,	1370,	-873)
14:	-1	--(	-873,	376,	1105)
15:	1	--(	1105,	1834,	-144)
16:	-13	--(	-144,	1910,	611)
17:	3	--(	611,	1756,	-375)
18:	-5	--(	-375,	1994,	16)
19:	124	--(	16,	1974,	-1615)
20:	-1	--(	-1615,	1256,	375)
21:	4	--(	375,	1744,	-639)
22:	-2	--(	-639,	812,	1307)
23:	1	--(	1307,	1802,	-144)
24:	-13	--(	-144,	1942,	397)
25:	4	--(	397,	1234,	-1560)

Notice that the third coefficients are exactly the same values as in the cf expansion, but with the minus signs explicit.

How to Factor More Effectively

12.1. Shortcomings of CFRAC

One major advantage of CFRAC was the fact that in order to factor an integer N , one needed only to test for smoothness integers of size \sqrt{N} .

The major shortcoming of CFRAC was that there was no structure or order to the numbers that one was testing for smoothness, since smoothness testing for CFRAC is a process that is essentially trial division.

12.2. The Quadratic Sieve

Carl Pomerance usually gets most of the credit for the QS algorithm, but its roots go back to ideas of Kraitchik. However, just as CFRAC was conceived of but not implementable in the days before computers, the QS was not something that Kraitchik could have implemented in his era.

The basic idea of QS is quite similar to CFRAC: we will look at a long list of values Q for which we have a solution A to the congruence $A^2 \equiv Q$. We will factor the Q using a factor base. And we will then do the linear algebra on the factorings of the Q to be able to complete

a difference-of-squares congruence

$$\prod A_i \equiv \prod Q_{i_j} \pmod{N}$$

in hopes that the gcd of the algebraic factoring of the congruence yields something nontrivial.

12.2.1. The Algorithm. To factor N , we first compute $R = \lfloor \sqrt{N} \rfloor$.

We then set up a long vector L running for subscripts $-n$ to n whose values are the *logarithms* of

$$Q_n = (R + n)^2 - N$$

and we note that, just as with CFRAC, we have the values that square modulo N to the Q_n that we are going to test for smoothness.

We choose as before a factor base FB of small primes p .

Now, for each $p \in FB$, we determine the entry point n_0 for which

$$A_{n_0}^2 = (R + n_0)^2 - N = Q_{n_0}$$

and for all subscripts $n_0 \pm kp$ we subtract $\log p$ from the array L .

If, when we finish with the factor base, we have entries in L that are zero or near zero (we must allow for roundoff of floating point values), then these likely correspond to Q_n that factor completely over the factor base. We refactor those values using trial division.

We then do the linear algebra step just as we did for CFRAC.

12.2.2. The Crucial Reasons for Success. The values Q_n are small (just as they were in CFRAC) because we have $R \pm n$ nearly equal to \sqrt{N} , so the Q_n are not really any bigger than n^2 .

What is crucial to notice, however, and what makes the QS successful, is that we have provided structure to the values we test for smoothness (they lie in an array) and we can *sieve at constant stride* through that array. Not all values will prove to be smooth, but we have replaced expensive integer division with subtraction at constant stride walking through a very long array. And we know which array locations need to have a $\log p$ subtracted, so no compute step is totally wasted. The only “wasted” computation is subtraction in locations that eventually turn out not to correspond to smooth integers.

We can speed things up (perhaps) by scaling all the floating point values and then using fixed point integer arithmetic.

We note that what we are actually testing for smoothness are the *norms* of algebraic integers

$$\frac{-(R+n) + \sqrt{N}}{2}$$

in the quadratic number field

$$\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{N})$$

(or maybe $4N$; we will not be pedantic about discriminant N or $4N$). This theme will continue; the multiple polynomial quadratic sieve uses a number of quadratic number fields with N as a factor of the discriminant, and the more general number field sieve, now the best of the factoring methods, does the same thing with norms in fields of higher degree than 2.

12.3. Once More Unto the Breach

So let's factor 1037 yet again...

$$R = \lfloor \sqrt{1037} \rfloor = 32$$

n	$R+n$	Q_n	Factoring
-8	24	-461	$-1 \cdot 461$
-7	25	-412	$-1 \cdot 2^2 \cdot 10311$
-6	26	-361	$-1 \cdot 2^2 \cdot 19 \cdot 19$
-5	27	-308	$-1 \cdot 2^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11$
-4	28	-253	$-1 \cdot 11 \cdot 23$
-3	29	-196	$-1 \cdot 2^2 \cdot 7^2$
-2	30	-137	$-1 \cdot 137$
-1	31	-76	$-1 \cdot 2^2 \cdot 17$
0	32	-13	$-1 \cdot 13$
1	33	52	$2^2 \cdot 13$
2	34	119	$7 \cdot 17$
3	35	188	$4 \cdot 47$
4	36	259	$7 \cdot 37$
5	37	332	$4 \cdot 83$
6	38	407	$11 \cdot 37$
7	39	484	$4 \cdot 121$
8	40	563	563
9	41	644	$4 \cdot 7 \cdot 23$

We see that $n = -3, 0, 1$ produce

$$29^2 \cdot 32^2 \cdot 33^2 \equiv 364^2 \pmod{1037}$$

and that $30624 - 364 = 30260$ has the factor 17 and $30624 + 364 = 30988$ has the factor 61.

12.4. The Multiple Polynomial Quadratic Sieve

The crucial improvement with CFRAC was the notion of factor base and the linear algebra to get a $X^2 \equiv Y^2 \pmod{N}$ congruence.

The crucial improvement with QS was to turn the smoothness testing into a vector sieving operation.

The problem with QS is that we have only one quadratic polynomial $X^2 - N$ whose values we are trying to keep small in order to make them more likely to be smooth over the factor base. Since this is a parabola rising to the right and left from $X_0 = \sqrt{N}$, the values will increase steadily the further away we go from the square root of N , and yield of smooth values will decrease.

Let's fix that problem.

The N to factor is big, maybe 1000 bits (300 decimals) or more. The array we are working with is limited by physical memory in a computer, so for a machine with 4 gigabytes, we have space for maybe 10^9 things, which is tiny by comparison.

We won't go into all the details of the math, but the gist of the approach is this. Instead of being satisfied with the one polynomial $X^2 - N$, we can do a little calculus to optimize the choice of polynomials $aX^2 + bXY + cY^2$ of discriminants kN for small values of k , so that when we complete the square we have

$$(2an + b)^2 - kN$$

small for a large range of values n .

The details are very clear in Silverman's original paper [Sil87]. In essence, one is using the fact that there are lots of polynomials, and thus there are lots of polynomials with long arrays of small norm values to test for smoothness. When one polynomial/form has its values getting too big, the program shifts to a different polynomial and continues as before. The goal, after all, is to harvest as many smooth numbers as possible for later use in the linear algebra step.

Everything else proceeds as before.

It was the MPQS that was used by Lenstra and Manasse [LM90] in the first factoring ever of a “hard” number of 100 decimal digits.

12.4.1. Yet One More Advantage. A final advantage gained by MPQS, which was exploited extensively by Silverman and was the prototype of all the embarrassingly parallel crowdsourcing of computational capability (GIMPS, SETI At Home, etc.), is that this is an embarrassingly parallel computation that can be done on computers that are only loosely coupled in a network. Because N is large, we can assume all the polynomials lead to a different range of numbers to test for smoothness, so there is no overlap or redundancy in doing all the smoothness testing in parallel. Silverman’s experience was that changing polynomials very frequently was a very good thing, so he farmed out the different computations to a number of different machines. Since there are relatively few residues that come up smooth, the data of smooth numbers coming back to a central repository is small compared to the work being done on the different computers, so we there is no need for a high bandwidth connection to all the various computers.

12.5. The Number Field Sieve

The MPQS was superseded in the early 1990s by the Number Field Sieve [LHWL93], which we won’t go into because the algebra is much more complicated.

Suffice it to say, however, that the basic approach to factoring is much the same in the NFS as in MPQS and QS. We sieve to test numbers for smoothness over a factor base, using formulas that give us one side of a congruence

$$X^2 \equiv Y^2 \pmod{N}$$

We do linear algebra modulo 2 to find a subset of our smooth numbers that multiply together to give a perfect square, and then we test

$$\gcd(X - Y, N)$$

and

$$\gcd(X + Y, N)$$

in hopes of finding a factor.

The improvement provided by the NFS over the MPQS is the same as that of the MPQS over the QS. We use more of the algebraic structure of number fields to get a better set of small numbers to test for smoothness, so we get more such smooth numbers faster.

12.6. Factoring with Elliptic Curves

The MPQS can be considered to be a “middle grade” factoring method at present. Although it will work and has advantages over lesser algorithms, it has been superseded by the Number Field Sieve as the workhorse algorithm for serious factoring.

Another middle grade method uses elliptic curves [Len87], and is essentially an application of a Pollard $p - 1$ approach to the group of points on an elliptic curve.

We recall that in projective notation, the identity of the group modulo a prime p are the projective coordinates with $z \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$. If we run a $p - 1$ -like multiplication of points (recall that the curve group is written additively, so we use the term “multiplication” instead of the term “exponentiation”), but take the coordinates modulo N (the integer to be factored) instead of the unknown factor p of N , then a gcd of the z coordinate with N will extract the p when we hit the identity of the group.

In the $p - 1$ method the order of the group is $p - 1$, and thus in order to achieve a factoring we need an exponent that has in it all the factors of $p - 1$. By Hasse’s Theorem, the order of the curve group modulo a prime p is no larger than $p + 1 + 2\sqrt{p}$, so we are not much worse off here than with the naive $p - 1$. We lose with elliptic curves in that the arithmetic for adding two points takes about a dozen multiplications of integers (the number varies depending on exactly which curve representation is used and how the arithmetic steps are arranged) instead of just the one that is used in $p - 1$.

However, we get a huge win elliptic curves, as we did with the MPQS, in that we can run the computation using a large number of different curves, all in parallel. With $p - 1$, we have only the one group order of $p - 1$, which could have a large prime factor that would prevent the $p - 1$ method from succeeding. With elliptic curves, we know from the mathematics that essentially all values in the range $p + 1 - 2\sqrt{p}$ to $p + 1 + 2\sqrt{p}$ are in fact orders of curve groups, and we only need one of those group orders to be crumbly in order to succeed. This has led

to the use of the ECM as a standard method for removing relatively small factors from any large integer that needs to be factored.

Cycles, Randomness, Discrete Logarithms, and Key Exchange

The classic problem in cryptography has always been the desire of two parties to communicate with each other but prevent others from reading and understanding those communications. With the expansion of computing and the development of computer networks, a second problem has become critically important: How can two parties (Armadillo and Bobcat, say), who have never met, and whose only connection is a first-time communication via computers on the internet, authenticate their identities to each other? How can a secure and asymmetric communication link be established so that they can exchange information that cannot be read by other entities?

We remark that this is a problem that is specific to asymmetric encryption algorithms. In a symmetric world, both Armadillo and Bobcat would have shared a cryptographic key and the ability of either to provide any meaningful communication to the other would have demonstrated that the party at the end of the communication link had access to the key. (We will admit that interception, coercion, and such could co-opt such legitimate use of the key, but in fact that vulnerability exists in any such attempt at secure communication between parties.)

And we note up front that this is a fundamental problem in electronic commerce. We buy things online, but we make these purchases at times with vendors with whom we have not done business before.

The modern solutions to this communication problem invariably all seem to point back to the use of a discrete logarithm. In this chapter we present the basic math behind discrete logarithms in several relevant groups.

We remark that, just as with factoring, there is an extensive literature on the computation of discrete logs [Elg85, Gor90, Gor91, GM91, Pol78, Web95, Web96, Web98].

13.1. The Discrete Logarithm Problem

Definition 13.1. Let G be a cyclic group with a known generator g . If the group is cyclic, then any element $a \in G$ can be written as some power g^e in G . Given such an element $a \in G$, the *discrete logarithm problem* in G is the determination of the integer exponent e such that $g^e = a$.

The use of the word “discrete” is in reference to the more ordinary logarithm, where we would write

$$\begin{aligned} g^e &= a \\ e &= \log_g a \end{aligned}$$

Some discrete logarithm (DL) problems are easy. For example, let group G be the group of integers modulo n under addition. The generator is $g = 1_G$. Given any element m_G in the group, it is trivial to see that

$$m_G = m \cdot 1_G$$

where we have subscripted 1_G and m_G for the purpose of identifying these as elements in the group, which happen to be different from the m on the right hand side that represents repeated application m times of the group operation.

13.2. Difficult Discrete Log Problems

It is a *hugely important fact* that for a number of interesting and thus useful groups, the discrete logarithm problem is hard to solve because exponentiation of a generator g cycles through the group in a reasonably random order. For the integers under addition, the DL problem is trivial. For the integers modulo a prime number under multiplication, the problem is very hard indeed.

What we will see is that the discrete log problem is a hard problem (for some definition of “hard”) in many groups for which exponentiation/computation is simple. That is, doing the exponentiation to get $a = g^e$ given g and e is easy, but undoing the exponentiation to get e from a and g is hard.

For example, modulo 11, with primitive root 2, we have

$$\begin{aligned}2^1 &\equiv 2 \\2^2 &\equiv 4 \\2^3 &\equiv 8 \\2^4 &\equiv 5 \\2^5 &\equiv 10 \\2^6 &\equiv 9 \\2^7 &\equiv 7 \\2^8 &\equiv 3 \\2^9 &\equiv 6 \\2^{10} &\equiv 1\end{aligned}$$

In this case, because 2 is small, we can predict some of the sequences (2 to 4 to 8, for example). But if we choose a primitive root for which the “wrap” modulo 11 is almost guaranteed, say 7, then there is (apparently) no simple way to follow the sequence:

$$\begin{aligned}7^1 &\equiv 7 \\7^2 &\equiv 5 \\7^3 &\equiv 2 \\7^4 &\equiv 3 \\7^5 &\equiv 10 \\7^6 &\equiv 4 \\7^7 &\equiv 6 \\7^8 &\equiv 9 \\7^9 &\equiv 8 \\7^{10} &\equiv 1\end{aligned}$$

This is the key fact used in many cryptographic schemes.

13.3. Cycles

We mentioned in §3.4.1 the concept of a primitive root. Let's continue with that.

Definition 13.2. A *primitive root* in a cyclic group G of order n is an element g that is of order n .

Proposition 13.3. For n an integer, the order of the multiplicative group of integers modulo n is $\phi(n)$.

Proposition 13.4. For p a prime and k a positive integer, we have $\phi(p^k) = (p-1)p^{k-1}$.

Proposition 13.5. The only integers n for which primitive roots exist are 2, 4, prime powers p^k for k a positive integer, and $2p^k$ for k a positive integer.

Remark 13.6. We go back to the multiplicative structure of the integers mod 15 for an example of these results. Since $15 = 3 \cdot 5$, we have $\phi(15) = \phi(3)\phi(5) = 2 \cdot 4 = 8$. Since 15 is not of the form mentioned in §(13.5), it is not multiplicatively a cyclic group, but is instead the product of a 2-cycle (from the 3) and a 4-cycle (from the 5). The multiplicative group is the direct product

$$\{1, 11\} \times \{1, 2, 4, 8\}$$

Proposition 13.7. There are exactly $\phi(p-1)$ primitive roots of the multiplicative group of integers modulo a prime p .

Proof. To see this, we look at the powers of the primitive root in exponent order

$$g^1, g^2, g^3, \dots, g^{p-1} = 1$$

and we remember that multiplying these elements is the same as adding the exponents.

Clearly, an exponent e that is prime to $p-1$ will generate additively a complete cycle of the exponents 1 through $p-1$, and an exponent e that has factors in common with $p-1$ will short-cycle. \square

13.4. Cocks-Ellis-Williamson/Diffie-Hellman Key Exchange

Let us assume that Armadillo and Bobcat wish to share secret information over an insecure communication channel. This would be simple for them to do if they had a cryptographic key to be used for encryption.

But what if they have never met? What if this is their first interaction? What if Armadillo is an ordinary user, and Bobcat a large commercial enterprise from which Armadillo wants to purchase goods?

The basis for creating a joint key that both Armadillo and Bobcat both have, but which is computationally infeasible for others to determine, is the key exchange protocol invented by Cocks, Ellis, and Williamson (if one is British) or by Diffie and Hellman (if one is from the United States).

13.4.1. The Key Exchange Algorithm. Armadillo determines a prime number P , a primitive root g for the group of integers mod P and a secret exponent e_A . Armadillo publishes the prime number P and the primitive root g as public information, computes $m_A \equiv g^{e_A} \pmod{P}$, and sends m_A to Bobcat.

Bobcat reads the values of P , g , and m_A , and determines her own secret exponent e_B . She computes $m_B \equiv g^{e_B} \pmod{P}$ and sends that to Armadillo.

Armadillo computes

$$S = (m_B)^{e_A} \equiv (g^{e_B})^{e_A} \equiv g^{e_A e_B} \pmod{P};$$

Bobcat computes

$$S = (m_A)^{e_B} \equiv (g^{e_A})^{e_B} \equiv g^{e_A e_B} \pmod{P};$$

and Armadillo and Bobcat now have a shared secret S .

An outsider who has seen only P , g , m_A , and m_B cannot reproduce the computation of either Armadillo or Bobcat without solving the discrete log problem modulo P to determine one or the other of the secret exponents e_A or e_B . (Or at least it is not known publicly of a way to find e_A or e_B without solving the discrete log problem.)

The CES/DH protocol is often used to exchange a key to be used in a cryptographic setting, hence the term “key exchange”. In fact, a great deal of electronic commerce is done exactly this way; the discrete log is used for two parties to agree on a secret key, and then the key is used in AES.

We remark on good choices for primes P . A *safe prime* is a prime P for which $(P-1)/2$ is also prime. Safe primes have the longest possible cycle compared against the number of bits in the prime.

13.5. The Index Calculus

Solving a discrete logarithm problem modulo a prime P uses the *index calculus* and is related to the sieve methods for factoring. The idea again goes back to Kraitchik but was reinvented in the late 1970s when cryptographic applications made computational number theory suddenly more fashionable.

The classic description of the algorithm is that of Coppersmith, Odlyzko, and Schroepel [COS86], usually referred to as C-O-S; some additional references are by LaMacchia [LO91] and Odlyzko [Od185]. A somewhat intuitive notion of the algorithm is that the integers have a multiplicative basis of the prime numbers; all integers can be generated as products of primes, and if we can determine the appropriate logarithms mod P of those primes, then we can add the logs in the factoring of an integer M to get the discrete log. We illustrate the algorithm with an example, using the C-O-S description. Although there are computationally better methods, they require more mathematical background but don't actually improve on an understanding of how the algorithm works.

13.5.1. Our example. We will choose 1019 as our prime, noting that $(1019 - 1)/2 = 509$ is also a prime, so the cycle of powers would be as long as possible. We note that 2 is a primitive root.

13.5.2. Smooth relations. We compute $H = \lfloor \sqrt{1019} \rfloor + 1 = 32$ and $J = 5 = H^2 - P$. As with sieve methods for factoring, we choose a factor base $Q = \{q_i\}$ of small primes $-1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13$ (including -1 as a “prime” just as with the factoring algorithms).

We now run a double loop on c_1 and c_2 for small values of c_1, c_2 , computing

$$(H + c_1)(H + c_2) \pmod{P}$$

and attempting to factor this over the factor base. Since H is about \sqrt{P} , this product will be about P in size, so these products should be “small” compared to P itself.

For those products that do factor, we have

$$\prod q_i^{e_i} \equiv (H + c_1)(H + c_2) \pmod{P}$$

and thus

$$\sum_i e_i \log q_i - \log(H + c_1) - \log(H + c_2) \equiv 0 \pmod{P - 1}$$

We expand our factor base to include the $H + c_1$ and $H + c_2$, and we add the one inhomogeneous log of which we are sure:

$$\log 2 = 1,$$

because we are using 2 as our primitive root.

13.5.3. Matrix reduction. If we run the double loop on c_1 from -5 to 4 and on c_2 from $c_1 + 1$ to 5 , inclusive, and do the factorings, we the following tableau

-1	2	3	5	7	11	13	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	-1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	1	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	7	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0
1	1	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	1	0
1	2	0	1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0
1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0
1	3	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	-1	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	1	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0
1	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0
0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0
0	1	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	-1	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0
1	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0
0	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	-1	0	0	0	1	0
0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	-1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1	0	0	-1	0	0

The first line below the header is the inhomogeneous $\log 2 = 1$. The second line represents the factoring

$$-1 \cdot 2 \cdot 7 \cdot 13 = -182 \equiv 27 \cdot 31 = (32 - 5)(32 - 1) \pmod{1019}$$

If we want, when doing an example, we can cheat and compute the logs from the primitive root:

$$\begin{aligned}\log(-1) &= 509 \\ \log 2 &= 1 \\ \log 7 &= 363 \\ \log 13 &= 289 \\ \log 27 &= 838 \\ \log 31 &= 324\end{aligned}$$

and we can compute

$$509 + 1 + 363 + 289 - 838 - 324 = 0.$$

We now reduce this matrix over the integers modulo 1018. This is computationally a major difference between factoring and discrete logarithms. In the factoring algorithm, we were only required to consider the parity of the matrix entries and could do mod-2 arithmetic. With discrete logarithms, we need to do arithmetic on multiprecision integers as large as $P - 1$, and the matrix to be reduced will have tens if not hundreds of thousands of rows and columns.

We can do our simple example without such difficulty, though, and we get

-1	2	3	5	7	11	13	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	509
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	958
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	10
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	363
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	756
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	289
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	838
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	365
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	138
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	969
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	324
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	5
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	696
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	49
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	373
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	900
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	701
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

These are the values we obtained from our small-example cheat, so we know we got this matrix reduction correct. Our reduction was almost just Gaussian elimination. We write “almost” because we are doing a reduction modulo a composite integer and don’t want to divide, so instead we apply what is essentially a gcd process. In a real problem, more sophisticated matrix reduction techniques, usually a variant of the Lanczos method, would be used.

13.5.4. Individual logarithms. Having produced the logs for the elements of our (expanded) factor base, the eventual problem would be to compute an individual logarithm. We assume that we have a value b , and that we wish to compute the logarithm x such that $g^x \equiv b \pmod{P}$ in our example, where we chose $g = 2$ as our primitive root. To this end we compute

$$g^{wb} \pmod{P}$$

for some randomly chosen value of w , and we factor this into

$$g^{wb} \equiv \prod q_i^{e_i} u_i^{f_i} \pmod{P}$$

for some “medium-sized” primes u_i . This gives us more values for which to find the logs, just as we expanded the small primes factor base to include the $H + c_j$. We can repeat the above sieving and matrix reduction to find the logs of the u_i , and then the log of b is determined. We have not done this with our example because the integers are so small that “medium-sized” would provide little enlightenment.

13.6. Key Exchange with Elliptic Curves

Note that key exchange as described above is not really a result depending only on the integers modulo P . It is really a result about computations in cyclic groups for which the discrete log problem is hard. As with RSA, compared to other groups that could be used for encryption, it just happens that using the integers mod P is computationally very simple as a baseline for how such an algorithm should work. In balancing the complexity of computations mod P against the difficulty of a mod- P discrete log problem, it's very hard to find another group whose discrete log problem is just as hard but is not more costly to use for key exchange. On the other hand, there is an attack against this version of key exchange that does not work with some of the other groups that could be used (like the group of an elliptic curve).

Key exchange using elliptic curves is entirely analogous to the basic algorithm using a large prime. Armadillo and Bobcat agree upon an elliptic curve \mathcal{E} modulo a large prime P , so that the order of the curve is too difficult to compute, and a base point Q on that curve. Armadillo and Bobcat choose their own secret exponents e_A, e_B as before. Armadillo computes $e_A \cdot Q$ and sends that to Bobcat. Bobcat computes $e_B \cdot Q$ and sends that to Armadillo. They can now both compute $e_A \cdot e_B \cdot Q$ and obtain the same point on the curve, from whose x coordinate a shared secret key can be derived.

A significant feature of elliptic curve groups is that there is no obvious index calculus. The ordinary integers are generated using the primes as a multiplicative basis and the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic. The index calculus works modulo P because the multiplicative generation of residues is still sufficient present mod P that computing the logs of sufficiently many small primes permits computing the logs for the rest of the residues.

This is not the case with elliptic curves. There is no clear analog to the index calculus, because there is no known multiplicative basis for the points on an elliptic curve taken modulo a prime, although Joseph

Silverman proposed an algorithm he referred to as “the Xedni calculus” [Sil00]. The Xedni calculus has not been used effectively, although it remains of some interest.

What is normally used for discrete log computations in elliptic curves is a parallelizable variant of the Pollard rho algorithm.

13.7. Key Exchange in Other Groups

Just as with analogies to RSA for cryptography, there are other groups (besides elliptic curves) that have properties similar to those of the integers modulo a prime, and these groups have been proposed for key exchange algorithms. The class groups of complex quadratic fields are generally nearly-cyclic, and the class group of discriminant N is approximately \sqrt{N} in size. Just as with the integers modulo P , exponentiation in class groups is a straightforward process, and the reduction of forms (or ideals) to reduced forms/ideals is similar to the “wrap” of powers of a primitive root modulo a large prime. An approach entirely similar to the index calculus can be used for these groups, because multiplication of classes is almost the same as multiplication of the lead coefficients of forms (it is when the products that are the lead coefficients are reduced to produce the canonical reduced form of the class that the obscuring of the product takes place).

However, although the cryptographic security of such a mathematical structure might be just as good as that of the integers modulo P , the same problem exists for these groups as for cryptography itself—the computational simplicity of multiplication modulo a prime cannot be compared to the cost of compounding forms and classes, which requires at least a gcd operation with every multiplication.

13.8. How Hard Is the Discrete Logarithm Problem?

Just as with RSA, it is worth taking a look at record achievements in computing discrete logarithms.

The recent records for computing discrete logs modulo primes are shown in Table 13.1.

For discrete logs in elliptic curve groups, there has been a challenge issued by Certicom Corporation. Their Level I challenges involve curves modulo 109-bit and 131-bit primes, and the Level II challenges have primes of 163, 191, 239, and 359 bits. Certicom asserts that all the

Table 13.1. Record discrete log computations modulo primes

Decimals	Bits	Announced	Notes
240	795	2 December 2019	safe prime
232	765	16 June 2016	safe prime
180	596	11 June 2014	safe prime
160	530	5 February 2007	safe prime
130	431	18 June 2005	

Table 13.2. Record discrete log computations in elliptic curves

Bits	Announced
114	June 2020
114	21 August 2017
113	April 2014
112	July 2009

Level II challenges are currently infeasible. Records for computing discrete logs in elliptic curves are shown in Table 13.2.

One can see, in the comparison of record computations, the inherent advantage of elliptic curves. Although the group operations are more complicated than merely multiplying large integers, one can obtain comparable security using elliptic curves with moduli much smaller than with prime moduli.

Elliptic Curve Cryptography

The use of elliptic curves in cryptography was suggested independently at almost the same time in the mid-1980s by Neal Koblitz[Kob87] and Victor Miller[Mil86], and since the introduction of this idea, there has been an explosion in the study of curves.

We review the basic (high-school) algebra defining an elliptic curve \mathcal{E} .

We start with a polynomial equation that is quadratic in Y and cubic in X

$$\mathcal{E} : Y^2 + a_1XY + a_3Y = X^3 + a_2X^2 + a_4X + a_6$$

and, although we will shortly make a change of base field, consider this to be an equation with rational constants a_1, a_3, a_2, a_4, a_6 and rational values of X and Y . The curve \mathcal{E} is the set of rational pairs (X, Y) together with the *point at infinity* \mathcal{O} .

Key to understanding curves is that fact that, since we are considering rational (X, Y) , we are permitted to make rational changes of variable without “really” changing the curve. If we make the change of variable

$$Y' = Y + a_1/2X + a_3/2$$

we obtain

$$\mathcal{E} : (Y')^2 = X^3 + a_2'X^2 + a_4'X + a_6'$$

and then with

$$X' = X + a_2/3$$

we obtain

$$\mathcal{E} : (Y')^2 = (X')^3 + a_4''X' + a_6''.$$

Since these transformations do not affect whether or not solutions are rational numbers, we can take this last,

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 + a_4x + a_6$$

as the canonical definition for an elliptic curve over the rationals.

CAVEAT: We shall have occasion to consider curves over fields other than the rational numbers, namely fields modulo prime integers and finite fields of characteristic 2. Since we will be using large primes P , division by 2 and by 3 in these two transformations do not cause problems, but over fields of characteristic 2, the first of these transformations cannot be done, and we will have a canonical representation

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 + a_3y = x^3 + a_4x + a_6$$

14.0.1. Jacobian Coordinates. We remark that although the high-school algebra seems a little bit more clean when we write the curves using rational numbers, the switch to Jacobian coordinates is almost required when looking at actual computation. The curve over the rational numbers, with solutions x and y rational,

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 + a_4x + a_6,$$

is really the curve

$$\mathcal{E} : (Y/Z^3)^2 = (X/Z^2)^3 + a_4(X/Z^2) + a_6,$$

with solutions X , Y , and Z that are integers. We can clear away the need for denominators by multiplying by Z^6 to get

$$\mathcal{E} : Y^2 = X^3 + a_4XZ^4 + a_6Z^6,$$

in *Jacobian coordinates*. And now all of X, Y, Z are integers, and we know how to compute with integers.

14.1. Elliptic Curve Discrete Logarithms

The potential use of elliptic curves for discrete logarithms, and thus for key exchange, is something of a no-brainer once one thinks to use such things. The order of the group modulo a large prime P is known to be “about” P . The sequence of points Q generated by taking multiples of a particular base point have coordinate values that appear “as random”

as would be needed for cryptographic purposes. And, unlike the groups modulo primes P under multiplication, for which the index calculus method solves the discrete log problem in subexponential time, none of the attacks on elliptic curve discrete logs are better than \sqrt{P} , which means that much smaller P can be used.

The key question would be whether the additional expense of the elliptic curve addition and doubling were worth it. We will look at the cost of the arithmetic in curves in Section 14.3, but the answer in general is an unequivocal “yes”.

14.2. Elliptic Curve Cryptography

The group of points on an elliptic curve would seem to be a perfectly-reasonable set of “random” points, so these would seem to be fruitful mathematical constructs for key exchange. Doing cryptography using elliptic curves requires a little bit more of an explanation.

Armadillo, who wants to communicate securely, chooses an elliptic curve \mathcal{E} , a base point P of large prime order n , and makes those public. Armadillo also chooses a private key d and computes the public key

$$Q = dP.$$

When Bobcat wishes to send a secure message to Armadillo, she knows \mathcal{E} , P , and Q , but not d . The plaintext message m is converted to represent a point M on the curve. Bobcat computes a random k and then computes $R_1 = kP$ and $R_2 = M + kQ$ on the curve and sends those to Armadillo.

Armadillo now computes

$$dR_1 = dkP = kdP = kQ$$

and then uses this to compute

$$R_2 - kQ = M + kQ - kQ = M$$

and thus gets the curve version M of the plaintext m .

In order for Coati, who has intercepted the message, to get to M , she would have to get d from $Q = dP$, or k from kQ , since both P and Q , but neither d nor k , are public. Either of these is the elliptic curve discrete logarithm problem.

14.3. The Cost of Elliptic Curve Operations

The benefit of using elliptic curves instead of arithmetic modulo large primes is that the same level of security can be obtained with smaller numbers on which to perform arithmetic. The down side is that a single group operation on an elliptic curve is much more complicated than just the multiplication modulo P required for RSA. It's worth looking at the group operations to consider what it takes to use elliptic curves for cryptography.

We will illustrate the arithmetic using the Weierstrass form of a curve, which we will take modulo N , and to avoid the problem of inversions modulo N (which would require a gcd operation every time), we will consider the Jacobian version of the curve

$$\mathcal{E} : Y^2 = X^3 + aXZ^4 + bZ^6.$$

and will keep track of triples (X, Y, Z) instead of pairs (X, Y) .

We also remember that squaring an integer is less costly than multiplying two integers together, so we will consider squaring to be different from multiplication.

14.3.0.1. Doubling a Point. If our goal is to double a point $P = (x, y, z)$, using Jacobian coordinates, as described in [HMOV04] and elsewhere, we can compute the triple (x_3, y_3, z_3) with six squarings, four multiplications, and some additions and shifts that are inexpensive by comparison with the squaring and multiplication as shown here.

$P_3 = (x_3, y_3, z_3)$ with

$$\begin{aligned} m_{num} &= 3x_1^2 + az_1^4 \\ x_3 &= m_{num}^2 - 8x_1y_1^2 \\ y_3 &= m_{num}(4x_1y_1^2 - x_3) - 8y_1^4 \\ z_3 &= 2y_1z_1 \end{aligned}$$

done in sequence as

$A = y_1^2$	square
$B = 4x_1A$	multiply, shift
$C = 8A^2$	square, shift
$D = 3x_1^2 + az_1^4$	square, square, square, multiply, add
$x_3 = D^2 - 2B$	square, shift, add
$y_3 = D(B - x_3) - C$	add, multiply
$z_3 = 2y_1z_1$	multiply, shift

We note that some of these computations can be done in parallel; this might not be relevant if done in software, but it is something that could be considered if one were actually building hardware specifically for doing elliptic curve arithmetic.

14.3.1. Left-to-Right “Exponentiation”. A further simplification of the arithmetic in elliptic curve cryptography comes when one looks at the algorithms used for computing $m \cdot Q$ for a multiplier m and a point Q on the curve. We commented in Section 6.4 about exponentiation done by looking at the bits of the exponent. We don’t exponentiate with elliptic curves, but rather compute the point mQ for some multiplier m and a base point Q . The usual right-to-left multiplication is as in the Python code here.

```
# Compute P = m times point Q
# expanding the bits of m right to left.
P = identity
point_to_add_in = Q
while m != 0:
    if m % 2 == 1:
        P = P + point_to_add_in
    m = m // 2
    point_to_add_in = point_to_add_in + point_to_add_in
return P
```

We can, however, get the same result by expanding the bits left to right, as in the code below.

The left to right method is slightly more tedious to get started, since we need a power of two to be able to find the leftmost 1-bit of the exponent. In the right-to-left algorithm, we have to double the point

to be added in for each bit of the exponent, and in the left-to-right algorithm, we double the running return point P . There is no savings there. The savings is that when the bit is a 1, we add in the base point, so if that curve arithmetic is cheaper than a general-purpose point addition, we save time.

```
# Compute P = m times point Q
# expanding the bits of m left to right.
P = identity
poweroftwo = A LARGE POWER OF TWO
while m != 0:
    P = P + P
    if power_of_two <= m:
        P = P + Q
        m = m - power_of_two
    power_of_two = power_of_two // 2
return P
```

Curve arithmetic is inherently expensive, so if we can maintain the same level of security, but choose the base point Q to be a point for which addition is cheap, we get a win in terms of the running time.

14.3.1.1. Adding a Distinguished Point to Any Point. Adding $P_1 = (x_1, y_1, z_1)$ to a distinguished “easy” point $P_2 = (x_2, y_2, 1)$ can be done as follows to produce $P_3 = (x_3, y_3, z_3)$.

$$\begin{aligned} x_3 &= (y_2 z_1^3 - y_1)^2 - (x_2 z_1^2 - x_1)^2 (x_1 + x_2 z_1^2) \\ y_3 &= (y_2 z_1^3 - y_1)(x_1(x_2 z_1^2 - x_1)^2 - x_3) - y_1(x_2 z_1^2 - x_1)^3 \\ z_3 &= (x_2 z_1^2 - x_1) z_1 \end{aligned}$$

As with doubling, these can be sequenced in an efficient way, requiring three squarings, eight multiplications, and some shifts and adds.

$A = z_1^2$	square
$B = z_1 A$	multiply
$C = x_2 A$	multiply
$D = y_2 B$	multiply
$E = C - x_1$	add
$F = D - y_1$	add
$G = E^2$	square
$H = GE$	multiply
$I = x_1 G$	multiply
$x_3 = F^2 - B - 2I$	square, shift, add, add
$y_3 = F(I - x_3) - y_1 H$	add, multiply, multiply, add
$z_3 = z_1 E$	multiply

In the latter case of distinct points P_1 and P_2 , we can compute the triple (x_3, y_3, z_3) with two squarings, twelve multiplications, seven additions, and two shifts as shown in Figure ??, where once again we note that the operations inside each step can be done in parallel.

This is just one example of how the naive presentation of the arithmetic necessary to add or to double points can be broken down. There has been extensive work on how best to perform this arithmetic, because it would be, if done naively, somewhat expensive.

14.4. The NIST Recommendations

Given the extent to which one can play games with the arithmetic needed for public key encryption, it is not surprising that the elliptic curves recommended for use by NIST are curves for which the arithmetic games work well. The NIST FIPS 186-4 (Federal Information Processing Standard), dated July 2013, recommends[NIS13]

In the case of the prime fields, the recommended curves are of the form

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 = x^3 - 3x + b \pmod{P}$$

and random base points are recommended.

Bit Length	Prime Field	Binary Field
161 – 223	$P_{192} = 2^{192} - 2^{64} - 1$	$t^{163} + t^7 + t^6 + t^3 + 1$
224 – 255	$P_{224} = 2^{224} - 2^{96} + 1$	$t^{233} + t^{74} + 1$
246 – 383	$P_{256} = 2^{256} - 2^{224} + 2^{192} + 2^{96} - 1$	$t^{283} + t^{12} + t^7 + t^5 + 1$
384 – 511	$P_{384} = 2^{384} - 2^{128} - 2^{96} + 2^{32} - 1$	$t^{409} + t^{87} + 1$
> 511	$P_{521} = 2^{521} - 1$	$t^{571} + t^{10} + t^5 + t^2 + 1$

In the case of the binary fields, the recommended curves are either of the form

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 + xy = x^3 + x^2 + b$$

for suggested values of b or are *Koblitz curves*

$$\mathcal{E} : y^2 + xy = x^3 + ax^2 + 1$$

with $a = 0$ or 1 .

In all instances, the recommended base points are of a large prime order n and the number of points on the curve is hn , for a cofactor h that is 1, 2, or 4.

The FIPS 186 standard comes complete with the games to be played to enable efficient arithmetic. For example, for the 192-bit prime field, every integer less than P_{192}^2 can be written as

$$A = A_5 \cdot 2^{320} + A_4 \cdot 2^{256} + A_3 \cdot 2^{192} + A_2 \cdot 2^{128} + A_1 \cdot 2^{64} + A_0$$

where each of the A_i is a 64-bit integer. The value

$$B \equiv A \pmod{P_{192}}$$

can be computed as

$$B \equiv T + S_1 + S_2 + S_3 \pmod{P_{192}}$$

where the 192-bit summands are produced by concatenating the A_i appropriately:

$$T = A_2 || A_1 || A_0$$

$$S_1 = A_3 || A_3$$

$$S_2 = A_4 || A_4 || A_0$$

$$S_3 = A_5 || A_5 || A_5$$

The modular reduction has been replaced by bit extraction, concatenation, addition, and perhaps a few subtractions of the modulus.

The arithmetic needed to reduce modulo the other primes is also present in the FIPS, and analogous arithmetic games are presented for working in the binary fields.

14.5. Elliptic Curve Attacks

We have already stated that the index calculus approach does not work in attacking the discrete log problem for elliptic curves, or at least does not work until the Xedni ideas are made effective[JKS⁺00, Sil00].

What, then, are the attacks that are used?

14.6. Pohlig-Hellman Attacks

The most obvious attack on an elliptic curve discrete log problem would be that of Pohlig-Hellman, and the attack is so obvious that one would not choose to use curves susceptible to this attack (unless one were either clueless or aiming intentionally to sabotage the cryptography?).

The best attacks on the discrete log problem (like Pollard rho, to be discussed immediately below), run in time that is \sqrt{k} , where k is the order of the group. Therefore, if the order n of the group of the curve is crumbly, with no large prime factor, then breaking the discrete log problem becomes a matter of determining the appropriate orders modulo the prime factors of the order of the group and then putting the results back together using the Chinese Remainder Theorem.

It is specifically to prevent such an attack that the NIST curves, and any curves chosen by real professionals, would have a large prime factor dividing the order of the group, and a cofactor (referred to as h in the NIST FIPS, and chosen so that $h = 1, 2, 4$) that is as small as possible.

14.7. Pollard Rho Attacks

The Pollard rho attack on discrete log problems is derived from the Pollard rho factoring algorithm. It is a $\mathcal{O}(\sqrt{P})$ algorithm, which is why the index calculus is generally preferred for discrete logs modulo large primes. However, in the absence of an effective index calculus for elliptic curves, the best algorithm for curves is a variant of Pollard's rho.

14.7.1. Pollard rho modulo primes. If we were to follow Pollard's original approach for logs modulo primes [Pol78], we compute sequences of exponents a_i and b_i and use them to compute

$$x_i \equiv q^{a_i} r^{b_i} \pmod{p}.$$

We want the a_i and b_i to provide a more-or-less-random walk through the integers modulo p , and choose

$$\begin{aligned} a_{i+1} &\equiv a_i + 1 \pmod{p-1} && \text{if } 0 < x_i < p/3 \\ &\equiv 2a_i \pmod{p-1} && \text{if } p/3 < x_i < 2p/3 \\ &\equiv a_i \pmod{p-1} && \text{if } 2p/3 < x_i < p \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} b_{i+1} &\equiv b_i \pmod{p-1} && \text{if } 0 < x_i < p/3 \\ &\equiv 2b_i \pmod{p-1} && \text{if } p/3 < x_i < 2p/3 \\ &\equiv b_i + 1 \pmod{p-1} && \text{if } 2p/3 < x_i < p \end{aligned}$$

We can now, using essentially no memory, compute x_i and x_{2i} by stepping one sequence once and the other twice, keeping track of the values of a_i and b_i , and look for a collision

$$x_i = x_{2i}.$$

When we get a collision, we have

$$q^{a_i} r^{b_i} \equiv q^{a_{2i}} r^{b_{2i}} \pmod{p}$$

and thus

$$q^m \equiv q^{a_i - a_{2i}} \equiv r^{b_{2i} - b_i} \equiv r^n \pmod{p}$$

We have q to the m -th power as a power of the primitive root r ; we want q to the first power in terms of r . So we solve using the extended Euclidean algorithm

$$g = \lambda m + \mu(p-1)$$

for λ and μ , and exponentiate both sides:

$$q^g \equiv (q^m)^\lambda \equiv (r^n)^\lambda \equiv r^{gk} \pmod{p}$$

We can divide n by g and try $r^k, r^{2k}, r^{3k}, \dots$ until we hit upon q . Since g should be small, this last step is not difficult.

Let's do an example, with $p = 31$, $r = 3$, and $q = 22$. Just for reference, we'll table the powers of 3.

Power	Value	Power	Value
1	3	16	28
2	9	17	22
3	27	18	4
4	19	19	12
5	26	20	5
6	16	21	15
7	17	22	14
8	20	23	11
9	29	24	2
10	25	25	6
11	13	26	18
12	8	27	23
13	24	28	7
14	10	29	21
15	30	30	1

Now, we'll run the Pollard algorithm:

Subscript	a_i	q^{a_i}	b_i	r^{b_i}	$q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$
1	0	1	0	1	1
2	1	22	0	1	22
2	1	22	0	1	22
4	2	19	1	3	26
3	1	22	1	3	4
6	4	20	4	19	8
4	2	19	1	3	26
8	5	6	5	26	1
5	2	19	2	9	16
10	6	8	6	16	4
6	4	20	4	19	8
12	7	21	7	17	16
7	5	6	4	19	21
14	15	30	14	10	21

We get the collision with $i = 7$, $a_7 = 5$, $a_{14} = 15$, $b_7 = 4$, $b_{14} = 14$. This gives us $m = 5 - 15 \equiv 20 \pmod{30}$ and $n = 14 - 4 \equiv 10 \pmod{30}$, and $22^{20} \equiv 3^{10} \equiv 25 \pmod{31}$. We get $\lambda = 2$ and $g = 10$, and we exponentiate

$$22^{10} \equiv 22^{40} \equiv 3^{20} \pmod{31}$$

We start with $3^2 \equiv 9 \pmod{31}$, because $20/10 = 2$, and then multiply in the 10-th roots of unity modulo 31; these would be $3^3, 3^6, 3^9, \dots, 3^{27}, 3^{30}$.

We get $3^2 \equiv 9 \pmod{31}$, $3^5 \equiv 26 \pmod{31}$, $3^8 \equiv 20 \pmod{31}$, $3^{11} \equiv 13 \pmod{31}$, $3^{14} \equiv 10 \pmod{31}$, $3^{17} \equiv 22 \pmod{31}$, and we are done.

14.7.2. Pollard rho for curves. Given points P and Q on a curve, the basic goal is to find distinct pairs of pairs, (a, b) and (a', b') , such that

$$aP + bQ = a'P + b'Q$$

on the curve. If this can be done, then we know that

$$(a - a')P = (b - b')Q = (b - b')dP$$

where P and Q are public information, but d is the private key. this would mean that

$$(a - a') \equiv (b - b')d \pmod{n}$$

where n is the order of the point P on the curve. Since n is known, we can invert $b - b'$ to get

$$d \equiv (a - a')(b - b')^{-1} \pmod{n}$$

The Pollard rho version of the attack is to choose a randomization function for stepping through the curve. Instead of just stepping once and twice, as in the factoring algorithm, we step forward at different rates (and this can be parallelized quite effectively) until we get the collision that would be expected. When we get the collision, with

$$aP + bQ = a'P + b'Q$$

for $a \neq a'$ and $b \neq b'$, then we will get our solution. This runs, as does Pollard rho for factoring, in time proportional to the square root of the order of the group.

14.7.3. Pollard rho in parallel. The algorithm as presented is a single path through the rho diagram. But we observe that once a collision is found, nothing in the rest of the algorithm that relies on the collision having been found for particular subscripts i and $2i$. We need the triples a_i, b_i , and $q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$, for two subscripts that result in a collision, but there is no use made of the value i .

If we had all the memory in the world, and a fast search tree, we could start a number of parallel steppings from different initial subscripts, store the a_i , b_i , pairs with an index of $q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$, and then search for collisions in the tree.

Better yet, although we would benefit from a search tree, we don't need it if all we want to do is detect the existence of a collision. We do need to store the triples a_i , b_i , and $q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$, but for detecting collisions what we need is a good hash function using $q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$ as input. We are going to be computing in parallel for a very long time and we are only going to get collisions at very rare intervals (there are some collisions that could be useless, for example if we somehow hit upon the same a_i , b_i , values). Storing the triples is a back-end process. Checking for $q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$ collisions happens all the time and needs to be as efficient as possible, and since collisions are rare, checking for the essence of a collision (that it's from identical $q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$ values and not from hash function collisions), we can afford to do a little more searching when we do think we have found something.

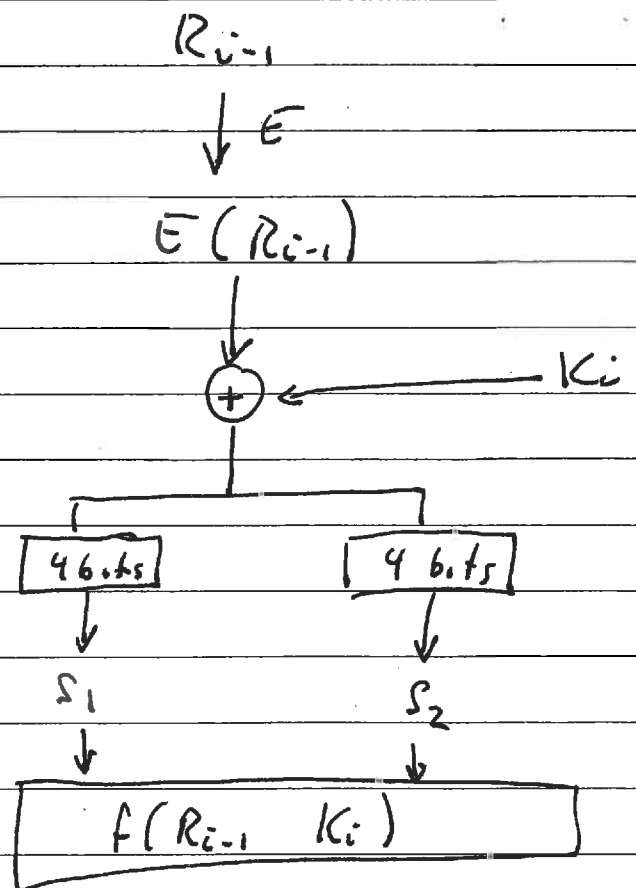
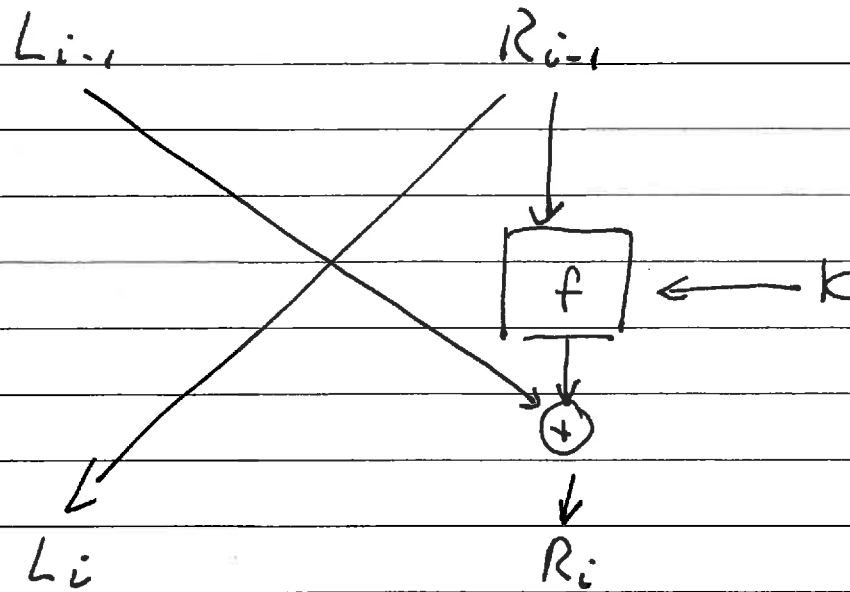
If the cycle is large, as it would be in cryptography for prime moduli or for elliptic curves, the stumbling block here is the need for enormous memory resources. That can be mitigated somewhat by choosing to save not all the steppings, but only those a subset, perhaps only those for which $q^{a_i}r^{b_i}$ is "small". This then becomes a standard computational balancing act:

- How many processors do we have?
- How much memory do we have for storing pairs?
- How fast can we look up values using a hash function?
- How do we balance the rate of stepping with the cost of collision lookup with the cost of doing more computing because we don't have enough memory?

Differential Cryptanalysis

CAVEAT: THIS CHAPTER WILL BE REWRITTEN.

We do differential cryptanalysis on DES, following the text.



First off we are going to define a set of S -boxes.

$$S_1 = \left(\begin{array}{cccccccc} 000 & 001 & 010 & 011 & 100 & 101 & 110 & 111 \\ \hline 101 & 010 & 001 & 110 & 011 & 100 & 111 & 000 \\ 001 & 100 & 110 & 010 & 000 & 111 & 101 & 011 \end{array} \right)$$

$$S_2 = \left(\begin{array}{cccccccc} 000 & 001 & 010 & 011 & 100 & 101 & 110 & 111 \\ \hline 100 & 000 & 110 & 101 & 111 & 001 & 011 & 010 \\ 101 & 011 & 000 & 111 & 110 & 010 & 001 & 100 \end{array} \right)$$

where the top line above the horizontal line is merely the bit pattern that will select that column. (Since the book indexes from 1 but the bit patterns index from zero.)

We use an expander function

$$E(b_1b_2b_3b_4b_5b_6) = E(b_1b_2\mathbf{b_4b_3b_4b_3}b_5b_6) =$$

where we boldface the expansion part.

We know from the diagram of the (simplified) DES structure that

$$R_2 = L_1 \oplus f(R_1, K_2)$$

$$L_3 = R_2$$

$$\begin{aligned} R_4 &= L_3 \oplus f(R_3, K_4) \\ (15.1) \quad &= L_1 \oplus f(R_1, K_2) \oplus f(R_3, K_4) \end{aligned}$$

We take another message where we only change the left bits:

$$L_1^*R_1^* = L_1^*R_1$$

We XOR to get the differences

$$R'_1 = R_1 \oplus R_1^*$$

$$R'_2 = R_2 \oplus R_2^*$$

$$R'_3 = R_3 \oplus R_3^*$$

$$R'_4 = R_4 \oplus R_4^*$$

and now we start doing some cryptanalysis, applying (15.1) both with and without the $*$, using the fact that $R_1 = R_1^*$, that we are XOR-ing bits, and finally that $R_3 = L_4$ and $R_3^* = L_4^*$:

$$\begin{aligned}
 R'_4 &= R_4 \oplus R_4^* \\
 &= R_4 \oplus R_4^* \\
 &= L_1 \oplus f(R_1, K_2) \oplus f(R_3, K_4) \oplus R_4^* \\
 &= L_1 \oplus f(R_1, K_2) \oplus f(R_3, K_4) \oplus L_1^* \oplus f(R_1^*, K_2) \oplus f(R_3^*, K_4) \\
 &= L'_1 \oplus f(R_1, K_2) \oplus f(R_3, K_4) \oplus f(R_1^*, K_2) \oplus f(R_3^*, K_4) \\
 &= L'_1 \oplus f(R_1, K_2) \oplus f(R_3, K_4) \oplus f(R_1, K_2) \oplus f(R_3^*, K_4) \\
 &= L'_1 \oplus f(R_3, K_4) \oplus f(R_3^*, K_4) \\
 &= L'_1 \oplus f(L_4, K_4) \oplus f(L_4^*, K_4)
 \end{aligned}$$

We can then XOR in the first term to put it on the LHS.

$$(15.2) \quad R'_4 \oplus L'_1 = f(L_4, K_4) \oplus f(L_4^*, K_4)$$

We now step back. We are running a chosen plaintext attack. We can choose L_1 , R_1 , L_1^* , and $R_1^* = R_1$. We run the machine, so we get as output L_4 , R_4 , L_4^* , and R_4^* . This means we have everything in (15.2) except K_4 .

We look at what is going into the S boxes.

L_4 expands and then is XOR-ed with K_4 .

Similarly, L_4^* expands and then is XOR-ed with K_4 .

And

$$\begin{aligned}
 E(L_4) \oplus K_4 \oplus E(L_4^*) \oplus K_4^* &= E(L_4) \oplus E(L_4^*) \\
 &= E(L_4 \oplus L_4^*) = E(L'_1)
 \end{aligned}$$

So $E(L'_1)$ is thus the XOR of the inputs to the S boxes, and we know this. And we know the XOR of the outputs, because this is $R'_4 \oplus L'_1$.

Example. Let's assume we have

$$E(L'_1) = 1011|xyzw$$

$$R'_4 \oplus L'_1 = 100|abc$$

We build a table of the input pairs for the left four bits of $E(L'_4)$ that XOR to 1011. We do a lookup in the S_1 box. We know the XOR of both

	A	B	$S_1(A)$	$S_1(B)$	$S_1(A) \oplus S_1(B)$
	0000	1011	101	010	111
	0001	1010	010	110	100*
	0010	1001	001	100	101
	0011	1000	110	001	111
	0100	1111	011	011	000
	0101	1110	100	101	001
	0110	1101	111	111	000
lookups must be 100.	0111	1100	000	000	000
	1000	0011	110	001	111
	1001	0010	010	100	110
	1010	0001	010	110	100*
	1011	0000	101	010	111
	1100	0111	000	000	000
	1101	0110	111	111	000
	1110	0101	100	101	001
	1111	0100	011	011	000

I have starred the only options that could work. Either the left four bit inputs are 0001 and 1010 or 1010 and 0001.

Because we see the L_4 and L_4^* outputs, we know the expander of these outputs, and we know that the left four of the XOR of that expanded pattern XORs with the left four of K_4 and does the lookup in S_1 . So we know a short list of options for the left four bits of K_4 . If we keep trying with different chosen plaintext, we will eventually reduce the list to one possibility.

Example. Let's see how this works and what we have. Assume we have

$$L_1 R_1 = 000111|011011$$

and

$$L_1^* R_1^* = 101110|011011$$

and that we turn the crank on the machine to get

$$L_4 R_4 = 000011|100101$$

and

$$L_4^* R_4^* = 100100|011000$$

where I have put in the stroke for ease of reading the six-bit sequences.

Now, we apply the expander function:

$$E(L_4) = 0000|0011$$

$$E(L_4^*) = 1010|1000$$

so

$$(15.3) \quad E(L_4) \oplus E(L_4^*) = 0000|0011 \oplus 1010|1000 = 1010|1011$$

Now, we have

$$R'_4 = R_4 \oplus R_4^* = 100101 \oplus 011000 = 111101$$

$$L'_1 = L_1 \oplus L_1^* = 000111 \oplus 101110 = 101001$$

and

$$(15.4) \quad 111101 \oplus 101001 = 010|100$$

So, what are the four bit possibilities, that XOR to the 1010 that is the left four bits of (15.3), and that produce outputs from S_1 that XOR to the 010 that is the left three bits of (15.4)?

We build another table. This time we see that (1001, 0011) and (0011, 1001) produce S_1 output that XORs to 010, so these are the possible first four bits of K_4 .

And (1100, 0111) and (0111, 1100) produce S_2 output that XORs to 100, so these are the possible last four bits of K_4 .

If we now do this again, with

$$L_1 R_1 = 010111|011011$$

and

$$L_1^* R_1^* = 101110|011011$$

then we wind up with 0011 or 1000 as the possible first four bits and 0100 or 1011 as the possible last four bits. There is a match only for first four being 0011 and last four being 0100, so our key is

$$K = 00 * 001101$$

because K_4 is the key K shifted with each round, and we only use 8 of the 9 bits.

We now test by brute force for the last bit.

Quantum Cryptography

Shor[BB84, MNM⁺16, Sho94]

Lattice-Based Cryptography

Homomorphic Encryption

Gentry [Gen09]

Exercises

19.1. Chapter 1 Exercises — Introduction

Present an analysis, using reputable sources, on the importance of cryptography regarding the following:

- (1) Mary, Queen of Scots.
- (2) The Washington Naval Treaty.
- (3) The attack on Pearl Harbor.
- (4) The use of Enigma decrypts in the Battle of the Atlantic in World War 2.
- (5) The use of decrypts in the Battle of Midway.
- (6) The Venona decrypts and the trials and execution of Julius and Ethel Rosenberg.
- (7) The work of William and Elizabeth Friedman at Riverbank Laboratories.
- (8) The work of Elizabeth Friedman during the era of Prohibition in the United States.
- (9) The controversy over the publication in the late 1970s by Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman of the RSA encryption method. by
- (10) The CLIPPER chip proposed in the 1990s by the United States government.
- (11) The current controversy over whether individuals can be forced to decrypt information on laptop hard drives when crossing the border into another country.

- (12) The current controversy over whether technology companies should be required to implement a back door in the security and cryptography so that law enforcement can obtain access to information connected to a cell phone.

19.2. Chapter 2 Exercises — Simple Ciphers

- (1) (Programming exercise) From some legitimate source (perhaps Project Gutenberg), obtain text in a language other than English. (French and German are easy to get from Project Gutenberg.) Compute letter frequencies for these other languages, and compare them with English to determine how you would recognize the underlying language of text encrypted with either a substitution or transposition cipher.
- (2) (Programming exercise) Write a program to assist a human observer in decrypting ciphertext from an English document encrypted with a substitution cipher. You may assume that the word boundaries are present in the ciphertext, so you can use established lists of short words as cribs and score longer words based on English letter patterns.
- (3) (Programming exercise) Write a program to do a ciphertext decryption from an English document encrypted with a substitution cipher. Unlike the previous exercise, this will probably require a depth-first search through possible substitutions and a much more sophisticated scoring function to determine the likelihood that the particular assignment of letters at that point in the search tree is correct.

Cipher text for substitution cipher problems (2) and (3).

- mia zhjecad hg s mihjtscp kuqat baouct yumi s behfac gsc baqm scp qasfd muea
- ph chm ba ueeaxqsnasbqa ug dhj nscchm ba eaqsnap dhj nscchm ba xehkhmap
- ug dhj miucf chbhpd nseat ug dhj sea squva med kuttuco s nhjxqa hg nse xsdkacmt
- baghea dhj neumunuwa thkahca dhj tihjqp ysqr s kuqa uc miaue tihat mism ysd yiac dhj neumunuwa miak dhj sea s kuqa sysd scp dhj isva miaue tihat
- ug sm guetm dhj ph chm tjnnaap tfdpuvuco ut chm ghe dhj

- ug dhj maqq mia mejmi dhj ph chm isva mh eakakbae scdmiuco
- mia ljunfatm ysd mh phjbqa dhje khcad ut mh ghqp um uc isqg scp xjm um bsnf uc dhje xhnfam
- pjnm msxa ut qufa mia ghena um ist s quoim tupa scp s psef tupa scp um ihqpt mia jcuvaeta mhoamiaie
- oacaesqqd txasfuco dhj sea chm qasecuco kjni yiac dhje quxt sea khvuco
- arxaeuacna ut thkamiuco dhj phc m oam jcmuq zjtm sgmae dhj caap um
- cavae kutt s ohhp niscna mh tijm jx
- ouva s ksc s guti scp ia yuqq asm ghe s psd masni iuk ihy mh guti scp ia yuqq tum uc s bhsm scp peucf baae sqq psd

19.3. Chapter 3 Exercises — Groups, Rings, Fields

- (1) Consider the group of non-zero integers modulo 11 under multiplication. What is the order of the group?
- (2) Consider the non-zero integers modulo 11 under multiplication. What is the largest order of any element in the group?
- (3) Show that for any prime number p , all multiplicative groups G of order p are isomorphic to one another.
- (4) Show that there are exactly two non-isomorphic groups of order 4, and they are both abelian. One of these is the cyclic group

$$G = \{1, a, a^2, a^3\}$$

for some generator a such that a^4 is the identity, and the other is the abelian *Klein-4 group*

$$H = \{1, a, b, ab\}$$

for which $a^2 = b^2 = (ab)^2$ is the identity.

- (5) Show that any cyclic group is abelian.
- (6)

19.4. Chapter 4 Exercises — Modular Arithmetic

- (1) Find the greatest common divisor of the following pairs of integers, using some version of the Euclidean algorithm.
 - (a) 101 and 73
 - (b) 221 and 85

- (c) 96 and 27
 - (d) 152 and 86
 - (e) 199 and 200
- (2) Find the x and y values of the extended Euclidean algorithm.
- (a) 101 and 73
 - (b) 221 and 85
 - (c) 96 and 27
 - (d) 152 and 86
 - (e) 199 and 200
- (3) Solve for x :
- $$23x \equiv 2 \pmod{37}$$
- (4) Solve for x :
- $$23x \equiv 2 \pmod{111}$$
- (5) Solve for x :
- $$23x \equiv 2 \pmod{343}$$
- (6) Find a primitive root of the primes 941, 1009, and 1013.
- (7) Show that if r is a primitive root modulo an odd prime p , then either r or $r + p$, whichever is odd, is a primitive root of $2p$.
- (8) Show that there exist primitive roots modulo p^e , where p is an odd prime and e is any positive integer exponent.
- (9) Show that the integers modulo $n = pq$, for distinct odd primes p and q , form a ring. Show that this ring is isomorphic to the ring
- $$\{(a^i, b^j)\}$$
- for integers a such that a is of order $p - 1$ modulo p and b such that b is of order $q - 1$ modulo q , where the ring additions and multiplications are done coordinate-wise.
- (10) (Programming exercise) Write a program that is an “endless sieve” to produce prime numbers. Determine a “block size” of size 10^5 , say, with the subscript of the first occurrence of a prime less than the block size dividing a value in the block. This allows your program to determine that an integer in the k -th block of integers k will have the first occurrence of divisibility by a small prime at subscript j in the block. This allows you to sieve endlessly, using memory only equal to the block size, for all primes less than the square of the block size.
- (11) (Programming exercise) Write code to compute the smallest primitive root modulo a prime, using a naive method, or perhaps a naive method with some enhancements.

- (12) (Programming exercise) Write code to do the Euclidean algorithm and the extended Euclidean algorithm.
- (13) (Programming exercise) Write code to solve congruences. Be sure to include the error traps for when a congruence cannot in fact be solved.

19.5. Chapter 5 Exercises — Square Roots and Quadratic Symbols

- (1) Show that any quadratic polynomial $x^2 + ax + b$ has exactly two roots or no roots modulo an odd prime p .
- (2) Modulo a prime p , and given a primitive root r modulo p , we know that $r^{(p-1)/2}$ is -1 and thus is “the other” square root of 1 besides 1 itself. Show that -1 modulo p is itself a square if and only if $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$.
- (3) By looking at the factoring of $(p-1)/2$, explain exactly when -1 is a cube, a fourth power, a fifth power, etc., modulo p .
- (4) (Programming exercise) Write code to compute quadratic symbols. Start with the Legendre symbol and then expand it to the Jacobi symbol.

19.6. Chapter 6 Exercises — Finite Fields of Characteristic 2

In all these exercises, we assume the coefficients are simply 0 and 1.

- (1) List the irreducible polynomials of degree 4.
- (2) List the primitive polynomials of degree 4.
- (3) Give one representation for the finite field $GF(2^5)$.
- (4) Give a normal basis for the finite field $GF(2^5)$.
- (5) There are three polynomials that can be used to generate the finite field $GF(2^4)$. Two of these are primitive: $x^4 + x + 1$ and $y^4 + y^3 + 1$. According to the theorem, these fields are isomorphic. Give the explicit isomorphism mapping one field to the other.
- (6) You are given the sequence of bits

1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0

which you suspect are generated by an LFSR. Find the recurrence.

- 19.7. Chapter 7 Exercises —**
- 19.8. Chapter 8 Exercises —**
- 19.9. Chapter 9 Exercises —**
- 19.10. Chapter 10 Exercises —**
- 19.11. Chapter 11 Exercises —**
- 19.12. Chapter 12 Exercises —**
- 19.13. Chapter 13 Exercises —**
- 19.14. Chapter 14 Exercises —**
- 19.15. Chapter 15 Exercises —**
- 19.16. Chapter 16 Exercises —**
- 19.17. Chapter 17 Exercises —**
- 19.18. Chapter 18 Exercises —**

Continued Fractions

Theorem A.1 (Brillhart's Law).¹ *When in doubt, compute an example.*

¹John Brillhart was one of the author's major mentors. Although John insists he never stated that which we now refer to as his law, we can't believe that we somehow invented this from nothing.

Let's compute an example.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{71}{50} &= 1 + \frac{21}{50} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{\frac{50}{21}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{8}{21}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{\frac{21}{8}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{5}{8}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{\frac{8}{5}}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{3}{5}}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{\frac{5}{3}}}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{2}{3}}}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{\frac{3}{2}}}}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}}}}}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{\frac{1}{1}}}}}}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{2+0}}}}}
 \end{aligned}$$

We define a *continued fraction expansion* of x (cf of x) to be a function

$$(A.1) \quad x = f(a_0, \dots, a_N) = a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1 + \frac{\dots}{+ \frac{1}{a_N}}}.$$

At present x may be any sort of number, although soon only rational numbers and real quadratic irrationals will be considered. We define the values a_i to be the *partial quotients* of the cf. The above cf will be abbreviated as

$$[a_0, \dots, a_N],$$

whose n -th convergent is

$$R_n = [a_0, \dots, a_n], \quad 0 \leq n \leq N.$$

Theorem A.2. *Defining*

$$P_{-1} = 1$$

$$P_0 = a_0$$

$$P_n = a_n \cdot P_{n-1} + P_{n-2}, \quad \text{for } n = 1,$$

and

$$Q_{-1} = 0$$

$$Q_0 = 1$$

$$Q_n = a_n \cdot Q_{n-1} + Q_{n-2}, \quad \text{for } n = 1,$$

then

$$(A.2) \quad R_n = [a_0, \dots, a_n] = P_n/Q_n \text{ for } n = 0.$$

Proof. The theorem holds for $n = 0$. We assume that it holds for $n \leq m$ and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} &= [a_0, \dots, a_m + 1/a_{m+1}] \\ &= \frac{(a_m + 1/a_{m+1}) \cdot P_{m-1} + P_{m-2}}{(a_m + 1/a_{m+1}) \cdot Q_{m-1} + Q_{m-2}} \\ &= \frac{a_{m+1} \cdot (a_m P_{m-1} + P_{m-2}) + P_{m-1}}{a_{m+1} \cdot (a_m Q_{m-1} + Q_{m-2}) + Q_{m-1}} \\ &= \frac{a_{m+1} P_m + P_{m-1}}{a_{m+1} Q_m + Q_{m-1}} \\ &= \frac{P_{m+1}}{Q_{m+1}}, \end{aligned}$$

where the penultimate equality is by induction. □

There are three other formulas of interest, all of which can be proved by direct calculation and/or recursion:

$$(A.3) \quad P_n Q_{n-1} - P_{n-1} Q_n = (-1)^{n-1}, \quad n = 0,$$

$$(A.4) \quad \frac{P_n}{Q_n} - \frac{P_{n-1}}{Q_{n-1}} = \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{Q_n Q_{n-1}}, \quad n = 0,$$

$$(A.5) \quad P_n Q_{n-2} - P_{n-2} Q_n = a_n (-1)^{n-1}, \quad n = 1.$$

We now restrict ourselves to the case when each a_i , $i = 1$, is positive and integral. These are called *simple* continued fractions (scf's). In this case any finite scf represents a rational number x . Before proving the converse, we define the

Continued Fraction Algorithm. Define a_i , X_i , and Z_i by

$$(A.6) \quad \begin{aligned} x &= a_0 + Z_0, \text{ chosen so that } 0 \leq Z_0 < 1, \\ X_i &= 1/Z_{i-1} = a_i + Z_i, \quad i = 1, \quad 0 \leq Z_i < 1. \end{aligned}$$

The algorithm continues as long as $Z_i \neq 0$. The (not necessarily integral) values X_i are the *i-th complete quotients* in the cf expansion, that is,

$$x = [a_0, \dots, X_i].$$

Theorem A.3. *Any rational number x has a representation as a finite simple continued fraction.*

Proof. We will not prove this. The proof is straightforward; indeed it is a rephrasing of the usual algorithm for computing the greatest common divisor of the numerator and denominator of the rational number x . \square

Example A.4. Let $x = 267/111$. Then computing in order a_0 , Z_0 , X_1 , a_1 , Z_1 , \dots , and then P_i and Q_i afterwards, we have

i	a_i	P_i	Q_i	Z_i	X_i$	|P_i \cdot 111 - Q_i \cdot 267|$
-1		1	0			111
0	2	2	1	45/111		45
1	2	5	2	21/45	111/45	21
2	2	12	5	3/21	45/21	3
3	7	89	37	0	21/3	0

We now have one more major list of facts.

Theorem A.5. *Let $x = [a_0, \dots, a_N]$ be a finite scf. Then*

- a) $R_{2n} < R_{2n+2}$ and $R_{2n-1} > R_{2n+1}$ for all $n = 0$.
- b) $R_{2n} < R_{2i+1}$ for all $n, i = 0$.
- c) $R_{2n} < x$ and $R_{2n-1} > x$ for all convergents except the last.
- d) $Q_n > Q_{n-1}$ for all $n > 1$
- e) $\gcd(P_n, Q_n) = 1$ for all n .

Proof. a) Looking at equation A.5, and remembering that the a_i and Q_i are all positive, we see that the right-hand side of A.5 is positive or negative according as n is even or odd.

b) In A.4, it is clear that $R_{2n} < R_{2n+1}$ for all n . If $R_{2n} > R_{2i+1}$ were to hold for some $n < i$, then $R_{2i} > R_{2i+1}$ would hold since by part a R_{2n} is an increasing sequence. Similarly, if $R_{2n} > R_{2i+1}$ were to hold for some $n > i$, then $R_{2n} > R_{2n+1}$ would hold since the R_{2n+1} are decreasing. These are both contradictions.

c) This is obvious. x has some value, which is larger than the even convergents and smaller than the odd ones, except for the equality which holds for the last.

d) This is evident from the defining equations of Theorem A.3 and the new assumption that the a_i are positive.

e) In equation A.3, the \gcd of P_n and Q_n must divide either -1 or $+1$ and hence must be 1. \square

We now pass from finite scf's to infinite ones.

Theorem A.6. *If a_0 is an integer and a_1, \dots, a_n, \dots is any sequence of positive integers, then*

$$x = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} [a_0, \dots, a_n]$$

exists, and is greater than any even convergent and smaller than any odd convergent.

Proof. The even convergents are increasing and the odd convergents are decreasing, so if the limit exists the rest must be true. But by equation A.4 and Theorem A.5 we have

$$|R_{n+1} - R_n| = \frac{1}{Q_n Q_{n+1}} < \frac{1}{Q_{n+2}^2}.$$

The right hand side goes to 0 as $n \rightarrow \infty$, so the limit does exist. \square

From this point on, only ultimately *periodic* simple continued fractions are considered, that is, scf's for which $a_i = a_{i+J}$ for all $i = I$ and

some fixed J . We write this as

$$[a_0, \dots, a_{I-1}, *a_I, \dots, *a_{I+J-1}],$$

with the $*$ indicating the period. We can now, at last, prove one of the main theorems and return to the discussion of quadratic forms.

Theorem A.7.

- a) *If ω is an irrational root of a quadratic equation with integer coefficients, then the scf for ω is periodic.*
- b) *If an scf is periodic, then its value is an irrational root of a quadratic equation with integer coefficients.*

Proof. a) Let ω be the root of

$$a\omega^2 + b\omega + c = 0,$$

where without loss of generality we have $a > 0$. Writing $D = b^2 - 4ac$, we can see that $Z_1 = (-B + \sqrt{D})/(2A)$ with $A > 0$, $0 < B < \sqrt{D}$, and $B^2 - D = 4AC$ for a positive integer C . From there it is clear that all of the Z_i are of this form. But this limits the values of B to a finite list, and consequently there are only finitely many values Z_i which occur. Clearly, then, the cf is periodic since the choice of Z_{i+1} from Z_i is unique.

b) Let $\omega = [a_0, \dots, a_{I-1}, *a_I, \dots, *a_{I+J-1}]$. Then, in the notation of equation A.6, X_I is the value of the purely periodic part. If P'/Q' and P''/Q'' are the last two convergents of $[a_I, \dots, a_{I+J-1}]$, then

$$X_I = [*a_I, \dots, *a_{I+J-1}, X_I]$$

so that

$$X_I = \frac{P'X_I + P''}{Q'X_I + Q''}.$$

(The left-hand X_I is the value of the periodic scf; the right-hand X_I are from applying the defining recursions of the P and Q convergents.) Thus, X_I is a quadratic irrational, satisfying an equation with integer coefficients. Now, we can also write

$$x = \frac{P_{I-1}X_I + P_{I-2}}{Q_{I-1}X_I + Q_{I-2}},$$

and hence x is a quadratic irrational, satisfying an equation which can be seen to have integer coefficients. \square

Let $D = 41$. The cf expansion of $(-1 + \sqrt{41})/2$ is

i	a_i	P_i	Q_i	Z_i	X_i
-1		1	0		
0	2	2	1	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/2$	
1	1	3	1	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/8$
2	2	8	3	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/4$
3	2	19	7	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/4$
4	1	27	10	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/8$
5	5	154	57	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/2$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/2$
6	1	181	67	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/8$
7	2	516	191	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/4$
8	2	1213	449	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/4$
9	1	1729	640	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/8$
10	5	9858	3649	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/2$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/2$

The cycle is completed, and the cf is $[2, *1, 2, 2, 1, *5]$.

Binary Quadratic Forms and Quadratic Number Fields

An introduction to binary quadratic forms and their relationship to quadratic number fields.

B.1. Forms in general

We consider here the *binary quadratic forms* in two variables

$$f(x, y) = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$$

of *discriminant* $b^2 - 4ac = \Delta$.¹ The form can be written more simply as $f = (a, b, c)$. It is often sufficient to write $(a, b, *)$ or $(a, *, *)$ if the second or second and third coefficients are irrelevant or unknown or are easily computed by the discriminant formula. Note that $\Delta \equiv 1$ or $\Delta \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ is necessary and that $b \equiv \Delta \pmod{2}$. We generally also assume that we are dealing with *primitive* forms, for which $\gcd(a, b, c) = 1$.

A form $f(x, y)$ *represents* an integer m , positive, negative, or zero, if there exist integers x_0, y_0 such that

$$ax_0^2 + bx_0y_0 + cy_0^2 = m.$$

¹In this work it will almost always be the case that constants and variables are rational integers. Exceptions to this general restriction should be obvious.

The representation is *primitive* if $\gcd(x_0, y_0) = 1$.

We also note that if we have

$$m = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2,$$

then we may complete the square to obtain

$$4am = (2ax + by)^2 - \Delta y^2.$$

Note also that if the discriminant is even then we don't have to multiply by 4. Since we have

$$b^2 - 4ac = \Delta$$

we know that b is odd exactly when Δ is odd and even exactly when Δ is even. In the case of even discriminant, we have a simplified version of the completed square

$$am = (ax + (b/2)y)^2 - (\Delta/4)y^2.$$

In general, these little factors of 2 and 4 will get in the way and be a little tedious to deal with.

Given some form f , consider the effect of the transformation

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha x' + \beta y' \\ y &= \gamma x' + \delta y' \end{aligned} \tag{B.1}$$

where α, β, γ , and δ are integers with $\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma \neq 0$. The form $f(x, y) = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$ is transformed into

$$f'(x', y') = a'x'^2 + b'x'y' + c'y'^2,$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} a' &= a\alpha^2 + b\alpha\gamma + c\gamma^2 \\ b' &= b(\alpha\delta + \beta\gamma) + 2(a\alpha\beta + c\gamma\delta) \\ c' &= a\beta^2 + b\beta\delta + c\delta^2. \end{aligned} \tag{B.2}$$

and

$$\Delta' = b'^2 - 4a'c' = (\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma)^2\Delta.$$

We observe that $\Delta = \Delta'$ if and only if $\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma$ is ± 1 .

A form

$$f'(x', y') = (a', b', c')$$

is defined to be *equivalent* to a form

$$f(x, y) = (a, b, c)$$

if and only if f' can be obtained from f by a transformation of the form (??) for which $\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma = +1$, and we write $f \sim f'$. Note the sign

restriction. We define here what is more precisely known as *proper equivalence*; forms obtained by transformations of determinant -1 are *improperly equivalent*. Since we will only rarely use the notion of improper equivalence, the word “proper” will not be used unless absolutely necessary. This is a true equivalence relation. To prove reflexivity, let $\alpha = \delta = 1$ and $\beta = \gamma = 0$. For symmetry, if

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \delta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$$

takes f to f' , then

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \delta & -\beta \\ -\gamma & \alpha \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

takes f' to f . And if

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \epsilon & \eta \\ \zeta & \theta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x'' \\ y'' \end{pmatrix}$$

then takes f' to $f''(x'', y'')$, then

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \delta \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \epsilon & \eta \\ \zeta & \theta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha\epsilon + \beta\zeta & \alpha\eta + \beta\theta \\ \gamma\epsilon + \delta\zeta & \gamma\eta + \delta\theta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x'' \\ y'' \end{pmatrix}$$

takes f to f'' , giving transitivity.

It is important to point out the following inconvenience: if the transformation matrix M takes f to f' and the matrix M' takes f' to f'' , which we can write as

$$f \xrightarrow{M} f' \xrightarrow{M'} f'',$$

then the change of variables is done by the inverse:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x'' \\ y'' \end{pmatrix} = (M \cdot M')^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}.$$

For convenience in correlating with the more general definitions of quadratic forms, we present the matrix formulation of binary quadratic forms:

$$f(x, y) = (x \ y) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}.$$

Form equivalence is then matrix equivalence of the coefficient matrices, with

$$\begin{pmatrix} a' & b'/2 \\ b'/2 & c' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \gamma \\ \beta & \delta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \delta \end{pmatrix}$$

The matrices involved in form equivalence are precisely the elements of the *classical modular group* Γ of 2×2 matrices with integer coefficients and determinant $+1$. Γ can be constructed as the free product on two generators

$$S = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

for which

$$S^n = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

and

$$T = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

for which $T^2 = -I$.

We note that the equivalence under S^n is

$$(a, b, c) \stackrel{S^n}{\sim} (a, b + 2an, an^2 + bn + c)$$

and that the equivalence under T is

$$(a, b, c) \stackrel{T}{\sim} (c, -b, a)$$

If $\Delta < 0$, then since $b^2 - 4ac = \Delta$, a and c must have the same sign. Further, the completed square formula (??) shows that any integer m represented by f has the same sign as a (and c). We therefore call forms of discriminant $\Delta < 0$ *definite* forms, and we choose to work only with the definite forms for which a and c are positive. These are the *positive definite* forms. If $\Delta > 0$, then a and c can be of opposite sign, and both positive and negative integers m can be represented. These are, therefore, called *indefinite* forms.

A form (k, kn, c) we will call *ambiguous*, and the class of such a form an *ambiguous class*.² Such forms certainly exist for the odd k which divide Δ , as is easily seen. For even k not prime to Δ , existence is only slightly more tedious to prove. We will also refer to the forms (a, b, a) as ambiguous, since the equivalence class to which they belong contains an ambiguous form: $b^2 - 4a^2 = \Delta$ means that $(b+2a)(b-2a) =$

² Gauss, writing in Latin, used the word *anceps*, meaning either “two-headed” or “ambiguous,” and with deliberate reference to the Roman god Janus. French translations have usually favored the word *ambigu*, but in German both *ambige* and *zweiseitig* (“two-sided”) have been used.

Δ . So

$$(a, b, a) \sim (a, b + 2a, b + 2a) \sim (b + 2a, -b - 2a, a) \sim (b + 2a, b + 2a, a).$$

and thus

$$(a, b, a) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}} (b + 2a, b + 2a, a).$$

The ambiguous forms and their classes will in later chapters be seen to be quite valuable. This is what we are going to be using in some factoring algorithms.

B.2. Definite forms, of negative discriminant

First to be considered are positive definite forms, that is, forms with negative discriminants $\Delta = -D$. The primary goal here is to determine a canonical representative, called the reduced form, for each equivalence class of forms of negative discriminant.

We define $f = (a, b, c)$ to be *reduced* if

$$(B.3) \quad |b| \leq a \leq c.$$

Lemma B.1. *If $f = (a, b, c)$ is a reduced form of discriminant $-D$, then $|b| \leq \sqrt{D/3}$.*

Proof. $4b^2 \leq 4ac = b^2 + D$, so $3b^2 \leq D$. \square

Theorem B.2. *The number of reduced forms of a fixed discriminant $-D$ is finite.*

Proof. There are only finitely many candidates for reduced forms since by Lemma B.1 the set of possible b 's is finite, and each such b determines a finite set of factorings of $b^2 + D$ into $4ac$. \square

Theorem B.3. *Every form f of discriminant $-D$ is equivalent to a reduced form of the same discriminant.*

Proof. We give the standard reduction algorithm. Let (a, b, c) be a form of discriminant $-D$. If this form is not reduced, an integer δ can be chosen such that $|-b + 2c\delta| \leq |c|$. Then

$$(a, b, c) \sim (c, -b + 2c\delta, a - b\delta + c\delta^2) = (a', b', c').$$

We now have $|b'| \leq a'$. If $a' \leq c'$, we are done. If not, we repeat the process. Since we only continue the reduction when $c' < a' = c$, and

since these are positive integers, the process must terminate, yielding a reduced form. \square

Remark B.4.

- a) The matrix for the reduction transformation is important:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & \delta \end{pmatrix}$$

gives

$$(B.4) \quad (a, b, c) \sim (c, -b + 2c\delta, a - b\delta + c\delta^2).$$

In practice, c' is usually computed from the discriminant formula as $(b'^2 + D)/(4a')$.

- b) The standard reduction algorithm can be considered as a single reduction transformation. It is not the most efficient method for reduction, however. If a is less than c , but b is too large for a reduced form, the initial reduction transformation will be to transform the form (a, b, c) to the equivalent form $(c, -b, a)$ ($\delta = 0$) before applying a transformation that reduces the magnitude of b . For hand calculation, then, in this case, the reduction step $(a, b, c) \sim (a, b + 2a\beta, a\beta^2 + b\beta + c)$ should be applied with β chosen so as to make $b + 2a\beta$ smaller in magnitude than a . This is the reduction matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \beta \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

- c) From a computational point of view, the similarity between reduction of forms and a greatest common divisor operation should be obvious.

Example B.5. Beginning with the form $(37, 42, 19)$ of discriminant -1048 , we can reduce in any of several ways, including

$$\begin{aligned} (37, 42, 19) & \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}} (37, -32, 14) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}} \\ & (14, 32, 37) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}} (14, 4, 19) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$(37, 42, 19) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow (19, -4, 14) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow (14, 4, 19)$$

The following theorem shows that the reduced form that is obtained does not depend on the path by which reduction takes place.

Theorem B.6. *With the exceptions of*

$$(a, b, a) \sim (a, -b, a)$$

and

$$(a, a, c) \sim (a, -a, c),$$

no distinct reduced forms are equivalent.

Remark B.7. The form $(a, 0, a)$ is equivalent to itself under the transformations $\pm T$ and the form (a, a, a) is equivalent to itself under $\pm P$ and $\pm P^2$, where

$$P = TS = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

These nontrivial self-equivalences of a form are called *automorphs* of the form.

The discriminants in question are either $-3a^2$ or $-4a^2$, and these actually correspond to the existence of nontrivial roots of unity

$$i = \sqrt{-1}$$

and

$$\frac{\pm 1 + \sqrt{-3}}{2}$$

The above argument, carefully studied, shows that no other reduced forms possess automorphs. Automorphs can be closely studied with regard to indefinite forms since for those forms there are nontrivial automorphs.

In either of the two exceptional cases above, the equivalence class representative is chosen so as to have a nonnegative center coefficient. With this choice the following major theorems are clear.

Theorem B.8. *Every form of discriminant $-D < 0$ is equivalent to a unique [given the above convention] reduced form.*

Theorem B.9. *The number of equivalence classes for a given discriminant is finite.*

We next define the reduced form $(1, 1, \frac{D-1}{4})$ or $(1, 0, \frac{D}{4})$, depending on the parity of D , to be the *principal form*, and the class of the principal form to be the *principal class*. (Remember that all discriminants $-D$ must be congruent to either 0 or to 1 modulo 4.)

We finish with a method for generating reduced forms for a given discriminant. This is probably the simplest for hand calculation for small discriminants. Given a discriminant $\Delta = -D$, we know that b is bounded by $\sqrt{D/3}$. Enumerating the values $(b^2 + D)/4 = ac$ and factoring them into potential a and c , we keep those forms that are reduced and primitive and discard the rest. For example, for $D = 191$, we get a bound of 7 for b and can produce the following tableau.

$|b|$	ac	Primitive Reduced forms
1	48	$(1, 1, 48) (2, \pm 1, 24) (3, \pm 1, 16) (4, \pm 1, 12) (6, \pm 1, 8)$
3	50	$(5, \pm 3, 10)$
5	54	$(6, \pm 5, 9)$
7	60	none

The above technique enumerates the reduced classes for a given discriminant exhaustively, but enumerates them in middle-coefficient order.

The next two lemmas help to enumerate the ambiguous forms for a given discriminant. The first shows that a class of forms that includes a form whose lead coefficient is a factor d of D also contains a form whose lead coefficient is the cofactor D/d .

Lemma B.10. *Let $\Delta = -D = -MN < 0$ be a discriminant such that $M < N$. Then if $(M + N)/4$ is an integer, the forms of discriminant Δ*

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(M, M, \frac{M+N}{4} \right), \\ & \left(\frac{M+N}{4}, \frac{N-M}{2}, \frac{M+N}{4} \right), \\ & \left(N, N, \frac{M+N}{4} \right) \end{aligned}$$

are all equivalent. There is thus one ambiguous class for each factoring of D into two factors.

Lemma B.11. *Let $\Delta = -D = -MN < 0$ be an odd discriminant such that $M < N$.*

a) *If $M < \sqrt{D/3}$, then the first form in Lemma B.10 is reduced.*

b) If $\sqrt{D/3} < M$, then the second form in Lemma B.10 is reduced.

Lemma B.12. *Let $\Delta = -D$ be an even discriminant. We have primitive ambiguous forms*

- a) *If $D = 4MN$ with $MN \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$,*
 $(M, 0, N),$
 $(2M, 2M, \frac{N+1}{2});$
- b) *If $D = 8MN$ with MN odd, $(2M, 0, N);$*
- c) *If $D = 16MN$ with MN odd, $(4M, 0, N);$*
- d) *If $D = 2^{i+5}MN$ with MN odd and $i \geq 0$,*
 $(4M, 4M, 2^{i+1}N + 1),$
 $(2^{i+3}M, 0, N),$
 $(2^{i+3}M, 2^{i+3}M, 2^{i+1} + N).$

These forms will be reduced for N sufficiently large.

Table B.1. Examples

Δ	h	Reduced Form Representatives of Classes
-3	1	(1, 1, 1)
-7	1	(1, 1, 2)
-11	1	(1, 1, 3)
-15	2	(1, 1, 4), (2, 1, 2)
-19	1	(1, 1, 5)
-23	3	(1, 1, 6), (2, ± 1 , 3)
-27	1	(1, 1, 7)
-31	3	(1, 1, 8), (2, ± 1 , 4)
-35	2	(1, 1, 9), (3, 1, 3)
-39	4	(1, 1, 10), (2, ± 1 , 5), (3, 3, 4)
-43	1	(1, 1, 11)
-47	5	(1, 1, 12), (2, ± 1 , 6), (3, ± 1 , 4)
-51	2	(1, 1, 13), (3, 3, 5)
-55	4	(1, 1, 14), (2, ± 1 , 7), (4, 3, 4)
-59	3	(1, 1, 15), (3, ± 1 , 5)
-63	4	(1, 1, 16), (2, ± 1 , 8), (4, 1, 4)
-67	1	(1, 1, 17)
-71	7	(1, 1, 18), (2, ± 1 , 9), (3, ± 1 , 6), (4, ± 3 , 5)
-75	2	(1, 1, 19), (3, 3, 7)
-79	5	(1, 1, 20), (2, ± 1 , 10), (4, ± 1 , 5)
-83	3	(1, 1, 21), (3, ± 1 , 7)
-87	6	(1, 1, 22), (2, ± 1 , 11), (3, 3, 8), (4, ± 3 , 6)
-91	2	(1, 1, 23), (5, 3, 5)
-95	8	(1, 1, 24), (2, ± 1 , 12), (3, ± 1 , 8), (4, ± 1 , 6), (5, 5, 6)
-99	2	(1, 1, 25), (5, 1, 5)
-103	5	(1, 1, 26), (2, ± 1 , 13), (4, ± 3 , 7)
-107	3	(1, 1, 27), (3, ± 1 , 9)
-111	8	(1, 1, 28), (2, ± 1 , 14), (3, 3, 10), (4, ± 1 , 7), (5, ± 3 , 6)
-115	2	(1, 1, 29), (5, 5, 7)
-119	10	(1, 1, 30), (2, ± 1 , 15), (3, ± 1 , 10), (4, ± 3 , 8), (5, ± 1 , 6), (6, 5, 6)
-123	2	(1, 1, 31), (3, 3, 11)
-127	5	(1, 1, 32), (2, ± 1 , 16), (4, ± 1 , 8)
-131	5	(1, 1, 33), (3, ± 1 , 11), (5, ± 3 , 7)
-135	6	(1, 1, 34), (2, ± 1 , 17), (4, ± 1 , 9), (5, 5, 8)
-139	3	(1, 1, 35), (5, ± 1 , 7)
-143	10	(1, 1, 36), (2, ± 1 , 18), (3, ± 1 , 12), (4, ± 1 , 9), (6, 1, 6), (6, ± 5 , 7)
-147	2	(1, 1, 37), (3, 3, 13)
-151	7	(1, 1, 38), (2, ± 1 , 19), (4, ± 1 , 10), (5, ± 1 , 8)
-155	4	(1, 1, 39), (3, ± 1 , 13), (5, 5, 9)
-159	10	(1, 1, 40), (2, ± 1 , 20), (3, 3, 14), (4, ± 1 , 10), (5, ± 1 , 8), (6, ± 3 , 7)
-163	1	(1, 1, 41)
-167	11	(1, 1, 42), (2, ± 1 , 21), (3, ± 1 , 14), (4, ± 3 , 11), (6, ± 1 , 7), (6, ± 5 , 8)
-171	4	(1, 1, 43), (5, ± 3 , 9), (7, 5, 7)
-175	6	(1, 1, 44), (2, ± 1 , 22), (4, ± 1 , 11), (7, 7, 8)
-179	5	(1, 1, 45), (3, ± 1 , 15), (5, ± 1 , 9)

Δ	h	Reduced Form Representatives of Classes
-183	8	(1, 1, 46), (2, ± 1 , 23), (3, 3, 16), (4, ± 3 , 12), (6, ± 3 , 8)
-187	2	(1, 1, 47), (7, 3, 7)
-191	13	(1, 1, 48), (2, ± 1 , 24), (3, ± 1 , 16), (4, ± 1 , 12), (5, ± 3 , 10), (6, ± 1 , 8), (6, ± 5 , 9)
-195	4	(1, 1, 49), (3, 3, 17), (5, 5, 11), (7, 1, 7)
-199	9	(1, 1, 50), (2, ± 1 , 25), (4, ± 3 , 13), (5, ± 1 , 10), (7, ± 5 , 8)
-4	1	(1, 0, 1)
-8	1	(1, 0, 2)
-12	1	(1, 0, 3)
-16	1	(1, 0, 4)
-20	2	(1, 0, 5), (2, 2, 3)
-24	2	(1, 0, 6), (2, 0, 3)
-28	1	(1, 0, 7)
-32	2	(1, 0, 8), (3, 2, 3)
-36	2	(1, 0, 9), (2, 2, 5)
-40	2	(1, 0, 10), (2, 0, 5)
-44	3	(1, 0, 11), (3, ± 2 , 4)
-48	2	(1, 0, 12), (3, 0, 4)
-52	2	(1, 0, 13), (2, 2, 7)
-56	4	(1, 0, 14), (2, 0, 7), (3, ± 2 , 5)
-60	2	(1, 0, 15), (3, 0, 5)
-64	2	(1, 0, 16), (4, 4, 5)
-68	4	(1, 0, 17), (2, 2, 9), (3, ± 2 , 6)
-72	2	(1, 0, 18), (2, 0, 9)
-76	3	(1, 0, 19), (4, ± 2 , 5)
-80	4	(1, 0, 20), (3, ± 2 , 7), (4, 0, 5)
-84	4	(1, 0, 21), (2, 2, 11), (3, 0, 7), (5, 4, 5)
-88	2	(1, 0, 22), (2, 0, 11)
-92	3	(1, 0, 23), (3, ± 2 , 8)
-96	4	(1, 0, 24), (3, 0, 8), (4, 4, 7), (5, 2, 5)
-100	2	(1, 0, 25), (2, 2, 13)
-104	6	(1, 0, 26), (2, 0, 13), (3, ± 2 , 9), (5, ± 4 , 6)
-108	3	(1, 0, 27), (4, ± 2 , 7)
-112	2	(1, 0, 28), (4, 0, 7)
-116	6	(1, 0, 29), (2, 2, 15), (3, ± 2 , 10), (5, ± 2 , 6)
-120	4	(1, 0, 30), (2, 0, 15), (3, 0, 10), (5, 0, 6)
-124	3	(1, 0, 31), (5, ± 4 , 7)
-128	4	(1, 0, 32), (3, ± 2 , 11), (4, 4, 9)
-132	4	(1, 0, 33), (2, 2, 17), (3, 0, 11), (6, 6, 7)
-136	4	(1, 0, 34), (2, 0, 17), (5, ± 2 , 7)
-140	6	(1, 0, 35), (3, ± 2 , 12), (5, 0, 7), (4, ± 2 , 9)
-144	4	(1, 0, 36), (4, 0, 9), (5, ± 4 , 8)
-148	2	(1, 0, 37), (2, 2, 19)
-152	6	(1, 0, 38), (2, 0, 19), (3, ± 2 , 13), (6, ± 4 , 7)
-156	4	(1, 0, 39), (3, 0, 13), (5, ± 2 , 8)
-160	4	(1, 0, 40), (4, 4, 11), (5, 0, 8), (7, 6, 7)

Δ	h	Reduced Form Representatives of Classes
-164	8	(1, 0, 41), (2, 2, 21), (3, ± 2 , 14), (5, ± 4 , 9), (6, ± 2 , 7)
-168	4	(1, 0, 42), (2, 0, 21), (3, 0, 14), (6, 0, 7)
-172	3	(1, 0, 43), (4, ± 2 , 11)
-176	6	(1, 0, 44), (3, ± 2 , 15), (4, 0, 11), (5, ± 2 , 9)
-180	4	(1, 0, 45), (2, 2, 23), (5, 0, 9), (7, 4, 7)
-184	4	(1, 0, 46), (2, 0, 23), (5, ± 4 , 10)
-188	5	(1, 0, 47), (3, ± 2 , 16), (7, ± 6 , 8)
-192	4	(1, 0, 48), (3, 0, 16), (4, 4, 13), (7, 2, 7)
-196	4	(1, 0, 49), (2, 2, 25), (5, ± 2 , 10)
-200	6	(1, 0, 50), (2, 0, 25), (3, ± 2 , 17), (6, ± 4 , 9)

B.3. Indefinite forms, of positive discriminant

We now consider the indefinite forms, that is, the forms of positive discriminant $\Delta = D > 0$. Our treatment will closely follow that of Mathews [Mat61], our goal again being the determination of canonical forms for the equivalence classes. In the case of negative discriminants, the “reduced” forms are essentially unique in a given equivalence class. For positive discriminants, however, it is not only the case that many reduced forms can lie in the same class, an elegant structure is possessed by the reduced forms—they form cycles. An indefinite form (a, b, c) of discriminant $D > 0$ is called *reduced* if

$$(B.5) \quad \begin{aligned} 0 < b < \sqrt{D} \\ \sqrt{D} - b < 2|a| < \sqrt{D} + b \end{aligned}$$

We make several easy deductions.

Lemma B.13. *If (a, b, c) is reduced, then $\sqrt{D} - b < 2|c| < \sqrt{D} + b$.*

Proof. Since $b^2 - 4ac = D$, we have

$$(\sqrt{D} - b) \cdot (\sqrt{D} + b) = -4ac = (2|a|) \cdot (2|c|).$$

Since $0 < b < \sqrt{D}$, $\sqrt{D} - b < \sqrt{D} + b$. We have the situation $xy = zw$, with $x < z < y$, and it follows that $x < w < y$. \square

Lemma B.14. *The number of reduced forms of a given discriminant is finite.*

Proof. The number of values for b has been limited, so the finite number of reduced forms follows from the finite number of factorings of $b^2 - D$ into $4ac$. \square

Lemma B.15. *Any indefinite form is equivalent to a reduced form of the same discriminant.*

Proof. We give a reduction algorithm. If (a, b, c) is not reduced, we choose δ (which in this case is necessarily unique) such that

$$\sqrt{D} - 2|c| < -b + 2c\delta < \sqrt{D},$$

and we have

$$(a, b, c) \sim (c, -b + 2c\delta, a - b\delta + c\delta^2)$$

If $|a - b\delta + c\delta^2| < |c|$, the process is repeated. As in the reduction of definite forms, the reduction process must be finite, terminating when we get a form (A, B, C) such that $|A| \leq |C|$ and $\sqrt{D} - 2|A| < B < \sqrt{D}$. If this is true, then $\sqrt{D} - B < 2|A|$. Further, since

$$|\sqrt{D} - B| \cdot |\sqrt{D} + B| = 4|A||C|,$$

we must then have $|\sqrt{D} + B| > 2|C|$. We continue the inequality:

$$|\sqrt{D} + B| > 2|C| > 2|A| > \sqrt{D} - B.$$

Looking at the left and right ends of this, we see that B must be positive, so that $0 < B < \sqrt{D}$ and (A, B, C) is reduced. \square

In practice we often start with potential lead coefficients a , determine for a given Δ if forms of that lead coefficient exist, and then reduce the forms. This leads to the following useful theorem.

Theorem B.16. *A reduced form of lead coefficient a and discriminant Δ exists if and only if $|a| < \sqrt{\Delta}$, the congruence $b^2 \equiv \Delta \pmod{2|a|}$ is solvable for some b , $0 \leq b < 2|a|$, and one of the following conditions is met:*

- a) $2|a| < \sqrt{\Delta}$,
- b) $|a| < \sqrt{\Delta} < 2|a|$ and $|a| \leq b < \sqrt{\Delta}$.

*The reduced equivalent form of lead coefficient a is $(a, b + 2|a|\beta, *)$ where β is chosen so that $0 < b + 2|a|\beta < \sqrt{\Delta} < b + 2|a|(\beta + 1)$.*

Proof. If (a, b, c) is reduced, then $0 < b < \sqrt{\Delta}$ and $2|a| < \sqrt{\Delta} + b < 2\sqrt{\Delta}$, so that $|a| < \sqrt{\Delta}$ is necessary, and clearly the quadratic congruence for b must be solvable in order for a form of lead coefficient a and discriminant Δ to exist. If $|a|$ is “small” so that the first case holds, or if $|a|$ is “large” with a “large” solution b so that the second case holds, then the reduction criteria are easily seen to be satisfied with the choice of β indicated. We note that in the second case we must choose $\beta = 0$.

To prove the other direction, we must prove only that if

$$|a| < \sqrt{\Delta} < 2|a|$$

but either $b < |a|$ or $\sqrt{\Delta} < b$, then no equivalent reduced form of lead coefficient a exists. Since such a form must be $(a, b + 2|a|\beta, *)$, and since our preferred choice of β is the only one which will simultaneously satisfy two of the three reduction criteria, we must show only that the third condition $2|a| < \sqrt{\Delta} + b + 2|a|\beta$ fails. This is easy. If $b < |a|$ or $\sqrt{\Delta} < b$ and $\sqrt{\Delta} < 2|a|$, we must have $\beta = 0$ and the third condition fails. \square

Corollary B.17. If a reduced form exists with lead coefficient a , then the center coefficient of the reduced form is b such that

$$b^2 \equiv \Delta \pmod{2|a|}$$

and

$$b < \sqrt{\Delta} < b + 2|a|.$$

We define two reduced forms (a, b, a') and (a', b', c') to be *adjacent* if $b + b' \equiv 0 \pmod{2a'}$. With the help of Theorem B.16, it can be seen that there is a unique reduced form adjacent to the right and to the left of any given reduced form.

Once again, there is a strong computational similarity between the reduction algorithm and the standard algorithm for the greatest common divisor. As will be seen later in this chapter, more than a mere similarity exists. Reduction of definite forms is identical with the continued fraction expansion of a related quadratic irrational, and the continued fraction algorithm applied to a rational number is precisely the Euclidean algorithm.

Lemma B.18. *The set of reduced forms of a given discriminant can be partitioned into cycles of adjacent forms.*

Proof. We begin with any reduced form and proceed to the right through successively adjacent reduced forms. Since the set of reduced forms is finite, the list of successively adjacent forms must return to the original form. If there are no more reduced forms, the process is finished; otherwise, we choose a form not yet used and repeat the process.

Since adjacent forms are equivalent, under the matrix transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & \frac{b+b'}{2a'} \end{pmatrix},$$

and equivalence is transitive, all forms in a given cycle are equivalent to each other. \square

Lemma B.18 is the easy half of the following major theorem. The difficult half of the proof will be presented in Section B.6 so as not to disturb the continuity of the discussion.

Theorem B.19. *Two reduced forms are equivalent if and only if they are in the same cycle.*

We call the form $(a, -b, c)$ the *opposite* of the form (a, b, c) . An ambiguous form is equivalent to its own opposite, since if $b = ka$, the choice $\delta = k$ gives

$$(a, b, c) \sim (c, -b, a) \sim (a, b - 2a\delta, c - b\delta + a\delta^2) = (a, -b, c).$$

We further define forms (a, b, c) and (c, b, a) to be *associated*. We note that opposite forms are improperly equivalent (obtainable one from another by a matrix transformation of determinant -1) under

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and its negative, and associated forms are improperly equivalent under

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and its negative.

We define the *period* of a cycle to be the number of forms in that cycle.

Lemma B.20. *The period of any cycle is an even integer.*

Proof. The first and last coefficients of any reduced form are of opposite sign. We may therefore form pairs of adjacent forms $(a, b, c) \sim (c, b', c')$ in which the coefficient c is negative and a and c' are positive. Because the adjacency is clearly an adjacency of these pairs, it takes an integral number of pairs to form any cycle. \square

Lemma B.21. *If the form f' associate to f is in a different cycle from that of f , then this is true for all forms in both cycles, which we call associated cycles.*

Proof. Cycling forward (to the right) from f , the form adjacent to $f = (a, b, c)$ is (c, b', a') . Cycling backward (to the left) from f' yields $(a', b', c) \sim (c, b, a)$. That is, cycling forward from f we encounter

the associates of the forms encountered when cycling backward from f' . \square

Lemma B.22. *A cycle which contains any ambiguous form contains exactly two and is its own associate. Conversely, a cycle which is its own associate contains exactly two ambiguous forms.*

Proof. If a form f and its associate f' are in the same cycle, then we can cycle forward from f and backward from f' through pairs of associated forms. Since the cycles have finite length, we must eventually arrive at adjacent associated forms $(a', b, a) \sim (a, b, a')$. Since these are adjacent, we have $b + b \equiv 0 \pmod{2a}$; that is, $a|b$, so that (a, b, a') is ambiguous. Similarly, cycling backward from f and forward from f' will produce a different ambiguous form. A self-associate cycle thus contains two ambiguous forms. It cannot contain more since the cycle is complete when the second ambiguous form is found. And it is easy to see that a cycle which contains an ambiguous form must be self-associate since the form (a, ak, c) is the form adjacent to its own associate (c, ak, a) . \square

We call the reduced form $(1, b, c)$ the *principal form* for a given discriminant, and the cycle in which it lies the *principal cycle*.

Examples.

Δ	h	Cycles
5	1	$(1, 1, -1)(-1, 1, 1)$
13	1	$(1, 3, -1)(-1, 3, 1)$
17	1	$(1, 3, -2)(-2, 1, 2)(2, 3, -1)(-1, 3, 2)(2, 1, -2)(-2, 3, 1)$
21	2	$(1, 3, -3)(-3, 3, 1)$ $(-1, 3, 3)(3, 3, -1)$
29	1	$(1, 5, -1)(-1, 5, 1)$
33	2	$(1, 5, -2)(-2, 3, 3)(3, 3, -2)(-2, 5, 1)$ $(-1, 5, 2)(2, 3, -3)(-3, 3, 2)(2, 5, -1)$
37	1	$(1, 5, -3)(-3, 1, 3)(3, 5, -1)(-1, 5, 3)(3, 1, -3)(-3, 5, 1)$
41	1	$(1, 5, -4)(-4, 3, 2)(2, 5, -2)(-2, 3, 4)(4, 5, -1)$ $(-1, 5, 4)(4, 3, -2)(-2, 5, 2)(2, 3, -4)(-4, 5, 1)$
45	2	$(1, 5, -5)(-5, 5, 1)$ $(-1, 5, 5)(5, 5, -1)$
53	1	$(1, 7, -1)(-1, 7, 1)$
57	2	$(1, 7, -2)(-2, 5, 4)(4, 3, -3)(-3, 3, 4)(4, 5, -2)(-2, 7, 1)$ $(-1, 7, 2)(2, 5, -4)(-4, 3, 3)(3, 3, -4)(-4, 5, 2)(2, 7, -1)$
61	1	$(1, 7, -3)(-3, 5, 3)(3, 7, -1)(-1, 7, 3)(3, 5, -3)(-3, 7, 1)$
65	2	$(1, 7, -4)(-4, 1, 4)(4, 7, -1)(-1, 7, 4)(4, 1, -4)(-4, 7, 1)$ $(2, 5, -5)(-5, 5, 2)(2, 7, -2)(-2, 5, 5)(5, 5, -2)(-2, 5, 5)$
69	2	$(1, 7, -5)(-5, 3, 3)(3, 3, -5)(-5, 7, 1)$ $(-1, 7, 5)(5, 3, -3)(-3, 3, 5)(5, 7, -1)$
73	1	$(1, 7, -6)(-6, 5, 2)(2, 7, -3)(-3, 5, 4)(4, 3, -4)(-4, 5, 3)(3, 7, -2)(-2, 5, 6)(6, 7, -1)$ $(-1, 7, 6)(6, 5, -2)(-2, 7, 3)(3, 5, -4)(-4, 3, 4)(4, 5, -3)(-3, 7, 2)(2, 5, -6)(-6, 7, 1)$
77	2	$(1, 7, -7)(-7, 7, 1)$ $(-1, 7, 7)(7, 7, -1)$
85	2	$(1, 9, -1)(-1, 9, 1)$ $(3, 5, -5)(-5, 5, 3)(3, 7, -3)(-3, 5, 5)(5, 5, -3)(-3, 7, 3)$
89	1	$(1, 9, -2)(-2, 7, 5)(5, 3, -4)(-4, 5, 4)(4, 3, -5)(-5, 7, 2)(2, 9, -1)$ $(-1, 9, 2)(2, 7, -5)(-5, 3, 4)(4, 5, -4)(-4, 3, 5)(5, 7, -2)(-2, 9, 1)$
93	2	$(1, 9, -3)(-3, 9, 1)$ $(-1, 9, 3)(3, 9, -1)$
97	1	$(1, 9, -4)(-4, 7, 3)(3, 5, -6)(-6, 7, 2)(2, 9, -2)(-2, 7, 6)(6, 5, -3)(-3, 7, 4)(4, 9, -1)$ $(-1, 9, 4)(4, 7, -3)(-3, 5, 6)(6, 7, -2)(-2, 9, 2)(2, 7, -6)(-6, 5, 3)(3, 7, -4)(-4, 9, 1)$

Δ	h	Cycles
8	1	$(1, 2, -1)(-1, 2, 1)$
12	2	$(1, 2, -2)(-2, 2, 1)$ $(-1, 2, 2)(2, 2, -1)$
20	1	$(1, 4, -1)(-1, 4, 1)$
24	2	$(1, 4, -2)(-2, 4, 1)$ $(-1, 4, 2)(2, 4, -1)$
28	2	$(1, 4, -3)(-3, 2, 2)(2, 2, -3)(-3, 4, 1)$ $(-1, 4, 3)(3, 2, -2)(-2, 2, 3)(3, 4, -1)$
32	2	$(1, 4, -4)(-4, 4, 1)$ $(-1, 4, 4)(4, 4, -1)$
40	2	$(1, 6, -1)(-1, 6, 1)$ $(2, 4, -3)(-3, 2, 3)(3, 4, -2)(-2, 4, 3)(3, 2, -3)(-3, 4, 2)$
44	2	$(1, 6, -2)(-2, 6, 1)$ $(-1, 6, 2)(2, 6, -1)$
48	2	$(1, 6, -3)(-3, 6, 1)$ $(-1, 6, 3)(3, 6, -1)$
52	1	$(1, 6, -4)(-4, 2, 3)(3, 4, -3)(-3, 2, 4)(4, 6, -1)$ $(-1, 6, 4)(4, 2, -3)(-3, 4, 3)(3, 2, -4)(-4, 6, 1)$
56	2	$(1, 6, -5)(-5, 4, 2)(2, 4, -5)(-5, 6, 1)$ $(-1, 6, 5)(5, 4, -2)(-2, 4, 5)(5, 6, -1)$
60	4	$(1, 6, -6)(-6, 6, 1)$ $(-1, 6, 6)(6, 6, -1)$ $(2, 6, -3)(-3, 6, 2)$ $(-2, 6, 3)(3, 6, -2)$
68	1	$(1, 8, -1)(-1, 8, 1)$
72	2	$(1, 8, -2)(-2, 8, 1)$ $(-1, 8, 2)(2, 8, -1)$
76	2	$(1, 8, -3)(-3, 4, 5)(5, 6, -2)(-2, 6, 5)(5, 4, -3)(-3, 8, 1)$ $(-1, 8, 3)(3, 4, -5)(-5, 6, 2)(2, 6, -5)(-5, 4, 3)(3, 8, -1)$
80	2	$(1, 8, -4)(-4, 8, 1)$ $(-1, 8, 4)(4, 8, -1)$
84	2	$(1, 8, -5)(-5, 2, 4)(4, 6, -3)(-3, 6, 4)(4, 2, -5)(-5, 8, 1)$ $(-1, 8, 5)(5, 2, -4)(-4, 6, 3)(3, 6, -4)(-4, 2, 5)(5, 8, -1)$
88	2	$(1, 8, -6)(-6, 4, 3)(3, 8, -2)(-2, 8, 3)(3, 4, -6)(-6, 8, 1)$ $(-1, 8, 6)(6, 4, -3)(-3, 8, 2)(2, 8, -3)(-3, 4, 6)(6, 8, -1)$
92	1	$(1, 8, -7)(-7, 6, 2)(2, 6, -7)(-7, 8, 1)$ $(-1, 8, 7)(7, 6, -2)(-2, 6, 7)(7, 8, -1)$
96	4	$(1, 8, -8)(-8, 8, 1)$ $(-1, 8, 8)(8, 8, -1)$ $(3, 6, -5)(-5, 4, 4)(4, 4, -5)(-5, 6, 3)$ $(-3, 6, 5)(5, 4, -4)(-4, 4, 5)(5, 6, -3)$

B.4. General Examples and Observations

For negative discriminants, reduced forms are, in general, asymmetric since the third coefficient is at least as large as the first. For positive discriminants, this is not true. Indeed, reduced forms occur in groups: for any given lead coefficient a the existence of one reduced form (a, b, c) implies the existence of the reduced forms (a, b, c) , $(-a, b, -c)$, (c, b, a) , and $(-c, b, -a)$. Further, since solutions to $b^2 \equiv D \pmod{a}$ occur in pairs, we also have reduced forms $(a, -b + 2a\sigma, a - b\sigma + c)$, $(-a, -b + 2a\sigma, -a + b\sigma - c)$, $(a - b\sigma + c, -b + 2a\sigma, a)$, and $(-a + b\sigma - c, -b + 2a\sigma, -a)$, where σ is the sign of a . These generally lead to further forms, and so on. The following examples of cycles will illustrate the previous discussion.

For $D = 1173 = 3 \cdot 17 \cdot 23$ there are four cycles:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1, 33, -21) &\sim (-21, 9, 13) \sim (13, 17, -17) \sim (-17, 17, 13) \sim \\
 &\quad (13, 9, -21) \sim (-21, 33, 1) \\
 (-1, 33, 21) &\sim (21, 9, -13) \sim (-13, 17, 17) \sim (17, 17, -13) \sim \\
 &\quad (-13, 9, 21) \sim (21, 33, -1) \\
 (3, 33, -7) &\sim (-7, 23, 23) \sim (23, 23, -7) \sim (-7, 33, 3) \\
 (-3, 33, 7) &\sim (7, 23, -23) \sim (-23, 23, 7) \sim (7, 33, -3)
 \end{aligned}$$

For $D = 1313 = 13 \cdot 101$ there are also four cycles:

$$\begin{aligned}
(1, 35, -22) &\sim (-22, 9, 14) \sim (14, 19, -17) \sim (-17, 15, 16) \sim \\
&(16, 17, -16) \sim (-16, 15, 17) \sim (17, 19, -14) \sim \\
&(-14, 9, 22) \sim (22, 35, -1) \sim (-1, 35, 22) \sim \\
&(22, 9, -14) \sim (-14, 19, 17) \sim (17, 15, -16) \sim \\
&(-16, 17, 16) \sim (16, 15, -17) \sim (-17, 19, 14) \sim \\
&(14, 9, -22) \sim (-22, 35, 1) \\
(13, 13, -22) &\sim (-22, 31, 4) \sim (4, 33, -14) \sim (-14, 23, 14) \sim \\
&(14, 33, -4) \sim (-4, 31, 22) \sim (22, 13, -13) \sim \\
&(-13, 13, 22) \sim (22, 31, -4) \sim (-4, 33, 14) \sim \\
&(14, 23, -14) \sim (-14, 33, 4) \sim (4, 31, -22) \sim \\
&(-22, 13, 13) \\
(7, 23, -28) &\sim (-28, 33, 2) \sim (2, 35, -11) \sim (-11, 31, 8) \sim \\
&(8, 33, -7) \sim (-7, 23, 28) \sim (28, 33, -2) \sim \\
&(-2, 35, 11) \sim (11, 31, -8) \sim (-8, 33, 7) \\
(7, 33, -8) &\sim (-8, 31, 11) \sim (11, 35, -2) \sim (-2, 33, 28) \sim \\
&(28, 23, -7) \sim (-7, 33, 8) \sim (8, 31, -11) \sim \\
&(-11, 35, 2) \sim (2, 33, -28) \sim (-28, 23, 7)
\end{aligned}$$

B.5. Automorphs, Pell's Equation

The equation $x^2 - dy^2 = 1$, with d a fixed integer and x and y assumed to be integer variables, has been called Pell's equation, although this is, in fact, a misattribution due to Euler. We will, in general, refer to the equations $x^2 - \Delta y^2 = \pm 4$ as *Pell's equations*, and the equation with only the minus sign as the *negative Pell equation*; we note that if Δ is a discriminant of binary quadratic forms, then the existence of a solution to the Pell equations implies the existence of a solution to $x^2 - \Delta y^2 = \pm 1$, where the \pm signs correspond. We recall that an automorph of a binary quadratic form is a nontrivial transformation of determinant $+1$ under which the form is equivalent to itself.

Theorem B.23. *If Δ is any discriminant of binary quadratic forms, then there exists a solution (x, y) to the Pell equation*

$$(B.6) \quad x^2 - \Delta y^2 = 4.$$

There is a one-to-one correspondence between automorphs of (definite or indefinite) forms (a, b, c) of discriminant Δ and solutions of the Pell equation B.6.

Proof. We have defined the *principal root* of a form for positive definite forms; for indefinite forms the definition is identical:

$$\omega = \frac{-b + \sqrt{\Delta}}{2a}.$$

Now, if an automorph exists for a reduced form under a transformation, then

$$\omega = \frac{\alpha\omega + \beta}{\gamma\omega + \delta}.$$

This can be rewritten as a quadratic equation in ω :

$$\gamma\omega^2 + \omega(\delta - \alpha) - \beta = 0.$$

But we already have $a\omega^2 + b\omega + c = 0$, and the form (a, b, c) is assumed to be primitive, so we must have $\gamma = ka$, $\delta - \alpha = kb$, and $\beta = -kc$ for k an integer. This gives

$$(\delta - \alpha)^2 + 4\gamma\beta = \Delta k^2.$$

We reduce this to get

$$(\alpha + \delta)^2 - \Delta k^2 = 4.$$

Given any automorph of a reduced form, then, we have a solution of the Pell equation $x^2 - \Delta y^2 = 4$. Given any solution of that equation, conversely, we have integers

$$(B.7) \quad \alpha = (x - by)/2,$$

$$(B.8) \quad \beta = -cy,$$

$$(B.9) \quad \gamma = ay,$$

$$(B.10) \quad \delta = (x + by)/2,$$

and an automorph of the form (a, b, c) . The correspondence between automorphs and solutions is clear; only the existence of solutions is yet in question.

If Δ is a negative discriminant, then the equation is solvable only for $\Delta = -3$ or -4 , and, of course, only for $+1$ on the right-hand side. This case was covered in Section B.2.

It is only necessary, then, to consider positive discriminants Δ . If we begin with the principal form of discriminant Δ and move through the principal cycle, we obtain transformation matrices which produce from

a reduced form the equivalent adjacent reduced form. At some point we finish the cycle and return to the principal form. The product of all the transformation matrices is thus a transformation matrix which takes the principal form to itself. Since it cannot, except in trivial instances, be the identity matrix, it is the matrix of an automorph of the principal form. From this we get a solution to equation B.6, and the theorem is proved. An example is given at the end of this chapter. \square

For the remainder of this chapter, only positive discriminants $\Delta = D$ are considered. Among all the solutions (X, Y) to equation B.6, there exists one for which X and Y are positive and $(X + Y\sqrt{D})/2$ is of least magnitude. We call this the *fundamental solution* of equation B.6, noting that if X' and Y' are positive and (X', Y') is another solution of B.6, then $X < X'$ and $Y < Y'$ must also be true.

Theorem B.24. *All pairs (X_n, Y_n) generated by*

$$(B.11) \quad \frac{(X + Y\sqrt{D})^n}{2^n} = \frac{X_n + Y_n\sqrt{D}}{2}, \quad n = 1$$

are solutions of equation B.6 All solutions of equation B.6 in positive rational integers are given by equation B.11

Proof. That X_n and Y_n are rational integers follows by induction and observations about the parity of X , Y , and D . We then observe that

$$(B.12) \quad \frac{(X - Y\sqrt{D})^n}{2^n} = \frac{X_n - Y_n\sqrt{D}}{2}$$

and thus

$$\frac{X_n^2 - DY_n^2}{4} = \frac{(X^2 - DY^2)^n}{4^n} = 1.$$

This proves the first part. To prove the second part, assume that another solution (T, U) exists. Then there exists an $n = 1$ such that

$$\frac{(X + Y\sqrt{D})^n}{2^n} < \frac{T + U\sqrt{D}}{2} < \frac{(X + Y\sqrt{D})^{n+1}}{2^{n+1}}.$$

We multiply by the (positive) value $(X_n - Y_n\sqrt{D})/2$ and get

$$2 < T' + U'\sqrt{D} < X + Y\sqrt{D},$$

with $2T' = TX_n + UY_n$ and $2U' = TY_n + UX_n$. Again, by parity arguments, T' and U' are integral. Now, since $T' + U'\sqrt{D} > 2$ and $(T' + U'\sqrt{D}) \cdot (T' - U'\sqrt{D}) = 4$, we find $0 < T' - U'\sqrt{D} < 2$, which allows us to see that T' and U' are both positive. This, however, would contradict the fact that $(X + Y\sqrt{D})/2$ was the fundamental solution.

B.6. Continued Fractions and Indefinite Forms

Given a discriminant of binary quadratic forms $D > 0$, we define $\omega = \sqrt{D}/4$, if D is even, and $\omega = (-1 + \sqrt{D})/2$, if D is odd. These are the principal roots of forms $(1, 0, -D/4)$ and $(1, 1, (1-D)/4)$, respectively, which forms we write as $f = (1, b, (b-D)/4)$. Expanding the cf for ω produces $\omega = a_0 + Z_0$, with $0 \leq Z_0 < 1$ and a_0 an integer. Under the transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & a_0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

f becomes $(1, b+2a_0, *)$, where $b+2a_0 < \sqrt{D} < b+2a_0+2$. This form is thus reduced, with principal root Z_0 . At this point, expansion of the cf and cycling through the principal cycle of forms of discriminant D are essentially the same. \square

Let us now consider the equivalences

$$(1, b, (b-D)/4) \sim (1 = c_0, b_0, c_1) \sim (c_1, b_1, c_2) \sim \dots$$

under the action of the transformations $T_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & a_0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $T_i = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & a_i \end{pmatrix}$, $i \geq 1$, respectively.

Then the sequences $Z_i = (-b_i + \sqrt{D})/(2c_i)$ and $X_i = (b_i + \sqrt{D})/(2c_{i+1})$ are clear. We have the following theorem.

Theorem B.25. *If $M = T_0 \dots T_i$ transforms $(1, b, (b-D)/4)$ into (c_i, b_i, c_{i+1}) , then*

$$(2P_i + Q_i)^2 - DQ_i^2 = 4c_{i+1}.$$

Proof. The proof follows from writing

$$\omega = \frac{X_{n+1}P_n + P_{n-1}}{X_{n+1}Q_n + Q_{n-1}}.$$

The rest follows simply by calculation. \square

In the expansion of the cf it may happen that $(1, b, (D-b)/4)$ and $(-1, b, (b-D)/4)$ lie in the same cycle; if this is true, the cycle of forms is twice as long as the period of the cf, with the cf cycle being repeated in the period of forms. If this happens, we choose to call the length of the cf period to be the same as the length as the cycle of forms. (This is the case in our example at the end of this chapter. The cf for $(-5 + \sqrt{41})/2$ has a period of length 10 and not 5.) With this

convention, we obtain two theorems which together give us the precise determination of the solutions to the Pell equations.

Theorem B.26. *If the continued fraction expansion of $\omega = (-1 + \sqrt{D})/2$ (for odd D) or of $\omega = \sqrt{D}/2$ (for even D) is of length n , and if $P = P_{n-1}$ and $Q = Q_{n-1}$ are the penultimate convergents in the first period of the expansion, then $(X, Y) = (2P + Q, Q)$ is the fundamental solution of the Pell equation.*

Proof. Clearly $(2P + Q, Q)$ is a solution, but then $(2P + Q + Q\sqrt{D})/2 = ((X + Y\sqrt{D})/2)^n$ for some n . Then the expansion of the cf for $(2P + Q + Q\sqrt{D})/2$ contains n copies of the cf for the fundamental solution of the Pell equation. But no such repetition can occur, except for the double period that occurs if, as mentioned above, the $(-1, *, **)$ form appears in the principal cycle; however, that would, by Theorem B.25, provide a solution to $x^2 - Dy^2 = -4$. \square

The following theorem can now be proved by carefully combining previous results.

Theorem B.27. *Let $\Delta = D$ be a positive discriminant of quadratic forms. Solutions to the Pell equation*

$$(B.13) \quad x^2 - Dy^2 = -4$$

exist if and only if the reduced forms $(1, b, c)$ and $(-1, b, -c)$ of discriminant D lie in the same cycle. If this is true, then

- a) *the length of the continued fraction expansion of $\omega = (-1 + \sqrt{D})/2$ (for odd D) or of $\omega = \sqrt{D}/2$ (for even D) (which is the length of the cycle of forms) is an even integer $2n$;*
- b) *if $P = P_{n-1}$ and $Q = Q_{n-1}$ are the penultimate convergents in the first half-period of the expansion, then $(X, Y) = (2P + Q, Q)$ is the solution of the negative Pell equation B.13 for which X and Y are positive integers and $(X + Y\sqrt{D})/2$ is of least magnitude;*
- c) *all solutions to the negative Pell equation B.13 are given by the odd powers of $(X + Y\sqrt{D})/2$;*
- d) *all solutions to the Pell equation are given by the even powers of $(X + Y\sqrt{D})/2$; the fundamental solution to the Pell equation is*

$$\left(\frac{X + Y\sqrt{D}}{2} \right)^2.$$

The solution to the negative Pell equation B.13, if it exists, will be called the *fundamental solution* to that equation.

We now prove Theorem B.19.

Theorem B.19 *Two reduced forms are equivalent if and only if they are in the same cycle.*

Proof. Our proof, which follows closely that of Mathews, will take several steps. We define a continued fraction to be *regular* if all the partial quotients after the first are positive.

Lemma B.28. *If an infinite cf contains only a finite number of non-positive partial quotients, it can be converted in a finite number of steps to a regular cf.*

Proof. Let a_r be the last nonpositive partial quotient (pq).

Case i. $a_r = 0$.

Since $[x, 0, y, z] = [x + y, z]$, we have

$$[\dots, a_{r-1}, 0, a_{r+1}, a_{r+2}, \dots] = [\dots, a_{r-1} + a_{r+1}, a_{r+2}, \dots].$$

We note that this shifts the last nonpositive pq to the left.

Case ii. $a_r = -k = -1$.

It can be shown that

$$[\dots, a_{r-1}, -k, a_{r+1}, \dots] = [\dots, a_{r-1} - 1, 1, k - 2, a_{r+1} - 1, \dots].$$

Since a_r is the last nonpositive pq, $a_{r+1} - 1$ is nonnegative. If it is zero or if k is 2 or both, the reduction of the previous case has the effect of shifting the last nonpositive pq to the left.

Case iii. $a_r = -1$.

$$\text{Since } [\dots, x, -1, y, \dots] = [\dots, x - 2, 1, y - 2, \dots]$$

$$\text{and } [\dots, x, -1, 1, y, z, \dots] = [\dots, x - y - 2, 1, z - 1, \dots],$$

the last nonpositive pq is again shifted to the left. \square

We can thus shift the nonpositive terms to the left, eventually eliminating them entirely. In each case the number of partial quotients changes by zero or by two.

Lemma B.29. *If $y = (\alpha x + \beta)/(\gamma x + \delta)$ for some transformation in the modular group Γ , then y can be written*

$$y = [\pm t, a_1, \dots, a_{2r}, \pm u, x],$$

with a_1, \dots, a_{2r} all positive.

Proof. Let $\pm t$ be chosen so that $-(\pm t - \beta/\delta)$ is a positive proper fraction. We can expand β/δ into a cf with an odd number of partial quotients $\beta/\delta = [\pm t, a_1, \dots, a_{2r}]$. (We can make the length $2r + 1$ since $[z] = [z - 1, 1]$.) If P/Q is the penultimate convergent, then by equation ??, $\beta Q - \delta P = 1 = \alpha\delta - \beta\gamma$. Then $\alpha = P \pm u\beta$ and $\gamma = Q \pm u\delta$ for some integer u . Then

$$\alpha/\gamma = [\pm t, a_1, \dots, a_{2r}, \pm u].$$

Consequently,

$$y = \frac{\alpha x + \beta}{\gamma x + \delta} = [\pm t, a_1, \dots, a_{2r}, \pm u, x].$$

□

We now prove Theorem B.19. Let $f = (a, b, c)$ and $f' = (a', b', c')$ be two reduced equivalent forms. With no loss of generality for our purposes, we can choose a and a' positive so that the principal roots ω and ω' are positive proper fractions. Since the forms are equivalent, a transformation of the usual sort exists so that

$$\omega' = (\alpha\omega + \beta)/(\gamma\omega + \delta).$$

Then $\omega' = [\pm t, a_1, \dots, a_{2r}, \pm u, \omega]$

$$= [\pm t, a_1, \dots, a_{2r}, \pm u + d_1, *d_2, \dots, *d_1]$$

if $[*d_1, \dots, *d_{2m}]$ is the cf for ω . We may use Lemma B.28 to make positive all the partial quotients after the first and then note that the first partial quotient is zero since ω' is a positive proper fraction. It is easy to show that a purely periodic cf is unique for a given quadratic irrational so that the periodic part of the expansion of ω' is merely a cyclic permutation of that for ω . Indeed, since the operations of Lemma B.28 change the number of partial quotients by zero or two each time, the period for ω' is a shift of that for ω by an even number of partial quotients. (This is important since the first coefficients of adjacent forms alternate in sign; without the evenness of the permutation we could not distinguish cycles from their associates.) Thus, by cycling forward from f we arrive at a reduced form whose principal root is ω' . But the principal root and the discriminant uniquely determine the form, so this form is f' . □

We prove one final theorem which will be used later.

Theorem B.30. *Let Δ be a positive discriminant of binary quadratic forms and p be any prime. In the notation of Theorem B.23, we have that*

- a) *there exists an n such that $p|Y_n$;*
- b) *the least positive residues modulo p of the integers (X_n, Y_n) form a periodic sequence.*

Proof. We only prove this for odd primes p ; the proof for $p = 2$ is similar. If Δ is a discriminant of forms, then so is Δp^2 ; therefore, a solution exists to the equation $x^2 - \Delta p^2 y^2 = 4$. Part a follows from the fact that this solution (x, py) to $x^2 - \Delta y^2 = 4$ must be one of the pairs (X_n, Y_n) .

We have that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{X_p + Y_p \sqrt{\Delta}}{2} &= \left(\frac{X_1 + Y_1 \sqrt{\Delta}}{2} \right)^p \\
 &\equiv \frac{X_1 + Y_1 \Delta^{(p-1)/2} \sqrt{\Delta}}{2} \\
 &\equiv \frac{X_1 + Y_1 \left(\frac{\Delta}{p} \right) \sqrt{\Delta}}{2},
 \end{aligned}$$

where the congruences are taken modulo p , and the symbol $\left(\frac{\Delta}{p} \right)$ is the quadratic residue symbol if p does not divide Δ and 0 if it does. We may thus define $\bar{X} \equiv X_1$ and $\bar{Y} \equiv \left(\frac{\Delta}{p} \right) Y_1$ to be least positive residues of these congruences (mod p). It is clear that the powers $(X_1 + Y_1 \sqrt{\Delta})/2)^n$ produce a sequence congruent modulo p to the powers of $(\bar{X} + \bar{Y} \sqrt{\Delta})/2)^n$, and this sequence is recurrent. \square

Example B.31. Let $D = 41$. The cf expansion of $(-1 + \sqrt{41})/2$ is

i	a_i	P_i	Q_i	Z_i	X_i
-1		1	0		
0	2	2	1	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/2$	
1	1	3	1	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/8$
2	2	8	3	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/4$
3	2	19	7	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/4$
4	1	27	10	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/8$
5	5	154	57	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/2$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/2$
6	1	181	67	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/8$
7	2	516	191	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/4$
8	2	1213	449	$(\sqrt{41} - 3)/4$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/4$
9	1	1729	640	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/8$	$(\sqrt{41} + 3)/8$
10	5	9858	3649	$(\sqrt{41} - 5)/2$	$(\sqrt{41} + 5)/2$

The cycle is completed, and the cf is $[2, *1, 2, 2, 1, *5]$. The effect on the forms is this, where the equivalences after the first are done with transformations

$$T_i = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & \delta \end{pmatrix}$$

for which the δ are $-1, 2, -2, 1, -5, 1, -2, 2, -1$:

$$\begin{aligned} (1, 1, -10) &\sim (1, 5, -4) \sim (-4, 3, 2) \sim (2, 5, -2) \sim \\ &(-2, 3, 4) \sim (4, 5, -1) \sim (-1, 5, 4) \sim (4, 3, -2) \sim \\ &(-2, 5, 2) \sim (2, 3, -4) \sim (-4, 5, 1). \end{aligned}$$

The cumulative equivalence is achieved by the transformations computed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 T_0 &= \begin{pmatrix} P_{-1} & P_0 \\ Q_{-1} & Q_0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 T_0 T_1 &= T_0 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & -a_1 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} P_0 & -P_1 \\ Q_0 & -Q_1 \end{pmatrix} \\
 T_0 T_1 T_2 &= \begin{pmatrix} -P_1 & -P_2 \\ -Q_1 & -Q_2 \end{pmatrix} \\
 T_0 T_1 T_2 T_3 &= \begin{pmatrix} -P_2 & P_3 \\ -Q_2 & Q_3 \end{pmatrix} \\
 T_0 T_1 T_2 T_3 T_4 &= \begin{pmatrix} P_3 & P_4 \\ Q_3 & Q_4 \end{pmatrix}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, for example, $(1, 1, -10) \sim (2, 5, -2)$ under

$$\begin{pmatrix} -3 & -8 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We see that $(1, 5, -4) \sim (-1, 5, 4)$ under

$$\begin{pmatrix} 7 & -40 \\ 10 & -57 \end{pmatrix}.$$

This provides us with the solution $64^2 - 41 \cdot 10^2 = -4$, which is the fundamental solution for the negative Pell equation B.13. Continuing to the end of the cycle, we find that $(1, 5, -4)$ first becomes equivalent to itself under

$$\begin{pmatrix} -449 & -2560 \\ -640 & -3649 \end{pmatrix}.$$

From this we get the solution $4098^2 - 41 \cdot 640^2 = 4$, which is the fundamental solution for equation B.6

Class Groups, CLASNO, Baby-step/Giant-step

C.1. Quadratic class groups

One of the main reasons for doing binary quadratic forms in this class is that the classes of forms form a finite abelian group, called the *class group*, under a “multiplication” operation called *composition*.

This is essentially multiplication of the lead coefficients of the forms, with some necessary adjustments in order to maintain the form-ness of the things being worked with. The existence and nature of the group of classes of forms was first discovered by Gauss and published in the *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae*. Recent references for class groups and their composition include Buell [Bue89] and Buchmann [Buc01], with [Mat61] being the first real exposition in English of Gauss’s work.

C.2. Composition Algorithms

In its historical context the rules of composition were first discovered as a generalization of a multiplication-of-forms formula known to ancient mathematicians:

$$(x^2 + Dy^2) \cdot (z^2 + Dw^2) = (xz + Dyw)^2 + D(xw - yz)^2.$$

The identity in the class group is the principal form $(1, 0, D)$ or $(1, 1, (1 - D)/4)$. The above formula in a class group context is the statement that the square of the identity of the group is the identity.

The machinery of composition of forms is entirely for the purpose of extending this identity to its most general form, for all classes of forms and all possible values of D , which need not be the same in each of the two factors on the left-hand side.

The existence of a group structure is best seen by defining the form composition using the “united forms” of Dirichlet. Two forms (a_1, b_1, c_1) and (a_2, b_2, c_2) of the same discriminant Δ are called *united* if

$$\gcd\left(a_1, a_2, \frac{b_1 + b_2}{2}\right) = 1.$$

Proposition C.1. If (a_1, b_1, c_1) and (a_2, b_2, c_2) are united forms, then there exist forms (a_1, B, a_2C) and (a_2, B, a_1C) such that

$$\begin{aligned}(a_1, b_1, c_1) &\sim (a_1, B, a_2C) \\ (a_2, b_2, c_2) &\sim (a_2, B, a_1C)\end{aligned}$$

We leave in the details of proof, which we won’t necessarily need. The reader may skip now to the definition of the compounded form, and then to Theorem C.5 and Corollary C.6.

Proof. We must demonstrate that an integer B exists such that the congruences

$$\begin{aligned}B &\equiv b_1 \pmod{2a_1} \\ B &\equiv b_2 \pmod{2a_2}\end{aligned}$$

are simultaneously solvable and for which C is an integer. The solutions of the first congruence are $b_1 + 2a_1\delta_1$. These provide a solution of the second congruence if and only if

$$\frac{b_1 - b_2}{2} \equiv -a_1\delta_1 \pmod{a_2}$$

is solvable, and this is true if and only if the greatest common divisor d of a_1 and a_2 divides $(b_1 - b_2)/2$. From the equation

$$\Delta = b_1^2 - 4a_1c_1 = b_2^2 - 4a_2c_2$$

we may deduce that

$$\left(\frac{b_1 + b_2}{2}\right) \left(\frac{b_1 - b_2}{2}\right) = a_1c_1 - a_2c_2.$$

Since the forms are united, d must divide $(b_1 - b_2)/2$.

Now let $k = a_1a_2/d$. The value of B determined above is unique modulo $2k$, that is, $B = B_0 + 2kt$ for some fixed B_0 and arbitrary t . By our choice of B_0 , we have $B^2 \equiv B_0^2 \equiv \Delta \pmod{4k}$. We now need

to choose t to force $B^2 \equiv \Delta \pmod{4a_1a_2}$; this will guarantee that C is an integer.

Clearly, $B^2 \equiv \Delta \pmod{4a_1a_2}$ if and only if

$$\frac{\Delta - B_0^2}{4k} \equiv B_0 t \pmod{d}$$

and the left hand side is indeed an integer. By the definition of B_0 and the fact that the forms are united, B_0 is invertible modulo d , so

$$t \equiv \left(\frac{\Delta - B_0^2}{4k} \right) B_0^{-1} \pmod{d}$$

will uniquely determine an appropriate B modulo $2a_1a_2$. \square

Now, if we have united forms (a_1, B, a_2C) and (a_2, B, a_1C) , then under the transformation

$$(C.1) \quad \begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & -C \\ 0 & a_1 & a_2 & B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1x_2 \\ x_1y_2 \\ y_1x_2 \\ y_1y_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

we have the equation

$$(C.2) \quad (a_1x_1^2 + Bx_1y_1 + a_2Cy_1^2)(a_2x_2^2 + Bx_2y_2 + a_1Cy_2^2) = a_1a_2X^2 + BXY + CY^2.$$

Definition C.2 (Composition). We define the *form compounded of* f_1 and f_2 to be (a_1a_2, B, C) , which we write $f_1 \circ f_2$.¹

A lemma is needed to carry out the next major proof.

Lemma C.3. *Two forms (a_1, b_1, c_1) and (a_2, b_2, c_2) of the same discriminant are equivalent if and only if integers α and γ can be found such that*

$$\begin{aligned} a_1\alpha^2 + b_1\alpha\gamma + c_1\gamma^2 &= a_2 \\ 2a_1\alpha + (b_1 + b_2)\gamma &\equiv 0 \pmod{2a_2} \\ (b_1 - b_2)\alpha + 2c_1\gamma &\equiv 0 \pmod{2a_2}. \end{aligned}$$

¹As with the word *anceps*, the translation from the Latin of Gauss has been imperfect. There is total agreement on the use of *composition* as the noun, but both *to compound* and *to compose* can be found as the infinitive.

Proof. If the forms are equivalent, then clearly α and γ exist with which to represent a_2 , by equations B.1. There are infinitely many choices for β and δ . For all of them, however, we have the following:

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma &= 1 \\ (b_1\gamma + 2a_1\alpha)\beta + (b_1\alpha + 2c_1\gamma)\delta &= b_2.\end{aligned}$$

We have two linear equations in the two unknowns β and δ . The congruences desired follow from solving for β and δ :

$$\begin{aligned}2a_1\alpha + (b_1 + b_2)\gamma &= 2a_2\delta \\ (b_1 - b_2)\alpha + 2c_1\gamma &= -2a_2\beta.\end{aligned}$$

The proof in the opposite direction is simply a reversal of the process of solving the linear equations. \square

We have defined composition and now must show that it possesses the desired properties. This proof follows that of Dirichlet.

Theorem C.4. *If f_1 and f_2 are united forms, and united forms f_3 and f_4 exist for which $f_1 \sim f_3$ and $f_2 \sim f_4$, then $f_1 \circ f_2 \sim f_3 \circ f_4$.*

Proof. We may assume that we have forms

$$\begin{aligned}f_1 &= (a_1, B, a_2C) \\ f_2 &= (a_2, B, a_1C) \\ f_3 &= (m_1, N, m_2L) \\ f_4 &= (m_2, N, m_1L).\end{aligned}$$

We define integers x_1, x_2, y_1 , and y_2 by Lemma C.3 so that

$$\begin{aligned}a_1x_1^2 + Bx_1y_1 + a_2Cy_1^2 &= m_1 \\ 2a_1x_1 + (B + N)y_1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{2m_1} \\ (B - N)x_1 + 2a_2Cy_1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{2m_1} \\ a_2x_2^2 + Bx_2y_2 + a_1Cy_2^2 &= m_2 \\ 2a_2x_2 + (B + N)y_2 &\equiv 0 \pmod{2m_2} \\ (B - N)x_2 + 2a_1Cy_2 &\equiv 0 \pmod{2m_2}.\end{aligned}$$

We need to show that integers X and Y exist such that

$$\begin{aligned}a_1a_2X^2 + BXY + CY^2 &= m_1m_2 \\ 2a_1a_2X + (B + N)Y &\equiv 0 \pmod{2m_1m_2} \\ (B - N)X + 2CY &\equiv 0 \pmod{2m_1m_2}.\end{aligned}$$

Clearly, the equation is satisfied. By direct calculation (the crucial step is the substitution $N^2 = B^2 - 4a_1a_2C + 4m_1m_2L$) one can show that

$$(a_1x_1 + (B + N)y_1/2)(a_2x_2 + (B + N)y_2/2) \equiv a_1a_2X + (B + N)Y/2 \pmod{m_1m_2}.$$

To prove the second congruence, we note that if we write

$$(B - \sqrt{\Delta})X/2 + CY = U,$$

then the following four equations are immediate:

$$\begin{aligned} \left[(B - \sqrt{\Delta})x_1/2 + a_2Cy_1 \right] \left[a_2x_2 + (B + \sqrt{\Delta})y_2 \right] &= a_2U \\ \left[a_1x_1 + (B + \sqrt{\Delta})y_1 \right] \left[(B - \sqrt{\Delta})x_2/2 + a_1Cy_2 \right] &= a_1U \\ \left[(B - \sqrt{\Delta})x_1/2 + a_2Cy_1 \right] \left[(B - \sqrt{\Delta})x_2/2 + a_1Cy_2 \right] &= (B - \sqrt{\Delta})U/2 \\ C \left[a_1x_1 + (B + \sqrt{\Delta})y_1 \right] \left[a_2x_2 + (B + \sqrt{\Delta})y_2 \right] &= (B + \sqrt{\Delta})U/2 \end{aligned}$$

As above, we can substitute N for $\sqrt{\Delta}$ and convert these four equations into congruences modulo m_1m_2 . Since the left-hand sides are all congruent to 0 modulo m_1m_2 , and the forms are assumed to be united, we must have $U \equiv 0 \pmod{m_1m_2}$, which is the desired second congruence. \square

The essence of Theorem C.4 is that the class determined by the composition of two individual forms depends not on the forms but only on their classes. Composition is easily seen to be commutative and associative. Further, for any forms $(1, b_1, c_1)$ and (a_2, b_2, c_2) we have

$$(1, b_1, c_1) \circ (a_2, b_2, c_2) \sim (a_2, b_2, c_2).$$

Finally, we note that for any form (a, b, c) we have

$$(a, b, c) \circ (a, -b, c) \sim (a, b, c) \circ (c, b, a) \sim (ac, b, 1).$$

We have proved the following theorem, of enormous importance in the theory of numbers.

Theorem C.5. *Under composition, the classes of forms of a fixed discriminant form a finite abelian group. The identity of the group is the principal class, and the inverse of the class of any form is the class of the opposite of the form.*

There is a further important fact which will be stated formally.

Corollary C.6. The classes which are of order 2 in the class group are precisely those classes which contain ambiguous forms.

Proof. An ambiguous form is equivalent to its own opposite. \square

We have defined the substitutions C.1 for forms after determining the correct center coefficient B . It is an easy matter to show that the following is the analogous substitution if we begin with united forms (a_1, b_1, c_1) and (a_2, b_2, c_2) in which the center coefficient has not yet been adjusted.

$$\begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{b_2-B}{2a_2} & \frac{b_1-B}{2a_1} & \frac{[b_1b_2+\Delta-B(b_1+b_2)]}{4a_1a_2} \\ 0 & a_1 & a_2 & \frac{b_1+b_2}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1x_2 \\ x_1y_2 \\ y_1x_2 \\ y_1y_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

With this substitution with integer coefficients, we have the following analog of C.2:

$$(a_1x_1^2 + b_1x_1y_1 + c_1y_1^2) \cdot (a_2x_2^2 + b_2x_2y_2 + c_2y_2^2) = a_1a_2X^2 + BXY + \left(\frac{B^2 - \Delta}{4a_1a_2}\right)Y^2.$$

Although the concept of united forms is useful for an initial description of the class group, it is less useful for computational purposes, not being algorithmic. We present the composition algorithm of Arndt, as described in Mathews. (Since Mathews uses a definition of forms different from ours, the algorithm has been modified accordingly.)

Theorem C.7. To compound $f_1 = (a_1, b_1, c_1)$ and $f_2 = (a_2, b_2, c_2)$ let $\beta = (b_1 + b_2)/2$. Let $n = \gcd(a_1, a_2, \beta)$, and choose t, u, v such that $a_1t + a_2u + \beta v = n$. Then let $A = a_1a_2/n^2$ and

$$B = \frac{a_1b_2t + a_2b_1u + v(b_1b_2 + \Delta)/2}{n}.$$

Then B is a solution of the simultaneous congruences

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a_1B}{n} &\equiv \frac{a_1b_2}{n} \pmod{2A} \\ \frac{a_2B}{n} &\equiv \frac{a_2b_1}{n} \pmod{2A} \\ \frac{\beta B}{n} &\equiv \frac{b_1b_2 + \Delta}{2n} \pmod{2A}. \end{aligned}$$

The form compounded of f_1 and f_2 is then

$$\left(\frac{a_1 a_2}{n^2}, B, *\right),$$

the third coefficient being determined from the discriminant formula.

Proof. Let n , t , u , and v be computed as above. Since we have $\Delta = b_1^2 - 4a_1c_1 = b_2^2 - 4a_2c_2$, we now have

$$\left(\frac{b_1 + b_2}{2}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{b_1 - b_2}{2}\right) = a_2c_2 - a_1c_1$$

and then

$$\left(\frac{b_1 + b_2}{2n}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{b_1 - b_2}{2}\right) = \frac{a_2c_2}{n} - \frac{a_1c_1}{n}.$$

Any further common factors of a_1 and a_2 must divide $(b_1 - b_2)/2$ and be prime to $(b_1 + b_2)/2$. It is therefore possible to find B such that

$$\begin{aligned} B &\equiv b_1 \pmod{2a_1/n} \\ &\equiv b_2 \pmod{2a_2/n}. \end{aligned}$$

By carefully arguing further as in the proof of Proposition C.1 we obtain a substitution

$$\begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} n & \frac{(b_2 - B)n}{2a_2} & \frac{(b_1 - B)n}{2a_1} & \frac{[b_1b_2 + \Delta - B(b_1 + b_2)]n}{4a_1a_2} \\ 0 & \frac{a_1}{n} & \frac{a_2}{n} & \frac{b_1 + b_2}{2n} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1x_2 \\ x_1y_2 \\ y_1x_2 \\ y_1y_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

with integer coefficients. The proof now follows exactly as the original proof for composition of united forms. \square

Proposition C.8. As defined above,

$$B = b_1 + \left(\frac{2a_1}{n}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{t(b_2 - b_1)}{2} - c_1v\right).$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
n(B - b_1) &= -nb_1 + a_1b_2t + a_2b_1u + v(b_1b_2 + \Delta)/2 \\
&= b_1(a_2u - n) + a_1b_2t + v(b_1b_2 + \Delta)/2 \\
&= b_1(-a_1t - \beta v) + a_1b_2t + v(b_1b_2 + \Delta)/2 \\
&= a_1t(b_2 - b_1) + v((b_1b_2 + \Delta)/2 - b_1\beta) \\
&= a_1t(b_2 - b_1) + v(b_1b_2 + b_1^2 - 4a_1c_1 - b_1^2 - b_1b_2)/2 \\
&= a_1t(b_2 - b_1) + v(-4a_1c_1)/2 \\
&= a_1t(b_2 - b_1) - 2a_1c_1v \\
&= 2a_1(t(b_2 - b_1)/2 - c_1v).
\end{aligned}$$

The proposition is proved. \square

We present a final composition algorithm, which is not unlike Arndt's method. This algorithm for use in machine computation was first stated by Daniel Shanks [Sha69].

Theorem C.9. *To compound $f_1 = (a_1, b_1, c_1)$ and $f_2 = (a_2, b_2, c_2)$, let $\beta = (b_1 + b_2)/2$. Let $m = \gcd(a_1, \beta)$, and $n = \gcd(m, a_2)$. Solve $a_1x + \beta y = m$ for x and y and*

$$mz/n \equiv x \left(\frac{b_2 - b_1}{2} \right) - c_1y \pmod{a_2/n} \text{ for } z.$$

The form compounded of f_1 and f_2 is then

$$(a_1a_2/n^2, b_1 + 2a_1z/n, *),$$

with the third coefficient being computed from the discriminant formula.

Proof. We let $a_1x + \beta y = m$, and $mp + a_2u = n$. Then

$$a_1px + \beta py + a_2u = n,$$

so that $t = px$, $u = u$, and $v = py$ suffices for the choice of t, u, v in Arndt's method. By Proposition C.8, the chosen value B in Arndt's method is

$$B = b_1 + \left(\frac{2a_1}{n} \right) \cdot \left[px \left(\frac{b_2 - b_1}{2} \right) - c_1py \right].$$

We note that pm/n , which is an integer, is congruent to 1 $\pmod{a_2/n}$ so that

$$z \equiv pmz/n \equiv px \left(\frac{b_2 - b_1}{2} \right) - c_1py \pmod{a_2/n}.$$

Different choices of z thus produce values of B differing by a multiple of $2a_1a_2/n^2$, that is, forms equivalent to those chosen by Arndt's method. \square

An important special case of composition is *duplication* of a form, that is to say, squaring the class.

Corollary C.10. To compound $f = (a, b, c)$ with itself, let $n = \gcd(a, b)$, and solve $by/n \equiv 1 \pmod{a/n}$ for y . Then $(a, b, c) \circ (a, b, c) \sim (a^2/n^2, b - 2acy/n, *)$, with the third coefficient computed from the discriminant formula.

Proof. We apply the algorithm of Theorem C.9, noting that many of the terms drop out. \square

C.3. Examples

Let's start with $\Delta = -D = -47$. The reduced forms are

$$\begin{aligned} (1, 1, 12) \\ (2, \pm 1, 6) \\ (3, \pm 1, 4) \end{aligned}$$

If we try to compound $(2, 1, 6)$ with itself, we notice that we have

$$(2, 1, 6) \circ (2, 1, 6)$$

and these forms are united already, with $a_1 = 2$, $a_2 = 2$, $c = 3$, and $B = 1$, so we get

$$(2, 1, 6) \circ (2, 1, 6) \sim (4, 1, 3) \sim (3, -1, 4)$$

If we compound again,

$$(2, 1, 6) \circ (3, -1, 4)$$

we need to do two equivalences to get united forms, where we remember we can add in twice the lead coefficient to the middle coefficient, and then compute the third coefficient as needed from the discriminant formula.

$$\sim (3, -1, 4) \sim (3, 5, *)$$

So now we can compound:

$$\begin{aligned} (2, 1, 6) \circ (3, -1, 4) &\sim \\ (2, 5, *) \circ (3, 5, *) &\sim \\ (6, 5, 3) \sim (3, -5, 6) &\sim (3, 1, 4) \end{aligned}$$

And then again

$$\begin{aligned}(2, 1, 6) \circ (3, 1, 4) &\sim \\ (6, 1, 2) &\sim (2, -1, 6)\end{aligned}$$

Now, for the last composition, we need to do a small bit of adjustment to use the simpler united forms approach.

$$\begin{aligned}(2, 1, 6) \circ (2, -1, 6) &\sim \\ (2, 1, 6) \circ (6, 1, 2) &\sim \\ (1, 1, 12)\end{aligned}$$

The five classes of forms form a 5-cycle.

What is enormously important, because we are interested in factoring, is that the classes of ambiguous forms, which are the ones involving factors of the discriminant, are the classes of order 2 in the group. Let's look at discriminant -195 , whose reduced forms are

$$\begin{aligned}(1, 1, 49) \\ (3, 3, 17) \\ (5, 5, 11) \\ (7, 1, 7)\end{aligned}$$

Let's compound

$$\begin{aligned}(3, 3, 17) \circ (3, 3, 17) &\sim \\ (3, 3, 17) \circ (3, -3, 17) &\sim \\ (3, 3, 17) \circ (17, 3, 3) &\sim \\ (51, 3, 1) \sim (1, 3, 51) &\sim \\ (1, 1, 49)\end{aligned}$$

The same trick works for $(5, 5, 11)$

And $(7, 1, 7)$ is already united, and compounds to $(1, 1, 49)$.

We can compound two of the elements:

$$\begin{aligned}(3, 3, 17) \circ (5, 5, 11) &\sim \\ (3, 15, *) \circ (5, 15, *) &\sim \\ (15, 15, 7) \sim (7, 1, 7)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}(3, 3, 17) \circ (7, 1, 7) &\sim \\ (3, 15, *) \circ (7, 15, *) &\sim \\ (21, 15, 5) \sim (5, 5, 11)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}(5, 5, 17) \circ (7, 1, 7) &\sim \\ (5, 15, *) \circ (7, 15, *) &\sim \\ (35, 15, 3) &\sim (3, 3, 17)\end{aligned}$$

So this group is the Klein-4 group: an abelian group of four elements, of which all but the identity are of order 2.

C.3.1. General facts about class numbers and class groups. We know that the class numbers for a discriminant Δ will be “about” $\sqrt{|\Delta|}$ in size. We know that for every factor p of the discriminant we get a form class of order 2 and that either the form

$$(p, p, *)$$

or

$$(\Delta/p, \Delta/p, *)$$

will be reduced, so

- (1) If Δ is prime, the class number is odd;
- (2) If Δ is the product of two primes, there is one reduced form of order 2
- (3) If Δ is the product of three primes, there are three reduced forms of order 2
- (4) If Δ is the product of four primes, there are seven reduced forms of order 2

and so forth....

We also know from experience that the class group is “about as cyclic as it can be” except for the necessary elements of order 2 coming from factors of the discriminant. There are heuristics (the Cohen-Lenstra heuristics) that suggest that there is a slightly better than random chance of a noncyclic group, but in general, class groups tend to be mostly cyclic.

C.4. SPAR and CLASNO

So how does this help with factoring?

C.4.1. SPAR. Let's go back to the metaphysics of Pollard $p - 1$.

If we are trying to factor N , we can work in the class group of forms of discriminant $\Delta = -N$ or $\Delta = -4N$ (we might need the 4 if N isn't itself a discriminant).

We pick a random form f of discriminant Δ , and we exponentiate it to the very high composite power M as in Pollard $p - 1$ —except that only use odd primes in building up M . If the *odd* part of the class number divides M , then we can repeatedly square f^M and eventually get an ambiguous form that has as its lead coefficient a factor of Δ . (We hope we don't get the 2 or the 4 if $\Delta = -4N$.)

This is the Shanks-Pollard-Atkin-Rickert factoring method, referred to as SPAR.

For example, let's go after 1037 again. Since -1037 isn't a discriminant, we will use $-4 \cdot 1037 = -4148$.

Start with

$$f = (3, 2, 346) \sim (3, 8, 351)$$

We happen to get lucky in this (for hand calculation) in that 351 has lots of 3s in it.

$$f^2 = (3, 8, 351) \circ (3, 8, 351) \sim (9, 8, 117)$$

$$f^3 = (3, 8, 351) \circ (9, 8, 117) \sim (27, 8, 39)$$

$$f^4 = (3, 8, 351) \circ (27, 8, 39) \sim (81, 8, 13) \sim (13, -8, 81) \sim (13, 44, 117)$$

$$f^5 = (3, 8, 351) \circ (13, 44, 117) \sim (39, 44, 39) \sim (39, -34, 34) \sim (34, 34, 39)$$

If we were exponentiating f , and an odd M had any power of 5 in it, we would get $f^M \sim g \sim (34, 34, 39)$. When we square g , we will get the identity, so we would know to take a gcd of the lead coefficient 34 of g with 1037, and the factor of 17 will pop out.

We note that our equivalences are actually pretty simple. Since we are compounding with the form of lead coefficient 3, we know that one of (a, b, c) , $(a, b + 2a, c')$, $(a, b + 4a, c'')$, will force a 3 in the third coefficient so we'll get a form that is united with f .

Doing this for real, we'd use Euclid to solve for exactly the value to add in to b , but doing this by hand isn't so bad in this case.

As described below, we know that the order of the class group for any given discriminant $-N$ is about \sqrt{N} , so the size of the group is

comparable to the sizes used in other $p-1$ -like approaches. The arithmetic is (as with elliptic curves) more complicated than the original version of $p-1$, but we once again have the advantage of being able to run multiple parallel trials, using discriminants $-qN$ for small primes q , and we only need one such trial to work in order to factor N .

C.4.2. CLASNO. SPAR is a heuristic method modelled after $p-1$; we hope that the odd part of the class number can be hacked for, and we can run multiple trials in parallel.

CLASNO, in contrast, was an algorithm that opened an entirely different avenue of computational attack on problems in number theory. (CLASNO was published in 1969 [Sha69], long before RSA was published, and its innovation has been used in several settings post-RSA.)

We know that if we know the order of the odd part of the class group, then we can factor, because the elements of order 2 in the group correspond to factors of the discriminant. We therefore use an approximation to the class number and work heuristically from there. A major theorem in number theory is that the class number h of a quadratic number field of negative discriminant $-D < 3$ has an analytic formula

$$h(-D) = \frac{\sqrt{D}}{\pi} \prod_p \frac{p}{p - \chi(p)}$$

where the product is taken over all primes p and

$$\begin{aligned} \chi(p) &= 0 && \text{if } p|D \\ &= 1 && \text{if } b^2 \equiv -D \pmod{p} \text{ is solvable} \\ &= -1 && \text{if } b^2 \equiv -D \pmod{p} \text{ is not solvable} \end{aligned}$$

The heuristic of CLASNO is that we cannot actually compute the infinite product, but we can compute the product for primes up to some huge bound and thus get an approximation H for h .

We then apply what was described in Shanks's paper as and has become known as the "baby-step/giant-step method". It is a classic computational trade of space for time.

We will need a base form f that we exponentiate as we did with SPAR. We lay out a baby-step patch of all the powers f^b for $-B \leq b \leq B$. This is the space part; we choose B to be as large as we can possibly have and still be able to store and retrieve powers of f efficiently.

We now use our approximation for h , compute f^H , and do a lookup in our symmetric patch about the identity. If we have $f^H \sim f^k$ for some k , $-B \leq k \leq B$, then we know that f^{H-k} is the identity in the group, we have the order of the group, and we can back off powers of two to find the form whose square is the identity and that provides us a factor of the discriminant.

If we don't find $f^H \sim f^k$ in the list of baby-steps about the identity, we take a “giant step” and compute $g \sim f^{H+2B}$, and then try again to look up g in our $2B$ -wide swath of stored forms. Then we try $g' \sim f^{H-2B}$. And so on.

It should be fairly obvious that CLASNO runs in time $\mathcal{O}(N^{1/4})$ if allowed to use $N^{1/4}$ space. That's the break-even point for time versus space. The order of the group is about $N^{1/2}$. With a lookup table of size N^k , one needs to perform $N^{1/2-k}$ giant steps each of which is a linear lookup of size N^k . The best time is thus when $N^{1/2-k} = N^k$, which is when $k = 1/4$.

(This isn't a “proof” of this fact, but the proof is really just dotting the i's and crossing the t's on this basic approach, and getting the correct estimates from the math.)

C.4.3. Metaphysics of baby-step/giant-step. If there were totally wonderful theorems, we would not be having this discussion. But there are no such theorems, and the state of the art is to do the best we can.

We approximate the order of the group in question (somehow).

We lay out as large a patch as possible near the identity of the group.

We then exponentiate in giant steps and do lookups in baby steps in hopes of determining the actual order of the group.

An Actual World War I Cipher

D.1. Introduction

In Chapter VII of Herbert Yardley's *The American Black Chamber* [Yar31], the method for deciphering one German diplomatic message is presented, and a second message, alleged to be produced by the same system, dated 10 January 1919, is given without the decryption process, although the resulting message is given in English translation. In this paper we will trace the decipherment of this message.

D.2. The Message

The message itself is given on pages 150-151 of Yardley's book and displayed here as Figure D.1.

D.3. Language Determination

On the one hand, we are fairly certain that this is a German message from Yardley's context and that it is a transposition and not a substitution cipher. On the other hand, it never hurts to have confirmation of one's assumptions, so we do a frequency count of letters, which appears as Figure D.2. We note that there are 1367 characters overall in the message.

Figure D.1. The original message

```

nogaaaime saesentraa seienewwei heuamaoeid zcdkeftedt edgeigunri
eceutnninb mhbebanais iteaarukss tdscmoorob aeuoermotd hzzzdigbtt
fceumlreri eeoemffcea iqeirenuuf drisrrbnle enznuhbtprf kgtineenel
anvescalrr adngdceoeu tiaailuorl bkrnnoeeqe hhananvsdf niemineiee
eetreegdmp eilsbihlnu hodciageef sttheetdbe ugmuaudnuu dnsfnenenn
umtralgtnu rehnenenbe mntngefsae kltzedrkii rhficnvaks onbtguhewn
thitzmsrmd lghireicsc enpneiette nhvdnvhbvn nrsnecnemn ngepniceuh
eortsgesie eneonfiend wnpkcevemd isrhwlften amucnosazr ahelnehiln
crseamilnb eutceszrth rsaeoszclx mneouhslcu nmenenefae eckerglnra
bgfireubli roznsseuz csthpusica ufohunnbdn betfmmcirt unfnrnsrbna
dsukouiust bmgdreninu lusneadash scecfaoen ehsmnrgoot erzruierne
incneinfee etkstnbika zeugdednkr ibhideeree aeuneinzet dendaoerea
ighueuoanu uzasruoddi eeemcutiee teanchchdd igrrrrrnso esiereerde
emiehdeade nhdthmnosm elolmeennd rhktendend uockehaete eresfjhouk
fhbmkttemn ledsetuehl enimliaern ehzeuesesg snmeuhaimd rrensshikh
rahdhennjh osesedfhin meerneaseh udzsgifmri uoisoehsna deitfeebbsa
ekamhceant eaoabeunou flrneizua nfpbhmfon gusdiportf fhrsmndnrl
tmaurrwini ulnezsknts hdsrdbbnip osedlsuctb ctidafsaue ttunwirhbr
ngnedumiis veurakklne enrctmdtea nsinleimgr iehnlemnlg gkhegdatee
eaaeegtero arusrelari graenuinbi eeikdnspni ribhhpkuze tkrsheshdne
haravntsee ipreicseuu emozusmudh ipitnndark nalccssgle ursttrlecp
irbdnsaend recoeteian mdttnheamt ntzeomtier nukwmittcke ucebdihntf
eswgowgeen notzreasnu caahnbeil ceernsnrta lgghcue

```

Figure D.2. Letter frequencies in the message

a	79	g	38	m	51	s	81	y	0
b	35	h	65	n	148	t	73	z	24
c	44	i	92	o	46	u	75		
d	65	j	2	p	14	v	9		
e	224	k	29	q	2	w	10		
f	31	l	39	r	90	x	1		

These frequencies fit a model of German rather well [Pra39] so we continue with our assumption that this is transposition and not substitution.

D.4. An Initial Blocking

The original message does not appear to be reasonable text in any language. Following Yardley's sample decryption, we assume that all letters in the message have been shifted a fixed number of positions from their original location. To bring the letters back into their correct relative positions, we consider that in German the letter 'c' is always followed by 'h' or 'k'. We therefore compute the distances (modulo 1367, of course) between the 44 instances of the letter 'c' and the 65 instances of 'h'. We write a program that produces those differences and feed the output to a convenient Unix hack

```
Abchdiffs <message | sort -n | uniq -c | sort -n | tail >diffs
```

whose output is unambiguous. The most frequent letter position differences between 'c' and 'h' are

5	-744
5	778
6	-111
6	124
6	-181
6	-273
6	331
6	446
6	71
26	378

It is obvious that we should block the message with letters at a difference of 378 from one another. We do this with a program that produces the message sequence number and character tetragrams of Figure D.3.

D.5. Cribbing the Sequence

Unlike the original cipher text, this collection of tetragrams (we will refer to all as tetragrams, even those that happen to be trigrams) clearly bears resemblance to German.

If this cipher were created using the same system as the cipher used by Yardley as an example, then our next task is to look for a sequence of sequence number differences, taken modulo 378, and to try to connect the tetragrams using that sequence. We start, following Yardley, with a crib on the punctuation. The Unix hack

```
grep 'k ' tetragrams >cribcomma
```

Figure D.3. Message tetragrams from blocking at 378

0 nscg	1 ochd	2 geda	3 andt	4 apie	5 ange	6 iere	7 mira
8 uera	9 etre	10 stre	11 aeng	12 enst	13 ehoe	14 sver	15 ndso
16 tnja	17 rver	18 ahru	19 abes	20 sver	21 enre	22 indl	23 erea
24 nser	25 enmi	26 weig	27 wcer	28 enha	29 iede	30 hmen	31 enau
32 undi	33 agen	34 menb	35 aphi	36 onde	37 eite	38 ichi	39 demk
40 zund	41 chon	42 dess	43 komp	44 eren	45 ftli	46 tsor	47 egli
48 demb	49 tseh	50 eieh	51 denp	52 genk	53 endu	54 ierz	55 gohe
56 unkt	57 nftk	58 rier	59 iens	60 ende	61 cdes	62 ewnh	63 undd
64 tpun	65 nkoe	66 ncch	67 ieka	68 nver	69 beha	70 mmav	71 hden
72 bitt	73 eses	74 bree	75 ahre	76 nwei	77 alsp	78 iffr	79 stje
80 iehi	81 tnoc	82 eaus	83 amke	84 aufu	85 rchu	86 unbe	87 komm
88 ssko	89 satz	90 tztu	91 dres	92 samm	93 chnu	94 meld	95 oleh
96 ondi	97 resp	98 ohei	99 bitt	100 alun	101 enen	102 uchd	103 orla
104 eser	105 renk	106 main	107 omma	108 till	109 dlic	110 hnac	111 zbes
112 zers	113 zung	114 dtel	115 iche	116 gezu	117 bser	118 tzus	119 tret
120 ftst	121 cher	122 ersl	123 usge	124 masc	125 lenp	126 romi	127 eser
128 rzub	129 ichd	130 elan	131 exis	132 omma	133 ende	134 mern	135 ford
136 fuer	137 chne	138 essc	139 also	140 iche	141 quit	142 enke	143 imhi
144 rera	145 enan	146 nehm	147 undd	148 eeht	149 ffen	150 dann	151 renh
152 ieje	153 scha	154 rkcm	155 rest	156 bren	157 ngst	158 llez	159 ende
160 erfo	161 nahm	162 zbit	163 ngni	164 ufme	165 hier	166 bren	167 teru
168 punk	169 fbew	170 klam	171 gist	172 tret	173 iohc	174 nzuk	175 ende
176 enzu	177 nssc	178 esge	179 leib	180 aufd	181 nzmi	182 vcrh	183 esit
184 stun	185 chof	186 apie	187 luss	188 rsow	189 rieg	190 acho	191 dasw
192 nung	193 gfae	194 dode	195 chen	196 euin	197 onto	198 enft	199 ubez
200 tder	201 inbe	202 absa	203 ieas	204 lten	205 ufku	206 imac	207 omma
208 rcha	209 lich	210 bren	211 ktab	212 rung	213 nnte	214 nfei	215 oral
216 enoc	217 esae	218 qrbe	219 eber	220 hnun	221 hans	222 adon	223 nsur
224 auft	225 nkla	226 vorl	227 sung	228 ding	229 fueh	230 nsic	231 itzu
232 ebue	233 mma	234 ign	235 ndf	236 erp	237 ieb	238 enh	239 eim
240 enn	241 euf	242 tlo	243 run	244 esg	245 enu	246 ges	247 dad
248 mdi	249 pap	250 eso	251 ihr	252 lst	253 sch	254 bef	255 ich
256 hfr	257 las	258 nom	259 und	260 hen	261 ond	262 der	263 chl
264 ist	265 amm	266 gna	267 eru	268 egr	269 for	270 sow	271 tti
272 ten	273 hri	274 ezu	275 erl	276 tun	277 die	278 bez	279 ers
280 unk	281 gen	282 mit	283 uns	284 ach	285 und	286 der	287 nis
288 und	289 ufb	290 deb	291 nen	292 sei	293 ftp	294 nko	295 ess
296 nte	297 end	298 nbl	299 nis	300 uku	301 mac	302 tzt	303 reb
304 auc	305 lgt	306 gdi	307 ted	308 nda	309 unf	310 rks	311 era
312 hiu	313 nbe	314 eht	315 mit	316 edu	317 nen	318 bew	319 eri
320 mer	321 neh	322 tab	323 ner	324 gun	325 eng	326 fen	327 sie
328 and	329 ezu	330 kem	331 lti	332 tdi	333 zes	334 env	335 dde
336 rau	337 kor	338 iea	339 irk	340 rek	341 hal	342 fin	343 ige
344 che	345 nun	346 ver	347 auc	348 kom	349 sat	350 ond	351 nut
352 bue	353 tza	354 gan	355 uss	356 hri	357 eun	358 wol	359 nde
360 tdi	361 him	362 ieg	363 ter	364 zei	365 mme	366 sch	367 run
368 mtl	369 die	370 lem	371 gen	372 htl	373 ieg	374 rag	375 enk
376 ich	377 che						

```
grep 'ko ' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep 'kom ' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep 'omm ' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep 'mma ' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep ' kom' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep ' omm' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep ' mma' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep ' ma' tetragrams >>cribkomma
grep ' a' tetragrams >>cribkomma
```

will collect from the list of tetragrams (in the file `tetragrams`) all those that could be connected together to produce the word `komma` (“comma”). We do the same for `punkt` (“period”) and `klammer` (“parenthesis”) and then by hand compute the differences between the tetragram sequence numbers.

At this point we have to start hoping for good luck, because the letter sequences are not long enough to provide unambiguous information. For `punkt`, for example, we get the data of Figure ??, and none of the differences are repeated. For `komma`, however, there are fewer unambiguous possibilities, and yet the difference 154 is repeated. Finally, for `klammer`, although we have no repetitions, we also have only three possible differences from the longer cribs. The cribs for `komma` and `klammer` are shown in Figure D.5. We also note some unusual (for German) tetragrams: `exis` and `quit`. The first almost requires that the next tetragram begin with `t`, and the second almost requires that the next tetragram begin with `ten` or `tun`. Finally, we notice several tetragrams that could be used to form the common suffix `lich`. Considering all these together, we guess that distances of 135, 140, 141, 145, 150, and 154 might be in the cryptogram because they occur more than once among our cribs.

We therefore generate all pairs at these distances and filter to get those that look as if they might be legitimate German. These pairs are shown in Figures D.5-D.10.

D.6. Putting it all together

At this point we definitely begin moving to the art of cryptanalysis as practiced before the computer age. We assume that the tetragrams are to be strung together from pairs into triples, then quadruples, and so forth. To this end we start looking at “good German” pairs for one

Figure D.4. Cribs for ‘punkt’

43	komp	16	tnia	307	ted
51	denp	46	tsor	322	tab
77	alsp	49	tseh	332	tdi
97	resp	64	tpun	353	tza
125	lenp	81	tnoc	360	tdi
236	erp	90	tztu	363	ter
249	pap	108	till		
293	ftp	118	tzus		
		119	tret		
64	tpun	167	teru		
		172	tret		
168	punk	200	tder		
		242	tlo		
280	unk	271	tti		
56	unkt	272	ten		
		276	tun		
211	ktab	302	tzt		
64	tpun	→	211	ktab	$\delta = 147$
43	komp	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 13$
51	denp	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 5$
77	alsp	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 357$
97	resp	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 337$
125	lenp	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 309$
236	erp	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 198$
249	pap	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 185$
293	ftp	→	56	unkt	$\delta = 141$
43	komp	→	280	unk	$\delta = 240$
51	denp	→	280	unk	$\delta = 229$
77	alsp	→	280	unk	$\delta = 203$
97	resp	→	280	unk	$\delta = 183$
125	lenp	→	280	unk	$\delta = 155$
236	erp	→	280	unk	$\delta = 44$
249	pap	→	280	unk	$\delta = 31$
293	ftp		280	unk	$\delta = 365$

initial distance for which the second tetragram of one pair is also the first tetragram of another pair.

Figure D.5. Cribs for ‘komma’ and ‘klammer’

225	nkla	→	365	mme	$\delta = 140$
170	klam	→	320	mern	$\delta = 150$
170	klam	→	134	mern	$\delta = 342$
88	ssko	→	233	mma	$\delta = 145$
88	ssko	→	70	mmav	$\delta = 360$
294	nko	→	233	mma	$\delta = 317$
294	nko	→	70	mmav	$\delta = 154$
154	rkom	→	106	main	$\delta = 330$
154	rkom	→	124	masc	$\delta = 348$
154	rkom	→	301	mac	$\delta = 157$
348	kom	→	106	main	$\delta = 136$
348	kom	→	124	masc	$\delta = 154$
348	kom	→	301	mac	$\delta = 331$

Figure D.6. Pairs at a distance of 135

2 geda 137 chne	91 dres 226 vorl	246 ges 3 andt
12 enst 147 undd	102 uchd 237 ieb	249 pap 6 iere
15 ndso 150 dann	123 usge 258 nom	253 sch 10 stre
24 nser 159 ende	137 chne 272 ten	257 las 14 sver
26 weig 161 nahm	140 iche 275 erl	282 mit 39 demk
28 enha 163 ngni	141 quit 276 tun	285 und 42 dess
30 hmen 165 hier	145 enan 280 unk	286 der 43 komp
33 agen 168 punk	150 dann 285 und	291 nen 48 demb
37 eite 172 tret	156 bren 291 nen	296 nte 53 endu
40 zund 175 ende	187 luss 322 tab	300 uku 57 nftk
41 chon 176 enzu	192 nung 327 sie	315 mit 72 bitt
44 eren 179 leib	207 omma 342 fin	318 bew 75 ahre
48 demb 183 esit	209 lich 344 che	320 mer 77 alsp
51 denp 186 apie	210 bren 345 nun	327 sie 84 aufu
69 beha 204 lten	211 ktab 346 ver	336 rau 93 chnu
75 ahre 210 bren	212 rung 347 auc	354 gan 111 zbes
77 alsp 212 rung	213 nnte 348 kom	364 zei 121 cher
84 aufu 219 eber	219 eber 354 gan	372 htl 129 ichd
86 unbe 221 hans	228 ding 363 ter	373 ieg 130 elan
87 komm 222 adon	242 tlo 377 che	374 rag 131 exis
89 satz 224 aufu	245 enu 2 geda	376 ich 133 ende

Figure D.7. Pairs at a distance of 140

2 geda 142 enke	113 zung 253 sch	201 inbe 341 hal
4 apie 144 rera	115 iche 255 ich	207 omma 347 auc
6 iere 146 nehm	127 eser 267 eru	209 lich 349 sat
15 ndso 155 rest	131 exis 271 tti	211 ktab 351 nut
30 hmen 170 klam	135 ford 275 erl	216 enoc 356 hri
37 eite 177 nssc	136 fuer 276 tun	225 nkla 365 mme
43 komp 183 esit	137 chne 277 die	259 und 21 enre
44 eren 184 stun	140 iche 280 unk	275 erl 37 eite
45 ftli 185 chof	150 dann 290 deb	277 die 39 demk
60 ende 200 tder	153 scha 293 ftp	286 der 48 demb
63 undd 203 ieas	155 rest 295 ess	315 mit 77 alsp
90 tztu 230 nsic	156 bren 296 nte	327 sie 89 satz
94 meld 234 ign	159 ende 299 nis	349 sat 111 zbes
99 bitt 239 eim	175 ende 315 mit	351 nut 113 zung
103 orla 243 run	184 stun 324 gun	369 die 131 exis
105 renk 245 enu	188 rsow 328 and	374 rag 136 fuer
107 omma 247 dad	189 rieg 329 ezu	

Figure D.8. Pairs at a distance of 141

5 ange 146 nehm	195 chen 336 rau	293 ftp 56 unkt
24 nser 165 hier	200 tder 341 hal	320 mer 83 amke
84 aufu 225 nkla	203 ieas 344 che	347 auc 110 hnac
99 bitt 240 enn	228 ding 369 die	358 wol 121 cher
131 exis 272 ten	265 amm 28 enha	365 mme 128 rzub
136 fuer 277 die	269 for 32 undi	373 ieg 136 fuer
139 also 280 unk	275 erl 38 ichi	376 ich 139 also
140 iche 281 gen	285 und 48 demb	

If we start with 135, then a number of triples of “good German” could be formed with any of the other sets of pairs in Figures D.7-D.11. However, one triple,

282 mit (135) 39 demk (150) 189 rieg

stands out. In the context of the First World War, a crib that looked like *mit dem krieg[e]* is tantalizing, especially when we look at the tetragrams beginning with *e* and see that both distances of 140 and 145 are possible. We also notice the possible triple

Figure D.9. Pairs at a distance of 145

29 iede	174 nzuk	134 mern	279 ers	238 enh	5 ange
31 enau	176 enzu	136 fuer	281 gen	270 sow	37 eite
44 eren	189 rieg	137 chne	282 mit	272 ten	39 demk
56 unkt	201 inbe	153 scha	298 nbl	286 der	53 endu
72 bitt	217 esae	160 erfo	305 lgt	304 auc	71 hden
80 iehi	225 nkla	180 aufd	325 eng	320 mer	87 komm
85 rchu	230 nsic	189 rieg	334 env	322 tab	89 satz
88 ssko	233 mma	192 nung	337 kor	342 fin	109 dlic
99 bitt	244 esg	204 lten	349 sat	358 wol	125 lenp
113 zung	258 nom	209 lich	354 gan	360 tdi	127 eser
131 exis	276 tun	213 nnte	358 wol	373 ieg	140 iche
132 omma	277 die	216 enoc	361 him		

Figure D.10. Pairs at a distance of 150

3 andt	153 scha	136 fuer	286 der	265 amm	37 eite
6 iere	156 bren	144 rera	294 nko	273 hri	45 ftli
30 hmen	180 aufd	147 undd	297 end	276 tun	48 demb
39 demk	189 rieg	160 erfo	310 rks	288 und	60 ende
45 ftli	195 chen	165 hier	315 mit	309 unf	81 tnoc
56 unkt	206 imac	170 klam	320 mer	314 eht	86 unbe
57 nftk	207 omma	183 esit	333 zes	315 mit	87 komm
89 satz	239 eim	192 nung	342 fin	317 nen	89 satz
92 samm	242 tlo	201 inbe	351 nut	320 mer	92 samm
101 enen	251 ihr	204 lten	354 gan	327 sie	99 bitt
107 omma	257 las	219 eber	369 die	332 tdi	104 eser
110 hnac	260 hen	224 auft	374 rag	359 nde	131 exis
111 zbes	261 ond	226 vorl	376 ich	363 ter	135 ford
129 ichd	279 ers	233 mma	5 ange	368 mtl	140 iche
132 omma	282 mit	237 ieb	9 etre	369 die	141 quit
134 mern	284 ach	242 tlo	14 sver		
135 ford	285 und	251 ihr	23 area		

246 ges (135) 3 andt (150) 153 scha[ft]

and recognize the German word *Gesandtschaft*, or “legation.” Better yet, we notice only three tetragrams (45 ftli, 120 ftst, and 293 ftp) that begin with the necessary ft, and the third of these is located at a distance of 140 from (153 scha. This corroborates our finding

Figure D.11. Pairs at a distance of 154

12 enst 166 bren	150 dann 304 auc	277 die 53 endu
23 erea 177 nssc	157 ngst 311 era	284 ach 60 ende
24 nser 178 esge	159 ende 313 nbe	292 sei 68 nver
30 hmen 184 stun	161 nahm 315 mit	294 nko 70 mmav
37 eite 191 dasw	168 punk 322 tab	296 nte 72 bitt
56 unkt 210 bren	180 aufd 334 env	297 end 73 eses
104 eser 258 nom	186 apie 340 rek	313 nbe 89 satz
111 zbes 265 amm	189 rieg 343 ige	325 eng 101 enen
115 iche 269 for	192 nung 346 ver	328 and 104 eser
125 lenp 279 ers	195 chen 349 sat	341 hal 117 bser
134 mern 288 und	204 lten 358 wol	348 kom 124 masc
136 fuer 290 deb	219 eber 373 ieg	362 ieg 138 essc
137 chne 291 nen	227 sung 3 andt	366 sch 142 enke
140 iche 294 nko	262 der 38 ichi	374 rag 150 dann
144 rera 298 nbl	264 ist 40 zund	

many instances of triples at distances of 150 followed by 140 that appear to be good German. We take a wild guess and put together quadruples of tetragrams from distances 135, 150, and 140, and we find at least the instances of possible good German shown in Figure D.12. We note that there may be a garble or two in this list, notably with those quadruples beginning with tetragrams 48 and 66, but this list seems quite promising.

D.7. Further guessing

Now we hunker down further in hopes of guessing the right connections. The quadruple beginning with tetragram 84 cries out for an initial letter **t** to follow, the quadruples beginning with tetragrams 254 and 347 need to be followed by quadruples with the initial letter **c**, and the quadruple beginning with 318 would seem to need a tetragram beginning with **r**. If we search for distances for these tetragrams, we get repeated possibilities of distances 9, 71, and 141. However, the 141 also allows us to complete

246 ges (135) 3 andt (150) 153 scha (140) 293 ftp

to be

246 ges (135) 3 andt (150) 153 scha (140) 293 ftp (141) unkt

Figure D.12. Quadruples at distances of 135, 150, and 140

```

2 geda 137 chne 287 nis 49 tseh
12 enst 147 undd 297 end 59 iens
30 hmen 165 hier 315 mit 77 alsp
48 demb 183 esit 333 zes 95 oleh
66 ncch 201 inbe 351 nut 113 zung
69 beha 204 lten 354 gan 116 gezu
84 aufu 219 eber 369 die 131 exis
89 satz 224 auft 374 rag 136 fuer
102 uchd 237 ieb 9 etre 149 ffen
138 essc 273 hri 45 ftli 185 chof
156 bren 291 nen 63 undd 203 ieas
174 nzuk 309 unf 81 tnoc 221 hans
192 nung 327 sie 99 bitt 239 eim
246 ges 3 andt 153 scha 293 ftp
249 pap 6 iere 156 bren 296 nte
254 bef 11 aeng 161 nahm 301 mac
264 ist 21 enre 171 gist 311 era
282 mit 39 demk 189 rieg 329 ezu
300 uku 57 nftk 207 omma 347 auc
318 bew 75 ahre 225 nkla 365 mme
336 rau 93 chnu 243 run 5 ange
354 gan 111 zbes 261 ond 23 erea
375 enk 132 omma 282 mit 44 eren

```

and we decide to try this. The resulting possible German strings are shown in Figure D.13.

We aren't done yet. We probably need a **z** to follow tetragram 272. We need an **h** to follow tetragram 110. And we might guess that **en** would follow tetragram 92. If we look for duplicate distances among these, we come up with 146, 298, and 339 as possibilities. The choice of 146 seems good, however, when we notice that this would continue

```
354 gan (135) 111 zbes (150) 261 ond (140) 23 erea (141) 164 ufme
```

to become

```
354 gan 111 zbes 261 ond 23 erea 164 ufme 310 rks
```

Figure D.13. Quintuples at distances of 135, 150, 140, 141

```

12 enst 147 undd 297 end 59 iens 200 tder
30 hmen 165 hier 315 mit 77 alsp 218 qrbe
48 demb 183 esit 333 zes 95 oleh 236 erp
66 ncch 201 inbe 351 nut 113 zung 254 bef
69 beha 204 lten 354 gan 116 gezu 257 las
84 aufu 219 eber 369 die 131 exis 272 ten
89 satz 224 auft 374 rag 136 fuer 277 die
102 uchd 237 ieb 9 etre 149 ffen 290 deb
138 essc 273 hri 45 ftli 185 chof 326 fen
156 bren 291 nen 63 undd 203 ieas 344 che
174 nzuk 309 unf 81 tnoc 221 hans 362 ieg
228 ding 363 ter 135 ford 275 erl 38 ichi
233 mma 368 mtl 140 iche 280 unk 43 komp
246 ges 3 andt 153 scha 293 ftp 56 unkt
282 mit 39 demk 189 rieg 329 ezu 92 samm
300 uku 57 nftk 207 omma 347 auc 110 hnac
318 bew 75 ahre 225 nkla 365 mme 128 rzub
336 rau 93 chnu 243 run 5 ange 146 nehm
354 gan 111 zbes 261 ond 23 erea 164 ufme

```

D.8. Continuing the sequence

We collect sextuples of pairs in Figure D.14. Some things are becoming very clear. The odd pqr in the string beginning with 30 must be a name, since the text says that “herewith as”. Tetragram 95 in line 3 is a garble, as is tetragram 66 in line 4. We have moved some of the odd lines to the bottom. Line 8 beginning with tetragram 156 speaks of “burning” and of doing something with the ashes.

Cribs from here forward are somewhat harder. The only lines that look promising are the second line and the last line above the middle dividing line. The first might start as [ne]hmen and end as qrbe zei [ch]. We might take from the last line a need for *aufmerksam*. Both of these can be accommodated with a distance of 151, and since there are only two choices for *aufmerksam*, we feel reasonably certain that this is correct. We present septuples in Figure D.15.

Further cribs and observations: Line 3, tetragram 95, is probably *olch*. Line 4, tetragram 66, is probably *noch*. Line 4, tetragram 173, is probably *ichc*.

Figure D.14. Sextuples at distances 135, 150, 140, 141, 146

12 enst 147 undd 297 end 59 iens 200 tder 346 ver
 30 hmen 165 hier 315 mit 77 alsp 218 qrbe 364 zei
 48 demb 183 esit 333 zes 95 oleh 236 erp 4 apie
 66 ncch 201 inbe 351 nut 113 zung 254 bef 22 indl
 69 beha 204 lten 354 gan 116 gezu 257 las 25 enmi
 84 aufu 219 eber 369 die 131 exis 272 ten 40 zund
 89 satz 224 auft 374 rag 136 fuer 277 die 45 ftli
 102 uchd 237 ieb 9 etre 149 ffen 290 deb 58 rier
 138 essc 273 hri 45 ftli 185 chof 326 fen 94 meld
 156 bren 291 nen 63 undd 203 ieas 344 che 112 zers
 174 nzuk 309 unf 81 tnoc 221 hans 362 ieg 130 elan
 228 ding 363 ter 135 ford 275 erl 38 ichi 184 stun
 233 mma 368 mtl 140 iche 280 unk 43 komp 189 rieg
 246 ges 3 andt 153 scha 293 ftp 56 unkt 202 absa
 282 mit 39 demk 189 rieg 329 ezu 92 samm 238 enh
 300 uku 57 nftk 207 omma 347 auc 110 hnac 256 hfr
 318 bew 75 ahre 225 nkla 365 mme 128 rzub 274 ezu
 336 rau 93 chnu 243 run 5 ange 146 nehm 292 sei
 354 gan 111 zbes 261 ond 23 erea 164 ufme 310 rks

Figure D.15. Septuples at distances 135, 150, 140, 141, 146, 151

12 enst 147 undd 297 end 59 iens 200 tder 346 ver 119 tret
 30 hmen 165 hier 315 mit 77 alsp 218 qrbe 364 zei 137 chne
 48 demb 183 esit 333 zes 95 oleh 236 erp 4 apie 155 rest
 66 ncch 201 inbe 351 nut 113 zung 254 bef 22 indl 173 iohc
 84 aufu 219 eber 369 die 131 exis 272 ten 40 zund 191 dasw
 102 uchd 237 ieb 9 etre 149 ffen 290 deb 58 rier 209 lich
 138 essc 273 hri 45 ftli 185 chof 326 fen 94 meld 245 enu
 156 bren 291 nen 63 undd 203 ieas 344 che 112 zers 263 chl
 174 nzuk 309 unf 81 tnoc 221 hans 362 ieg 130 elan 281 gen
 228 ding 363 ter 135 ford 275 erl 38 ichi 184 stun 335 dde
 246 ges 3 andt 153 scha 293 ftp 56 unkt 202 absa 353 tza
 282 mit 39 demk 189 rieg 329 ezu 92 samm 238 enh 11 aeng
 300 uku 57 nftk 207 omma 347 auc 110 hnac 256 hfr 29 iede
 318 bew 75 ahre 225 nkla 365 mme 128 rzub 274 ezu 47 egli
 336 rau 93 chnu 243 run 5 ange 146 nehm 292 sei 65 nkoe
 354 gan 111 zbes 261 ond 23 erea 164 ufme 310 rks 83 amke

Line 2 should probably be followed with an **n** or a **t**.

Line 8: “Burn, and the ashes ..” One consults the dictionary and finds that *zerschlagen* is the word, so we would want to look for **agen** to follow this line. There is only one tetragram, **33 agen**, that would fit, at a distance of 148.

Line 12: We might look for *zusammenhaengen*.... Tetragram 159, **ende**, would fit a distance of 148.

Line 14: We almost certainly need to follow this with **ch**. Tetragram 195, **chen**, would fit a distance of 148.

We present octuples in Figure D.16. Clearly many of these have garbles, which we would expect. However, at this point (or somewhat sooner, if we were more clever), we would notice that the lines differ in tetragram sequence numbers most often by 18. Since $378 = 18 \cdot 21$, we guess that the message is blocked in 21 lines, 18 tetragrams to the line, and we include in our strings of putative German all the lines, even if they don’t necessarily look like good German at this point.

We now look in front of our sequences, after first removing all 168 tetragrams that appear in Figure D.16.

We guess that tetragram 12 might be preceded by a **d**. For this we get distances of 30, 58, 84, 142, 294, and 358.

We guess that tetragram 102 might be preceded by a **a**. For this we get distances of 35, 74, 86, 94, 95, 142, 214, 247, 272, 336, 348, 373, and 377.

We guess that tetragram 300 might be preceded by a **z**. For this we get distances of 22, 101, 142, 211, and 246.

The common value here is 142, and in Figure D.17 we present sequences of length nine.

From the remaining tetragrams, the only good choice to follow tetragram 141, **quit**, would be tetragram 276, **tun** at a distance of 135. This give us Figure D.18.

Now for some more cribbing.

At the end of line 1 we might expect a **t**.

At the end of line 2 we might expect an **r**.

At the end of line 7 we might expect a **g**.

At the end of line 8 we might expect an **mma**.

At the end of line 11 we might expect an **ma**.

Figure D.16. Octuples at distances 135, 150, 140, 141, 146, 151, 148

12	147	297	59	200	346	119	267
enst	undd	end	iens	tder	ver	tret	eru
30	165	315	77	218	364	137	285
hmen	hier	mit	alsp	qrbe	zei	chne	und
48	183	333	95	236	4	155	303
demb	esit	zes	oleh	erp	apie	rest	reb
66	201	351	113	254	22	173	321
ncch	inbe	nut	zung	bef	indl	iohc	neh
84	219	369	131	272	40	191	339
aufu	eber	die	exis	ten	zund	dasw	irk
102	237	9	149	290	58	209	357
uchd	ieb	etre	ffen	deb	rier	lich	eun
120	255	27	167	308	76	227	375
ftst	ich	wcer	teru	nda	nwei	sung	enk
138	273	45	185	326	94	245	15
essc	hri	ftli	chof	fen	meld	enu	ndso
156	291	63	203	344	112	263	33
bren	nen	undd	ieas	che	zers	chl	agen
174	309	81	221	362	130	281	51
nzuk	unf	tnoc	hans	ieg	elan	gen	denp
192	327	99	239	2	148	299	69
nung	sie	bitt	eim	geda	eeht	nis	beha
210	345	117	257	20	166	317	87
bren	nun	bser	las	sver	bren	nen	komm
228	363	135	275	38	184	335	105
ding	ter	ford	erl	ichi	stun	dde	renk
246	3	153	293	56	202	353	123
ges	andt	scha	ftp	unkt	absa	tza	usge
264	21	171	311	74	220	371	141
ist	enre	gist	era	bree	hnun	gen	quit
282	39	189	329	92	238	11	159
mit	demk	rieg	ezu	samm	enh	aeng	ende
300	57	207	347	110	256	29	177
uku	nftk	omma	auc	hnac	hfr	iede	nssc
318	75	225	365	128	274	47	195
bew	ahre	nkla	mme	rzub	ezu	egli	chen
336	93	243	5	146	292	65	213
rau	chnu	run	ange	nehm	sei	nkoe	nnte
354	111	261	23	164	310	83	231
gan	zbes	ond	erea	ufme	rks	amke	itzu
372	129	279	41	182	328	101	249
htl	ichd	ers	chon	vcrh	and	enen	pap

Figure D.17. Length nine sequences, distances 142,135,150,140,141,146,151,148

248	12	147	297	59	200	346	119	267
mdi	enst	undd	end	iens	tder	ver	tret	eru
266	30	165	315	77	218	364	137	285
gna	hmen	hier	mit	alsp	qrbe	zei	chne	und
284	48	183	333	95	236	4	155	303
ach	demb	esit	zes	oleh	erp	apie	rest	reb
302	66	201	351	113	254	22	173	321
tzt	ncch	inbe	nut	zung	bef	indl	iohc	neh
320	84	219	369	131	272	40	191	339
mer	aufu	eber	die	exis	ten	zund	dasw	irk
338	102	237	9	149	290	58	209	357
iea	uchd	ieb	etre	ffen	deb	rier	lich	eun
356	120	255	27	167	308	76	227	375
hri	ftst	ich	wcer	teru	nda	nwei	sung	enk
374	138	273	45	185	326	94	245	15
rag	essc	hri	ftli	chof	fen	meld	enu	ndso
14	156	291	63	203	344	112	263	33
sver	bren	nen	undd	ieas	che	zers	chl	agen
32	174	309	81	221	362	130	281	51
undi	nzuk	unf	tnoc	hans	ieg	elan	gen	denp
50	192	327	99	239	2	148	299	69
eieh	nung	sie	bitt	eim	geda	eeht	nis	beha
68	210	345	117	257	20	166	317	87
nver	bren	nun	bser	las	sver	bren	nen	komm
86	228	363	135	275	38	184	335	105
unbe	ding	ter	ford	erl	ichi	stun	dde	renk
104	246	3	153	293	56	202	353	123
eser	ges	andt	scha	ftp	unkt	absa	tza	usge
122	264	21	171	311	74	220	371	141
ersl	ist	enre	gist	era	bree	hnun	gen	quit
140	282	39	189	329	92	238	11	159
iche	mit	demk	rieg	ezu	samm	enh	aeng	ende
158	300	57	207	347	110	256	29	177
llez	uku	nftk	omma	auc	hnac	hfr	iede	nssc
176	318	75	225	365	128	274	47	195
enzu	bew	ahre	nkla	mme	rzub	ezu	egli	chen
194	336	93	243	5	146	292	65	213
dode	rau	chnu	run	ange	nehm	sei	nkoe	nnte
212	354	111	261	23	164	310	83	231
rung	gan	zbes	ond	erea	ufme	rks	amke	itzu
230	372	129	279	41	182	328	101	249
nsic	htl	ichd	ers	chon	vcrh	and	enen	pap

Figure D.18. Length ten sequences, distances
142,135,150,140,141,146,151,148,145

14	156	291	63	203	344	112	263	33	168
sver	bren	nen	undd	ieas	che	zers	chl	agen	punk
32	174	309	81	221	362	130	281	51	186
undi	nzuk	unf	tnoc	hans	ieg	elan	gen	denp	apie
50	192	327	99	239	2	148	299	69	204
eieh	nung	sie	bitt	eim	geda	eeht	nis	beha	lten
68	210	345	117	257	20	166	317	87	222
nver	bren	nun	bser	las	sver	bren	nen	komm	adon
86	228	363	135	275	38	184	335	105	240
unbe	ding	ter	ford	erl	ichi	stun	dde	renk	enn
104	246	3	153	293	56	202	353	123	258
eser	ges	andt	scha	ftp	unkt	absa	tza	usge	nom
122	264	21	171	311	74	220	371	141	276
ersl	ist	enre	gist	era	bree	hnun	gen	quit	tun
140	282	39	189	329	92	238	11	159	294
iche	mit	demk	rieg	ezu	samm	enh	aeng	ende	nko
158	300	57	207	347	110	256	29	177	312
llez	uku	nftk	omma	auc	hnac	hfr	iede	nssc	hiu
176	318	75	225	365	128	274	47	195	330
enzu	bew	ahre	nkla	mme	rzub	ezu	egli	chen	kem
194	336	93	243	5	146	292	65	213	348
dode	rau	chnu	run	ange	nehm	sei	nkoe	nnte	kom
212	354	111	261	23	164	310	83	231	366
rung	gan	zbes	ond	erea	ufme	rks	amke	itzu	sch
230	372	129	279	41	182	328	101	249	6
nsic	htl	ichd	ers	chon	vcrh	and	enen	pap	iere
248	12	147	297	59	200	346	119	267	24
mdi	enst	undd	end	iens	tder	ver	tret	eru	nser
266	30	165	315	77	218	364	137	285	42
gna	hmen	hier	mit	alsp	qrbe	zei	chne	und	dess
284	48	183	333	95	236	4	155	303	60
ach	demb	esit	zes	oleh	erp	apie	rest	reb	ende
302	66	201	351	113	254	22	173	321	78
tzt	ncch	inbe	nut	zung	bef	indl	iohc	neh	iffr
320	84	219	369	131	272	40	191	339	96
mer	aufu	eber	die	exis	ten	zund	dasw	irk	ondi
338	102	237	9	149	290	58	209	357	114
iea	uchd	ieb	etre	ffen	deb	rier	lich	eun	dtel
356	120	255	27	167	308	76	227	375	132
hri	ftst	ich	wcer	teru	nda	nwei	sung	enk	omma
374	138	273	45	185	326	94	245	15	150
rag	essc	hri	ftli	chof	fen	meld	enu	ndso	dann

These latter two provide some clue, since there are only two tetragrams for line 8, namely 70, **mmav** and 233, **mma** , at distances 154 and 84.

Further, there are only two tetragrams for line 11, namely 106, **main**, 124, **masc**, and 301, **mac** , at distances 136, 154, and 331.

We go with the common 154, noting that we get the expected letters for lines 1, 2, and 7.

Now, in the last line, we need to find a tetragram that begins with **h**, and there are only three left: 71, **hden**, 260, **hen** , and 341, **hal** , at distances 145, 334, and 37. All three are legal, in none would require use to use a tetragram that we have already used, but 145 produces clearly superior German.

With the verb at the end of line 3, we suspect we need to follow with **unk**, which would now be only tetragram 280 at a distance of 155.

This works.

Line 12 now requires the word *punkt* to be completed, for a distance of 147 to tetragram 211.

The trail seems to stall at this point, so we work on the other end of the strings. Line 9 needs a vowel preceding tetragram 158. We try the **uera**, since it's the only **a** left, and note that this also matches up our long-delayed **klam** and **mer**.

We now have *oheimdienst* in line 5. Surely the leading **o** is a garble, and this is meant to be *geheimdienst*. Only 0 **nscg**, which must also be garbled, and 325 **eng** would work for this. The differences are 98 and 151. We try both and the 151 produces more consistent German.

At this point we have only one column left. Brute force on a sliding strip of tetragrams, or else a guess that tetragram 0 to 145 with a distance of 145 fits the pattern of the cryptogram, yields the final message.

D.9. Putting together the final message

We present below the text of the message. Our sequence of differences is

145, 151, 150, 142, 135, 150, 140, 141, 146, 151, 148, 135, 154, 145, 155, 147, 138
which we display in Figures D.19, D.21, and D.23.

We include Figure D.21 to indicate what the tetragrams would look like in the original message as written by the German code clerk. We

note that the method of *encryption* is still unclear from this, since the choice of trigrams with a trailing blank versus tetragrams must obviously be made after rearranging.

First we break this on word boundaries to produce Figure D.24. Then we look hard at the German to rearrange the lines to produce the final message of Figure D.25. In this last figure we have indicated in bold the letters that were garbled in the original. The garblings come directly from Yardley [**Yar31**], and it is not clear whether they were in the original message or whether these garblings came from the printing of the book.

Finally, we offer the translation from Yardley (pp. 151-152) in Figure D.26, and as a final thought, for those who can read the German, we remark that the opening ten lines of the original text seem to exemplify the famous comment from Mark Twain:

Whenever the literary German dives into a sentence, that is the last you are going to see of him till he emerges on the other side of his Atlantic with his verb in his mouth.

(A Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur's Court)

Figure D.19. Length eighteen sequences

0	145	296	68	210	345	117	257	20	
nscg	enan	nte	nver	bren	nun	bser	las	sver	
	166	317	87	222	376	143	298	67	205
	bren	nen	komm	adon	ich	imhi	nbl	ieka	ufku
18	163	314	86	228	363	135	275	38	
ahru	ngni	eht	unbe	ding	ter	ford	erl	ichi	
	184	335	105	240	16	161	316	85	223
	stun	dde	renk	enn	tnia	nahm	edu	rchu	nsur
36	181	332	104	246	3	153	293	56	
onde	nzmi	tdi	eser	ges	andt	scha	ftp	unkt	
	202	353	123	258	34	179	334	103	241
	absa	tza	usge	nom	menb	leib	env	orla	euf
54	199	350	122	264	21	171	311	74	
ierz	ubez	ond	ersl	ist	enre	gist	era	bree	
	220	371	141	276	52	197	352	121	259
	hnun	gen	quit	tun	genk	onto	bue	cher	und
72	217	368	140	282	39	189	329	92	
bitt	esae	mtl	iche	mit	demk	rieg	ezu	samm	
	238	11	159	294	70	215	370	139	277
	enh	aeng	ende	nko	mmav	oral	lem	also	die
90	235	8	158	300	57	207	347	110	
tztu	ndf	uera	llez	uku	nftk	omma	auc	hnac	
	256	29	177	312	88	233	10	157	295
	hfr	iede	nssc	hiu	ssko	mma	stre	ngst	ess
108	253	26	176	318	75	225	365	128	
till	sch	weig	enzu	bew	ahre	nkla	mme	rzub	
	274	47	195	330	106	251	28	175	313
	ezu	egli	chen	kem	main	ihr	enha	ende	nbe
126	271	44	194	336	93	243	5	146	
romi	tti	eren	dode	rau	chnu	run	ange	nehm	
	292	65	213	348	124	269	46	193	331
	sei	nkoe	nnte	kom	masc	for	tsor	gfae	lti
144	289	62	212	354	111	261	23	164	
rera	ufb	ewnh	rung	gan	zbes	ond	erea	ufme	
	310	83	231	366	142	287	64	211	349
	rks	amke	itzu	sch	enke	nis	tpun	ktab	sat
162	307	80	230	372	129	279	41	182	
zbit	ted	iehi	nsic	htl	ichd	ers	chon	vcrh	
	328	101	249	6	160	305	82	229	367
	and	enen	pap	iere	erfo	lgt	eaus	fueh	run
180	325	98	248	12	147	297	59	200	
aufd	eng	ohei	mdi	enst	undd	end	iens	tder	
	346	119	267	24	178	323	100	247	7
	ver	tret	eru	nser	esge	ner	alun	dad	mira
198	343	116	266	30	165	315	77	218	
enft	ige	gezu	gna	hmen	hier	mit	alsp	qrbe	
	364	137	285	42	196	341	118	265	25
	zei	chne	und	dess	euin	hal	tzus	amm	enmi
216	361	134	284	48	183	333	95	236	
enoc	him	mern	ach	demb	esit	zes	oleh	erp	
	4	155	303	60	214	359	136	283	43
	apie	rest	reb	ende	nfei	nde	fuer	uns	komp
234	1	152	302	66	201	351	113	254	
ign	ochd	ieje	tzst	ncch	inbe	nut	zung	bef	
	22	173	321	78	232	377	154	301	61
	indl	iohc	neh	iffr	ebue	che	rkom	mac	cdes

Figure D.20. Length eighteen sequences (continued)

252	19	170	320	84	219	369	131	272	
lst	abes	klam	mer	aufu	eber	die	exis	ten	
	40	191	339	96	250	17	172	319	79
	zund	dasw	irk	ondi	eso	rver	tret	eri	stje
270	37	188	338	102	237	9	149	290	
sow	eite	rsow	iea	uchd	ieb	etre	ffen	deb	
	58	209	357	114	268	35	190	337	97
	rier	lich	eun	dtel	egr	aphi	acho	kor	resp
288	55	206	356	120	255	27	167	308	
und	gohe	imac	hri	ftst	ich	wcer	teru	nda	
	76	227	375	132	286	53	208	355	115
	nwei	sung	enk	omma	der	endu	rcha	uss	iche
306	73	224	374	138	273	45	185	326	
gdi	eses	auft	rag	essc	hri	ftli	chof	fen	
	94	245	15	150	304	71	226	373	133
	meld	enu	ndso	dann	auc	hden	vorl	ieg	ende
324	91	242	14	156	291	63	203	344	
gun	dres	tlo	sver	bren	nen	undd	ieas	che	
	112	263	33	168	322	89	244	13	151
	zers	chl	agen	punk	tab	satz	esg	ehoe	renh
342	109	260	32	174	309	81	221	362	
fin	dlic	hen	undi	nzuk	unf	tnoc	hans	ieg	
	130	281	51	186	340	107	262	31	169
	elan	gen	denp	apie	rek	omma	der	enau	fbew
360	127	278	50	192	327	99	239	2	
tdi	eser	bez	eieh	nung	sie	bitt	eim	geda	
	148	299	69	204	358	125	280	49	187
	eeht	nis	beha	lten	wol	lenp	unk	tseh	luss

Figure D.21. Length eighteen sequences, rearranged

72	217	368	140	282	39	189	329	92	
bitt	esae	mtl	iche	mit	demk	rieg	ezu	samm	
	238	11	159	294	70	215	370	139	277
	enh	aeng	ende	nko	mmav	oral	lem	also	die
180	325	98	248	12	147	297	59	200	
aufd	eng	ohei	mdi	enst	undd	end	iens	tder	
	346	119	267	24	178	323	100	247	7
	ver	tret	eru	nser	esge	ner	alun	dad	mira
252	19	170	320	84	219	369	131	272	
lst	abes	klam	mer	aufu	eber	die	exis	ten	
	40	191	339	96	250	17	172	319	79
	zund	dasw	irk	ondi	eso	rver	tret	eri	stje
90	235	8	158	300	57	207	347	110	
tztu	ndf	uera	llez	uku	nftk	omma	auc	hnac	
	256	29	177	312	88	233	10	157	295
	hfr	iede	nssc	hiu	ssko	mma	stre	ngst	ess
108	253	26	176	318	75	225	365	128	
till	sch	weig	enzu	bew	ahre	nkla	mme	rzub	
	274	47	195	330	106	251	28	175	313
	ezu	egli	chen	kem	main	ihr	enha	ende	nbe
342	109	260	32	174	309	81	221	362	
fin	dlic	hen	undi	nzuk	unf	tnoc	hans	ieg	
	130	281	51	186	340	107	262	31	169
	elan	gen	denp	apie	rek	omma	der	enau	fbew
18	163	314	86	228	363	135	275	38	
ahru	ngni	eht	unbe	ding	ter	ford	erl	ichi	
	184	335	105	240	16	161	316	85	223
	stun	dde	renk	enn	tnia	nahm	edu	rchu	nsur
216	361	134	284	48	183	333	95	236	
enoc	him	mern	ach	demb	esit	zes	oleh	erp	
	4	155	303	60	214	359	136	283	43
	apie	rest	reb	ende	nfei	nde	fuer	uns	komp
126	271	44	194	336	93	243	5	146	
romi	tti	eren	dode	rau	chnu	run	ange	nehm	
	292	65	213	348	124	269	46	193	331
	sei	nkoe	nnte	kom	masc	for	tsor	gfae	lti
324	91	242	14	156	291	63	203	344	
gun	dres	tlo	sver	bren	nen	undd	ieas	che	
	112	263	33	168	322	89	244	13	151
	zers	chl	agen	punk	tab	satz	esg	ehoe	renh
54	199	350	122	264	21	171	311	74	
ierz	ubez	ond	ersl	ist	enre	gist	era	bree	
	220	371	141	276	52	197	352	121	259
	hnun	gen	quit	tun	genk	onto	bue	cher	und
270	37	188	338	102	237	9	149	290	
sow	eite	rsow	iea	uchd	ieb	etre	ffen	deb	
	58	209	357	114	268	35	190	337	97
	rier	lich	eun	dtel	egr	aphi	acho	kor	resp
36	181	332	104	246	3	153	293	56	
onde	nzmi	tdi	eser	ges	andt	scha	ftp	unkt	
	202	353	123	258	34	179	334	103	241
	absa	tza	usge	nom	menb	leib	env	orla	euf
234	1	152	302	66	201	351	113	254	
ign	ochd	ieje	tzt	ncch	inbe	nut	zung	bef	
	22	173	321	78	232	377	154	301	61
	indl	iohc	neh	iffr	ebue	che	rkom	mac	cdes

Figure D.22. Length eighteen sequences rearranged (continued)

288	55	206	356	120	255	27	167	308	
und	gohe	imac	hri	ftst	ich	wcer	teru	nda	
	76	227	375	132	286	53	208	355	115
	nwei	sung	enk	omma	der	endu	rcha	uss	iche
144	289	62	212	354	111	261	23	164	
rera	ufb	ewnh	rung	gan	zbes	ond	ere	ufme	
	310	83	231	366	142	287	64	211	349
	rks	amke	itzu	sch	enke	nis	tpun	ktab	sat
162	307	80	230	372	129	279	41	182	
zbit	ted	iehi	nsic	htl	ichd	ers	chon	vcrh	
	328	101	249	6	160	305	82	229	367
	and	enen	pap	iere	erfo	lgt	eaus	fueh	run
306	73	224	374	138	273	45	185	326	
gdi	eses	auft	rag	essc	hri	ftli	chof	fen	
	94	245	15	150	304	71	226	373	133
	meld	enu	ndso	dann	auc	hden	vorl	ieg	ende
0	145	296	68	210	345	117	257	20	
nscg	enan	nte	nver	bren	nun	bser	las	sver	
	166	317	87	222	376	143	298	67	205
	bren	nen	komm	adon	ich	imhi	nbl	ieka	ufku
198	343	116	266	30	165	315	77	218	
enft	ige	gezu	gna	hmen	hier	mit	alps	qrbe	
	364	137	285	42	196	341	118	265	25
	zei	chne	und	dess	euin	hal	tzus	amm	enmi
360	127	278	50	192	327	99	239	2	
tdi	eser	bez	eieh	nung	sie	bitt	eim	geda	
	148	299	69	204	358	125	280	49	187
	eeht	nis	beha	lten	wol	lenp	unk	tseh	luss

Figure D.23. Decrypted message

bitt esae mtl iche mit demk rieg ezu samm enh aeng ende nko mmav oral lem also die
 aufd eng ohei mdi enst undd end iens tder ver tret eru nser esge ner alun dad mira
 lst abes klam mer aufu eber die exis ten zund dasw irk ondi eso rver tret eri stje
 tztu ndf uera llez uku nftk omma auc hnac hfr iede nssc hiu ssko mma stre ngst ess
 till sch weig enzu bew ahre nkla mme rzub ezu egli chen kem main ihr enha ende nbe
 fin dlic hen undi nzuk unf tnoc hans ieg elan gen denp apie rek omma der enau fbew
 ahru ngni eht unbe ding ter ford erl ichi stun dde renk enn tnia nahm edu rchu nsur
 enoc him mern ach demb esit zes oleh erp apie rest reb ende nfei nde fuer uns komp
 romi tti eren dode rau chnu run ange nehm sei nkoe nnte kom masc for tsor gfae lti
 gun dres tlo sver bren nen undd ieas che zers chl agen punk tab satz esg ehoe renh
 ierz ubez ond ersl ist enre gist era bree hnun gen quit tun genk onto bue cher und
 sow eite rsow iea uchd ieb etre ffen deb rier lich eun dtel egr aphi acho kor resp
 onde nzmi tdi eser ges andt scha ftp unkt absa tza usge nom menb leib env orla euf
 ign ochd ieje tzt nech inbe nut zung bef indl iohc neh iffr ebue che rkom mac cdes
 und gohe imac hri ftst ich wcer teru nda nwei sung enk omma der endu rcha uss iche
 rera ufb ewnh rung gan zbes ond erea ufme rks amke itzu sch enke nis tpun ktab sat
 zbit ted iehi nsic htl ichd ers chon vcrh and enen pap iere erfo lgt eaus fueh run
 gdi eses auft rag essc hri ftli chof fen meld enu ndso dann auc hden vorl ieg ende
 nscg enan nte nver bren nun bser las sver bren nen komm adon ich imhi nbl ieka ufku
 enft ige gezu gna hmen hier mit alsp qrbe zei chne und dess euin hal tzus amm enmi
 tdi eser bez eieh nung sie bitt eim geda eeht nis beha lten wol lenp unk tseh luss

Figure D.24. Decrypted message broken at word boundaries

bitte saemtliche mit dem kriege zusammen haengenden komma vorallem also die
 auf den goheimdienst und den dienst der vertreter unseres general und admira
 l stabes klammer auf ueber die existenz und das wirkondie sor vertreter istje
 tzt und fuer alle zukunft komma auch nach friedensschiuss komma strengstes s
 tillschweigen zu bewahren klammer zu bezueglichen kem main ihren haenden be
 findlichen und in zukunft noch ansiegelangenden papiere komma deren auf bew
 ahrung nicht unbedingterforderlichistundderen kenntnia nahme durch unsur
 e noch immer nach dem besitze s oleh er papieres trebenden feinde fuer uns komp
 romittieren dode rauch nur unangenehm sein koennte komma sc fort sorg faelti
 g und rest los verbrennen und die asche zerschlagen punkt absatz es gehoeren h
 ierzu bezonders listen register abrechnungen quittungen kontobuecher und
 soweiter sowie auch die betreffen debrierlich eund telegraphiacho korresp
 ondenz mit dieser gesandtschaft punkt absatz ausgenommen bleiben vorlaeuf
 ig noch die jetzt nech in benutzung befindl ioh cneh iffre buecher komma c cdes
 und goheim achriftstich wcer ter und anweisungen komma deren durch aussiche
 r er auf bewnhrung ganz besondere aufmerksamkeit zu schenken ist punkt absat
 z bitte die hinsichtlich der schon vrhandenen papiere erfolgte aus fuehr un
 g dieses auftrages schriftlich offenmelden und so dann auch den vorliegende
 n scgenannten verbrennun bser lass verbrennen komma don ich im hinblik aufku
 enftige gezug nahmen hier mit als pqr bezeichne und desseu inhalt zusammen mi
 t dieser bezeichnung sie bitte im gedaeehntnis behalten wollen punkt seh luss

Figure D.25. Final message

bitte saemtliche mit dem kriege zusammenhaengenden komma vorallem also die
 auf den geheimdienst und den dienst der vertreter unseres general und admira
 lstabes klammer auf ueber die existenz und das wirkon dieser vertreter ist je
 tzt und fuer alle zukunft komma auch nach friedensschluss komma strengstes s
 tillschweigen zu bewahren klammer zu bezueglichen komma in ihren haenden be
 findlichen und in zukunft noch ansiegelangenden papiere komma deren auf bew
 ahrung nicht unbedingt erforderlichistundderen kenntnis nahme durch unsur
 e noch immer nach dem besitze solcher papieres trebenden feinde fuer uns komp
 romittierende der auch nur unangenehm sein koennte komma so fort sorg faelti
 g und rest los verbrennen und die asche zerschlagen punkt absatz es gehoeren h
 ierzu besonders listen register abrechnungen quittungen kontobuecher und
 soweit sowie auch die betreffen debrierliche und telegraphische korresp
 ondenz mit dieser gesandtschaft punkt absatz ausgenommen bleiben vorlaeuft
 ig noch die jetzt noch in benutzung befindl *ich en* chiffrebuecher komma codes
 und geheim schriftstich woerter und anweisungen komma deren durch aussiche
 r er auf beaehrung ganz besondere aufmerksamkeit zu schenken ist punkt absat
 z bitte die hinsichtlich der schon verhandenen papiere erfolgte aus fuehrun
 g dieses auftrages schriftlich offen melden und so dann auch den vorliegende
 n sogenannten verbrennung *gs* erlass verbrennen komma don ich im hinblick aufku
 enftige gezug nahmen hier mit als pqr bezeichne und desseu inhalt zusammen mi
 t dieser bezeichnung sie bitte im gedaechnis behalten wollen punkt schluss

Figure D.26. The translated message

Please carefully and immediately burn without remainder, and destroy the ashes of, all papers connected with the war, the preservation of which is not absolutely necessary, especially papers now in your hands or reaching you hereafter which have to do with the Secret Service and the service of the representatives of our General Staff and Admiralty Staff (strictest silence concerning the existence and activity of these representatives is to be observed now and for all future time, even after the conclusion of peace) which might be compromising or even unpleasant for us if they came to the knowledge of our enemies, who are still endeavoring to obtain possession of such papers.

Lists, registers, accounts, receipts, account books, etc., are especially included in these papers, as well as correspondence with this Embassy by letter and telegraph on the subjects mentioned.

Cipher books, codes and cipher keys and directions that are still in use are excepted for the present, and most particular attention must be paid to keeping them in absolute safety.

Please report in writing en claire the execution of this order so far as it relates to papers now on hand and then burn this so-called order for burning, which, for further reference, I herewith designate as PQR, and the contents of which together with this designation you will please retain in memory.

AES Code

E.1. Introduction

This is a revision of the test vectors and code that appears in the back of [DR02] as Appendices D and E.

E.2. Introduction

Appendix D.2 of [DR02] has a trace of Rijndael with plaintext blocks of 128 bits and key size 128. As indicated there (and changed slightly here), the labels on the output are

- *r* is the round number
- `input` is the input to the cipher
- `start` is the state (the 128-bit block that starts with the plaintext input and is traced through the encryption process to result in the ciphertext) at the start of round *r*
- `s_box` is the state after the `s_box` substitution
- `s_row` is the state after the shift-row transformation
- `m_col` is the state after the mix-column transformation
- `k_sch` is the key schedule value for round *r*
- `output` is the state after the encryption, that is, the ciphertext

E.3. A Revised Appendix D.2

This is essentially the same as Appendix D.2. We have changed the labelling slightly, we have traced both the encryption and the decryption (rather than just the encryption), and we have included a translation of the hex bytes into printable characters. The ENC label is for the encryption of the plaintext, DEC label is for the subsequent decryption.

block length 128 key length 128

TEXT 32 43 f6 a8 88 5a 30 8d 31 31 98 a2 e0 37 07 34

KEY 2b 7e 15 16 28 ae d2 a6 ab f7 15 88 09 cf 4f 3c

ROUND	0	input	32 43 f6 a8 88 5a 30 8d 31 31 98 a2 e0 37 07 34
ROUND	0	k_sch	2b 7e 15 16 28 ae d2 a6 ab f7 15 88 09 cf 4f 3c

ROUND	1	start	19 3d e3 be a0 f4 e2 2b 9a c6 8d 2a e9 f8 48 08
ROUND	1	s_box	d4 27 11 ae e0 bf 98 f1 b8 b4 5d e5 1e 41 52 30
ROUND	1	s_row	d4 bf 5d 30 e0 b4 52 ae b8 41 11 f1 1e 27 98 e5
ROUND	1	m_col	04 66 81 e5 e0 cb 19 9a 48 f8 d3 7a 28 06 26 4c
ROUND	1	k_sch	a0 fa fe 17 88 54 2c b1 23 a3 39 39 2a 6c 76 05

ROUND	2	start	a4 9c 7f f2 68 9f 35 2b 6b 5b ea 43 02 6a 50 49
ROUND	2	s_box	49 de d2 89 45 db 96 f1 7f 39 87 1a 77 02 53 3b
ROUND	2	s_row	49 db 87 3b 45 39 53 89 7f 02 d2 f1 77 de 96 1a
ROUND	2	m_col	58 4d ca f1 1b 4b 5a ac db e7 ca a8 1b 6b b0 e5
ROUND	2	k_sch	f2 c2 95 f2 7a 96 b9 43 59 35 80 7a 73 59 f6 7f

ROUND	3	start	aa 8f 5f 03 61 dd e3 ef 82 d2 4a d2 68 32 46 9a
ROUND	3	s_box	ac 73 cf 7b ef c1 11 df 13 b5 d6 b5 45 23 5a b8
ROUND	3	s_row	ac c1 d6 b8 ef b5 5a 7b 13 23 cf df 45 73 11 b5
ROUND	3	m_col	75 ec 09 93 20 0b 63 33 53 c0 cf 7c bb 25 d0 dc
ROUND	3	k_sch	3d 80 47 7d 47 16 fe 3e 1e 23 7e 44 6d 7a 88 3b

ROUND	4	start	48 6c 4e ee 67 1d 9d 0d 4d e3 b1 38 d6 5f 58 e7
ROUND	4	s_box	52 50 2f 28 85 a4 5e d7 e3 11 c8 07 f6 cf 6a 94
ROUND	4	s_row	52 a4 c8 94 85 11 6a 28 e3 cf 2f d7 f6 50 5e 07
ROUND	4	m_col	0f d6 da a9 60 31 38 bf 6f c0 10 6b 5e b3 13 01
ROUND	4	k_sch	ef 44 a5 41 a8 52 5b 7f b6 71 25 3b db 0b ad 00

ROUND	5	start	e0 92 7f e8 c8 63 63 c0 d9 b1 35 50 85 b8 be 01
ROUND	5	s_box	e1 4f d2 9b e8 fb fb ba 35 c8 96 53 97 6c ae 7c
ROUND	5	s_row	e1 fb 96 7c e8 c8 ae 9b 35 6c d2 ba 97 4f fb 53
ROUND	5	m_col	25 d1 a9 ad bd 11 d1 68 b6 3a 33 8e 4c 4c c0 b0

ROUND	5	k_sch	d4 d1 c6 f8 7c 83 9d 87 ca f2 b8 bc 11 f9 15 bc
ROUND	6	start	f1 00 6f 55 c1 92 4c ef 7c c8 8b 32 5d b5 d5 0c
ROUND	6	s_box	a1 63 a8 fc 78 4f 29 df 10 e8 3d 23 4c d5 03 fe
ROUND	6	s_row	a1 4f 3d fe 78 e8 03 fc 10 d5 a8 df 4c 63 29 23
ROUND	6	m_col	4b 86 8d 6d 2c 4a 89 80 33 9d f4 e8 37 d2 18 d8
ROUND	6	k_sch	6d 88 a3 7a 11 0b 3e fd db f9 86 41 ca 00 93 fd
ROUND	7	start	26 0e 2e 17 3d 41 b7 7d e8 64 72 a9 fd d2 8b 25
ROUND	7	s_box	f7 ab 31 f0 27 83 a9 ff 9b 43 40 d3 54 b5 3d 3f
ROUND	7	s_row	f7 83 40 3f 27 43 3d f0 9b b5 31 ff 54 ab a9 d3
ROUND	7	m_col	14 15 b5 bf 46 16 15 ec 27 46 56 d7 34 2a d8 43
ROUND	7	k_sch	4e 54 f7 0e 5f 5f c9 f3 84 a6 4f b2 4e a6 dc 4f
ROUND	8	start	5a 41 42 b1 19 49 dc 1f a3 e0 19 65 7a 8c 04 0c
ROUND	8	s_box	be 83 2c c8 d4 3b 86 c0 0a e1 d4 4d da 64 f2 fe
ROUND	8	s_row	be 3b d4 fe d4 e1 f2 c8 0a 64 2c c0 da 83 86 4d
ROUND	8	m_col	00 51 2f d1 b1 c8 89 ff 54 76 6d cd fa 1b 99 ea
ROUND	8	k_sch	ea d2 73 21 b5 8d ba d2 31 2b f5 60 7f 8d 29 2f
ROUND	9	start	ea 83 5c f0 04 45 33 2d 65 5d 98 ad 85 96 b0 c5
ROUND	9	s_box	87 ec 4a 8c f2 6e c3 d8 4d 4c 46 95 97 90 e7 a6
ROUND	9	s_row	87 6e 46 a6 f2 4c e7 8c 4d 90 4a d8 97 ec c3 95
ROUND	9	m_col	47 37 94 ed 40 d4 e4 a5 a3 70 3a a6 4c 9f 42 bc
ROUND	9	k_sch	ac 77 66 f3 19 fa dc 21 28 d1 29 41 57 5c 00 6e
ROUND	10	start	eb 40 f2 1e 59 2e 38 84 8b a1 13 e7 1b c3 42 d2
ROUND	10	s_box	e9 09 89 72 cb 31 07 5f 3d 32 7d 94 af 2e 2c b5
ROUND	10	s_row	e9 31 7d b5 cb 32 2c 72 3d 2e 89 5f af 09 07 94
ROUND	10	k_sch	d0 14 f9 a8 c9 ee 25 89 e1 3f 0c c8 b6 63 0c a6
ROUND	10	output	39 25 84 1d 02 dc 09 fb dc 11 85 97 19 6a 0b 32
ENC	39 25 84 1d 02 dc 09 fb dc 11 85 97 19 6a 0b 32		
ROUND	10	output	39 25 84 1d 02 dc 09 fb dc 11 85 97 19 6a 0b 32
ROUND	10	k_sch	d0 14 f9 a8 c9 ee 25 89 e1 3f 0c c8 b6 63 0c a6
ROUND	10	s_row	e9 31 7d b5 cb 32 2c 72 3d 2e 89 5f af 09 07 94
ROUND	10	s_box	e9 09 89 72 cb 31 07 5f 3d 32 7d 94 af 2e 2c b5
ROUND	10	start	eb 40 f2 1e 59 2e 38 84 8b a1 13 e7 1b c3 42 d2
ROUND	9	k_sch	ac 77 66 f3 19 fa dc 21 28 d1 29 41 57 5c 00 6e
ROUND	9	m_col	47 37 94 ed 40 d4 e4 a5 a3 70 3a a6 4c 9f 42 bc
ROUND	9	s_row	87 6e 46 a6 f2 4c e7 8c 4d 90 4a d8 97 ec c3 95
ROUND	9	s_box	87 ec 4a 8c f2 6e c3 d8 4d 4c 46 95 97 90 e7 a6

ROUND	9	start	ea 83 5c f0 04 45 33 2d 65 5d 98 ad 85 96 b0 c5
ROUND	8	k_sch	ea d2 73 21 b5 8d ba d2 31 2b f5 60 7f 8d 29 2f
ROUND	8	m_col	00 51 2f d1 b1 c8 89 ff 54 76 6d cd fa 1b 99 ea
ROUND	8	s_row	be 3b d4 fe d4 e1 f2 c8 0a 64 2c c0 da 83 86 4d
ROUND	8	s_box	be 83 2c c8 d4 3b 86 c0 0a e1 d4 4d da 64 f2 fe
ROUND	8	start	5a 41 42 b1 19 49 dc 1f a3 e0 19 65 7a 8c 04 0c
ROUND	7	k_sch	4e 54 f7 0e 5f 5f c9 f3 84 a6 4f b2 4e a6 dc 4f
ROUND	7	m_col	14 15 b5 bf 46 16 15 ec 27 46 56 d7 34 2a d8 43
ROUND	7	s_row	f7 83 40 3f 27 43 3d f0 9b b5 31 ff 54 ab a9 d3
ROUND	7	s_box	f7 ab 31 f0 27 83 a9 ff 9b 43 40 d3 54 b5 3d 3f
ROUND	7	start	26 0e 2e 17 3d 41 b7 7d e8 64 72 a9 fd d2 8b 25
ROUND	6	k_sch	6d 88 a3 7a 11 0b 3e fd db f9 86 41 ca 00 93 fd
ROUND	6	m_col	4b 86 8d 6d 2c 4a 89 80 33 9d f4 e8 37 d2 18 d8
ROUND	6	s_row	a1 4f 3d fe 78 e8 03 fc 10 d5 a8 df 4c 63 29 23
ROUND	6	s_box	a1 63 a8 fc 78 4f 29 df 10 e8 3d 23 4c d5 03 fe
ROUND	6	start	f1 00 6f 55 c1 92 4c ef 7c c8 8b 32 5d b5 d5 0c
ROUND	5	k_sch	d4 d1 c6 f8 7c 83 9d 87 ca f2 b8 bc 11 f9 15 bc
ROUND	5	m_col	25 d1 a9 ad bd 11 d1 68 b6 3a 33 8e 4c 4c c0 b0
ROUND	5	s_row	e1 fb 96 7c e8 c8 ae 9b 35 6c d2 ba 97 4f fb 53
ROUND	5	s_box	e1 4f d2 9b e8 fb fb ba 35 c8 96 53 97 6c ae 7c
ROUND	5	start	e0 92 7f e8 c8 63 63 c0 d9 b1 35 50 85 b8 be 01
ROUND	4	k_sch	ef 44 a5 41 a8 52 5b 7f b6 71 25 3b db 0b ad 00
ROUND	4	m_col	0f d6 da a9 60 31 38 bf 6f c0 10 6b 5e b3 13 01
ROUND	4	s_row	52 a4 c8 94 85 11 6a 28 e3 cf 2f d7 f6 50 5e 07
ROUND	4	s_box	52 50 2f 28 85 a4 5e d7 e3 11 c8 07 f6 cf 6a 94
ROUND	4	start	48 6c 4e ee 67 1d 9d 0d 4d e3 b1 38 d6 5f 58 e7
ROUND	3	k_sch	3d 80 47 7d 47 16 fe 3e 1e 23 7e 44 6d 7a 88 3b
ROUND	3	m_col	75 ec 09 93 20 0b 63 33 53 c0 cf 7c bb 25 d0 dc
ROUND	3	s_row	ac c1 d6 b8 ef b5 5a 7b 13 23 cf df 45 73 11 b5
ROUND	3	s_box	ac 73 cf 7b ef c1 11 df 13 b5 d6 b5 45 23 5a b8
ROUND	3	start	aa 8f 5f 03 61 dd e3 ef 82 d2 4a d2 68 32 46 9a
ROUND	2	k_sch	f2 c2 95 f2 7a 96 b9 43 59 35 80 7a 73 59 f6 7f
ROUND	2	m_col	58 4d ca f1 1b 4b 5a ac db e7 ca a8 1b 6b b0 e5
ROUND	2	s_row	49 db 87 3b 45 39 53 89 7f 02 d2 f1 77 de 96 1a
ROUND	2	s_box	49 de d2 89 45 db 96 f1 7f 39 87 1a 77 02 53 3b
ROUND	2	start	a4 9c 7f f2 68 9f 35 2b 6b 5b ea 43 02 6a 50 49

```

ROUND  1 k_sch    a0 fa fe 17 88 54 2c b1 23 a3 39 39 2a 6c 76 05
ROUND  1 m_col    04 66 81 e5 e0 cb 19 9a 48 f8 d3 7a 28 06 26 4c
ROUND  1 s_row    d4 bf 5d 30 e0 b4 52 ae b8 41 11 f1 1e 27 98 e5
ROUND  1 s_box    d4 27 11 ae e0 bf 98 f1 b8 b4 5d e5 1e 41 52 30
ROUND  1 start    19 3d e3 be a0 f4 e2 2b 9a c6 8d 2a e9 f8 48 08

```

```

ROUND  0 k_sch    2b 7e 15 16 28 ae d2 a6 ab f7 15 88 09 cf 4f 3c
ROUND  0 input    32 43 f6 a8 88 5a 30 8d 31 31 98 a2 e0 37 07 34

```

```

DEC    32 43 f6 a8 88 5a 30 8d 31 31 98 a2 e0 37 07 34

```

E.4. A Revised Appendix D.3

This is essentially the same as Appendix D.3.

We have changed the labelling slightly, we have traced both the encryption and the decryption (rather than just the encryption), and we have included a translation of the hex bytes into printable characters. The ENC label is for the encryption of the plaintext, ENC label is for the subsequent repeated encryption.

```

block length 128 key length 128
TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  00000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  66e94bd4ef8a2c3b884cfa59ca342b2e
ENC  f795bd4a52e29ed713d313fa20e98dbc

```

```

block length 160 key length 128
TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  00000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  9e38b8eb1d2025a1665ad4b1f5438bb5cae1ac3f
ENC  939c167e7f916d45670ee21bfc939e1055054a96

```

```

block length 192 key length 128
TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  00000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  a92732eb488d8bb98ecd8d95dc9c02e052f250ad369b3849
ENC  106f34179c3982ddc6750aa01936b7a180e6b0b9d8d690ec

```

```

block length 224 key length 128
TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  00000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  0623522d88f7b9c63437537157f625dd5697ab628a3b9be2549895c8
ENC  93f93cbdabe23415620e6990b0443d621f6afb6edef6990a1965a8

```

```

block length 256 key length 128
TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  00000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  a693b288df7dae5b1757640276439230db77c4cd7a871e24d6162e54af434891

```

ENC 5f05857c80b68ea42ccbc759d42c28d5cd490f1d180c7a9397ee585bea770391

block length 128 key length 160

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC 94b434f8f57b9780f0eff1a9ec4c112c

ENC 35a00ec955df43417ceac2ab2b3f3e76

block length 160 key length 160

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC 33b12ab81db7972e8fdc529dda46fcb529b31826

ENC 97f03eb018c0bb9195bf37c6a0aece8e4cb8de5f

block length 192 key length 160

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC 528e2fff6005427b67bb1ed31ecc09a69ef41531df5ba5b2

ENC 71c7687a4c93ebc35601e3662256e10115beed56a410d7ac

block length 224 key length 160

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC 58a0c53f3822a32464704d409c2fd0521f3a93e1f6cfd4c87f1c551

ENC d8e93ef2eb49857049d6f6e0f40b67516d2696f94013c065283f7f01

block length 256 key length 160

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC 938d36e0cb6b7937841dab7f1668e47b485d3acd6b3f6d598b0a9f923823331d

ENC 7b44491d1b24a93b904d171f074ad69669c2b70b134a4d2d773250a4414d78be

block length 128 key length 192

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC aae06992acbf52a3e8f4a96ec9300bd7

ENC 52f674b7b9030fdab13d18dc214eb331

block length 160 key length 192

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC 33060f9d4705ddd2c7675f0099140e5a98729257

ENC 012cab64982156a5710e790f85ec442ce13c520f

block length 192 key length 192

TEXT 00000000000000000000000000000000

KEY 00000000000000000000000000000000

ENC c6348be20007bac4a8bd62890c8147a2432e760e9a9f9ab8

ENC eb9def13c253f81c1fc2829426ed166a65a105c6a04ca33d

block length 224 key length 192

[illegible]

```

ENC  eef8b7cc9dbe0f03a1fe9d82e9a759fd281c67e0

block length 192 key length 256
TEXT 0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  17004e806faef168fc9cd56f98f070982075c70c8132b945
ENC  bed33b0af364dbf15f9c2f3fb24fbd1d36129c586eea6b7

block length 224 key length 256
TEXT 0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  9bf26fad5680d56b572067ec2fe162f449404c86303f8be38fab6e02
ENC  658f144a34af44aae66cfddab955c483dfbcb4ee9a19a6701f158a66

block length 256 key length 256
TEXT 0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
KEY  0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
ENC  c6227e7740b7e53b5cb77865278eab0726f62366d9aabad908936123a1fc8af3
ENC  9843e807319c32ad1ea3935ef56a2ba96e4bf19c30e47d88a2b97cbbf2e159e7

```

E.5. Revised Appendix E

This is essentially the same as Appendix E, but we have revised the formatting of the the code slightly. The major change is that the **Decrypt** function in Appendix E is wrong, in that it retains the order of the calls to the steps of encryption, instead of reversing the order. In addition to correcting for this error, we have included calls to functions that output the tracing information of Appendix D.2.

E.5.1. AES Functions. The functions used in AES are displayed here.

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdbool.h>

typedef unsigned char word8;
typedef unsigned int word32;

#define MAXBC 8
#define MAXKC 8
#define MAXROUNDS 14

bool testd2, testd3, testtext;
int BC, KC, ROUNDS;

word8 Logtable[256] = {
    0,  0,  25,  1,  50,  2,  26, 198,  75, 199,  27, 104,  51, 238, 223,  3,

```

```

100, 4, 224, 14, 52, 141, 129, 239, 76, 113, 8, 200, 248, 105, 28, 193,
125, 194, 29, 181, 249, 185, 39, 106, 77, 228, 166, 114, 154, 201, 9, 120,
101, 47, 138, 5, 33, 15, 225, 36, 18, 240, 130, 69, 53, 147, 218, 142,
150, 143, 219, 189, 54, 208, 206, 148, 19, 92, 210, 241, 64, 70, 131, 56,
102, 221, 253, 48, 191, 6, 139, 98, 179, 37, 226, 152, 34, 136, 145, 16,
126, 110, 72, 195, 163, 182, 30, 66, 58, 107, 40, 84, 250, 133, 61, 186,
43, 121, 10, 21, 155, 159, 94, 202, 78, 212, 172, 229, 243, 115, 167, 87,
175, 88, 168, 80, 244, 234, 214, 116, 79, 174, 233, 213, 231, 230, 173, 232,
44, 215, 117, 122, 235, 22, 11, 245, 89, 203, 95, 176, 156, 169, 81, 160,
127, 12, 246, 111, 23, 196, 73, 236, 216, 67, 31, 45, 164, 118, 123, 183,
204, 187, 62, 90, 251, 96, 177, 134, 59, 82, 161, 108, 170, 85, 41, 157,
151, 178, 135, 144, 97, 190, 220, 252, 188, 149, 207, 205, 55, 63, 91, 209,
83, 57, 132, 60, 65, 162, 109, 71, 20, 42, 158, 93, 86, 242, 211, 171,
68, 17, 146, 217, 35, 32, 46, 137, 180, 124, 184, 38, 119, 153, 227, 165,
103, 74, 237, 222, 197, 49, 254, 24, 13, 99, 140, 128, 192, 247, 112, 7,
};

```

```

word8 Alogtable[256] = {
1, 3, 5, 15, 17, 51, 85, 255, 26, 46, 114, 150, 161, 248, 19, 53,
95, 225, 56, 72, 216, 115, 149, 164, 247, 2, 6, 10, 30, 34, 102, 170,
229, 52, 92, 228, 55, 89, 235, 38, 106, 190, 217, 112, 144, 171, 230, 49,
83, 245, 4, 12, 20, 60, 68, 204, 79, 209, 104, 184, 211, 110, 178, 205,
76, 212, 103, 169, 224, 59, 77, 215, 98, 166, 241, 8, 24, 40, 120, 136,
131, 158, 185, 208, 107, 189, 220, 127, 129, 152, 179, 206, 73, 219, 118, 154,
181, 196, 87, 249, 16, 48, 80, 240, 11, 29, 39, 105, 187, 214, 97, 163,
254, 25, 43, 125, 135, 146, 173, 236, 47, 113, 147, 174, 233, 32, 96, 160,
251, 22, 58, 78, 210, 109, 183, 194, 93, 231, 50, 86, 250, 21, 63, 65,
195, 94, 226, 61, 71, 201, 64, 192, 91, 237, 44, 116, 156, 191, 218, 117,
159, 186, 213, 100, 172, 239, 42, 126, 130, 157, 188, 223, 122, 142, 137, 128,
155, 182, 193, 88, 232, 35, 101, 175, 234, 37, 111, 177, 200, 67, 197, 84,
252, 31, 33, 99, 165, 244, 7, 9, 27, 45, 119, 153, 176, 203, 70, 202,
69, 207, 74, 222, 121, 139, 134, 145, 168, 227, 62, 66, 198, 81, 243, 14,
18, 54, 90, 238, 41, 123, 141, 140, 143, 138, 133, 148, 167, 242, 13, 23,
57, 75, 221, 124, 132, 151, 162, 253, 28, 36, 108, 180, 199, 82, 246, 1,
};

```

```

word8 S[256] = {
99, 124, 119, 123, 242, 107, 111, 197, 48, 1, 103, 43, 254, 215, 171, 118,
202, 130, 201, 125, 250, 89, 71, 240, 173, 212, 162, 175, 156, 164, 114, 192,
183, 253, 147, 38, 54, 63, 247, 204, 52, 165, 229, 241, 113, 216, 49, 21,
4, 199, 35, 195, 24, 150, 5, 154, 7, 18, 128, 226, 235, 39, 178, 117,
9, 131, 44, 26, 27, 110, 90, 160, 82, 59, 214, 179, 41, 227, 47, 132,
83, 209, 0, 237, 32, 252, 177, 91, 106, 203, 190, 57, 74, 76, 88, 207,
208, 239, 170, 251, 67, 77, 51, 133, 69, 249, 2, 127, 80, 60, 159, 168,
81, 163, 64, 143, 146, 157, 56, 245, 188, 182, 218, 33, 16, 255, 243, 210,
205, 12, 19, 236, 95, 151, 68, 23, 196, 167, 126, 61, 100, 93, 25, 115,
96, 129, 79, 220, 34, 42, 144, 136, 70, 238, 184, 20, 222, 94, 11, 219,
224, 50, 58, 10, 73, 6, 36, 92, 194, 211, 172, 98, 145, 149, 228, 121,
231, 200, 55, 109, 141, 213, 78, 169, 108, 86, 244, 234, 101, 122, 174, 8,
186, 120, 37, 46, 28, 166, 180, 198, 232, 221, 116, 31, 75, 189, 139, 138,
112, 62, 181, 102, 72, 3, 246, 14, 97, 53, 87, 185, 134, 193, 29, 158,

```

```
225, 248, 152, 17, 105, 217, 142, 148, 155, 30, 135, 233, 206, 85, 40, 223,
140, 161, 137, 13, 191, 230, 66, 104, 65, 153, 45, 15, 176, 84, 187, 22,
};
```

```
word8 Si[256] = {
    82, 9, 106, 213, 48, 54, 165, 56, 191, 64, 163, 158, 129, 243, 215, 251,
    124, 227, 57, 130, 155, 47, 255, 135, 52, 142, 67, 68, 196, 222, 233, 203,
    84, 123, 148, 50, 166, 194, 35, 61, 238, 76, 149, 11, 66, 250, 195, 78,
    8, 46, 161, 102, 40, 217, 36, 178, 118, 91, 162, 73, 109, 139, 209, 37,
    114, 248, 246, 100, 134, 104, 152, 22, 212, 164, 92, 204, 93, 101, 182, 146,
    108, 112, 72, 80, 253, 237, 185, 218, 94, 21, 70, 87, 167, 141, 157, 132,
    144, 216, 171, 0, 140, 188, 211, 10, 247, 228, 88, 5, 184, 179, 69, 6,
    208, 44, 30, 143, 202, 63, 15, 2, 193, 175, 189, 3, 1, 19, 138, 107,
    58, 145, 17, 65, 79, 103, 220, 234, 151, 242, 207, 206, 240, 180, 230, 115,
    150, 172, 116, 34, 231, 173, 53, 133, 226, 249, 55, 232, 28, 117, 223, 110,
    71, 241, 26, 113, 29, 41, 197, 137, 111, 183, 98, 14, 170, 24, 190, 27,
    252, 86, 62, 75, 198, 210, 121, 32, 154, 219, 192, 254, 120, 205, 90, 244,
    31, 221, 168, 51, 136, 7, 199, 49, 177, 18, 16, 89, 39, 128, 236, 95,
    96, 81, 127, 169, 25, 181, 74, 13, 45, 229, 122, 159, 147, 201, 156, 239,
    160, 224, 59, 77, 174, 42, 245, 176, 200, 235, 187, 60, 131, 83, 153, 97,
    23, 43, 4, 126, 186, 119, 214, 38, 225, 105, 20, 99, 85, 33, 12, 125,
};
```

```
word32 RC[30] = {0x00, 0x01, 0x02, 0x04, 0x08, 0x10, 0x20, 0x40, 0x80,
    0x1b, 0x36, 0x6c, 0xd8, 0xab, 0x4d, 0x9a, 0x2f, 0x5e,
    0xbc, 0x63, 0xc6, 0x97, 0x35, 0x6a, 0xd4, 0xb3, 0x7d,
    0xfa, 0xef, 0xc5};
```

```
static word8 shifts[5][4] = {{0, 1, 2, 3},
    {0, 1, 2, 3},
    {0, 1, 2, 3},
    {0, 1, 2, 4},
    {0, 1, 3, 4}};
```

```
static int numrounds[5][5] = {{10, 11, 12, 13, 14},
    {11, 11, 12, 13, 14},
    {12, 12, 12, 13, 14},
    {13, 13, 13, 13, 14},
    {14, 14, 14, 14, 14}};
```

```
/******
```

```
* Multiply two elements of GF(256)
* Required for MixColumns and InvMixColumns
**/
```

```
word8 mul(word8 a, word8 b) {
    if (a && b) return Alogtable[(Logtable[a] + Logtable[b])%255];
    else return 0;
}
```

```
/******
```

```
* XOR corresponding text input and round key input bytes
```



```

**/
void AddRoundKey(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 rk[4][MAXBC]) {
    int i, j;
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] ^= rk[i][j];
        }
    }
}

/*****
* Replace every byte of the input by the byte at that place
* in the non-linear S-box
**/
void SubBytes(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 box[255]) {
    int i, j;
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] = box[a[i][j]];
        }
    }
}

/*****
* Row 0 remains unchanged.
* The other three rows are shifted a variable amount.
**/
void ShiftRows(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 d) {
    word8 tmp[MAXBC];
    int i, j;

    if (d == 0) {
        for (i = 1; i < 4; i++) {
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                tmp[j] = a[i][(j + shifts[BC-4][i]) % BC];
            }
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                a[i][j] = tmp[j];
            }
        }
    }
    else {
        for (i = 1; i < 4; i++) {
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                tmp[j] = a[i][(BC + j - shifts[BC-4][i]) % BC];
            }
            for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
                a[i][j] = tmp[j];
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

}

/*****
* Mix the four bytes of every column in a linear way.
**/
void MixColumns(word8 a[4][MAXBC]) {
    word8 b[4][MAXBC];
    int i, j;

    for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            b[i][j] = mul(2, a[i][j])
                ^ mul(3, a[(i+1)%4][j])
                ^ a[(i+2)%4][j]
                ^ a[(i+3)%4][j];
        }
    }
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] = b[i][j];
        }
    }
}

/*****
* Mix the four bytes of every column in a linear way.
* This is the opposite operation of MixColumns.
**/
void InvMixColumns(word8 a[4][MAXBC]) {
    word8 b[4][MAXBC];
    int i, j;

    for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            b[i][j] = mul(0xe, a[i][j])
                ^ mul(0xb, a[(i+1)%4][j])
                ^ mul(0xd, a[(i+2)%4][j])
                ^ mul(0x9, a[(i+3)%4][j]);
        }
    }
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
            a[i][j] = b[i][j];
        }
    }
}

/*****
*
**/
int KeyExpansion(word8 k[4][MAXKC], word8 W[MAXROUNDS+1][4][MAXBC]) {

```

```

// Calculate the required round keys.
int i, j, t, RCpointer = 1;
word8 tk[4][MAXKC];

for (j = 0; j < KC; j++) {
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        tk[i][j] = k[i][j];
    }
}

t = 0;
// copy values into round key array
for (j = 0; (j < KC) && (t < (ROUNDS+1)*BC); j++, t++) {
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        W[t / BC][i][t % BC] = tk[i][j];
    }
}

while (t < (ROUNDS+1)*BC) {
    // while not enough round key material calculated, calc new values
    for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
        tk[i][0] ^= S[tk[(i+1)%4][KC-1]];
    }
    tk[0][0] ^= RC[RCpointer++];

    if (KC <= 6) {
        for (j = 1; j < KC; j++) {
            for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                tk[i][j] ^= tk[i][j-1];
            }
        }
    } // if (KC <= 6)
    else {
        for (j = 1; j < 4; j++) {
            for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                tk[i][j] ^= tk[i][j-1];
            }
        }
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            tk[i][4] ^= S[tk[i][3]];
        }
        for (j = 5; j < KC; j++) {
            for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                tk[i][j] ^= tk[i][j-1];
            }
        }
    } // else

    // copy values into round key array
    for (j = 0; (j < KC) && (t < (ROUNDS+1)*BC); j++, t++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {

```

```

        W[t / BC][i][t % BC] = tk[i][j];
    }
}
} // while (t < (ROUNDS+1)*BC) {

return 0;
} // int KeyExpansion(word8 k[][], word8 W[][[]]) {

/*****
* Encryption of one block.
**/
int Encrypt(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 rk[MAXROUNDS+1][4][MAXBC]) {
    int r;

    dumpvaluesBC(0, "input ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

    // Begin with a key addition.
    AddRoundKey(a, rk[0]);

    dumpvaluesKC(0, "k_sch ", rk[0], 4, KC, testd2);
    if (testd2) printf("\n");
    dumpvaluesBC(1, "start ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

    // ROUNDS-1 ordinary rounds.
    for (r = 1; r < ROUNDS; r++) {
        SubBytes(a, S);
        dumpvaluesBC(r, "s_box ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

        ShiftRows(a, 0);
        dumpvaluesBC(r, "s_row ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

        MixColumns(a);
        dumpvaluesBC(r, "m_col ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

        AddRoundKey(a, rk[r]);
        dumpvaluesKC(r, "k_sch ", rk[r], 4, KC, testd2);
        if (testd2) printf("\n");
        dumpvaluesBC(r+1, "start ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
    }

    // Last round is special: there is no MixColumns.
    SubBytes(a, S);
    dumpvaluesBC(r, "s_box ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

    ShiftRows(a, 0);
    dumpvaluesBC(r, "s_row ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
    dumpvaluesKC(r, "k_sch ", rk[r], 4, KC, testd2);

    AddRoundKey(a, rk[ROUNDS]);
    dumpvaluesBC(r, "output", a, 4, BC, testd2);

```

```

    return 0;
}

/*****
* To decrypt:
*   Apply the inverse operations of the encrypt routine,
*   in opposite order.
*
*   AddRoundKey is equal to its inverse.
*   The inverse of SubBytes with table S is
*       SubBytes with the inverse table Si.
*   The inverse of Shiftrows is Shiftrows over
*       a suitable distance.
**/
int Decrypt(word8 a[4][MAXBC], word8 rk[MAXROUNDS+1][4][MAXBC]) {
    int r;

    // First the special round:
    //   without InvMixColumns
    //   with extra AddRoundKey

    dumpvaluesBC(ROUNDS, "output", a, 4, BC, testd2);
    AddRoundKey(a, rk[ROUNDS]);

    dumpvaluesKC(ROUNDS, "k_sch ", rk[ROUNDS], 4, KC, testd2);
    dumpvaluesBC(ROUNDS, "s_row ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
    // This was the original order of the functions.
    //   SubBytes(a, Si);
    //   dumpvaluesBC(ROUNDS, "s_box ", a, 4, 4, testd2);
    //   ShiftRows(a, 1);

    // This is the revised order of the functions.
    // This order works and the original one does not.
    ShiftRows(a, 1);

    dumpvaluesBC(ROUNDS, "s_box ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
    SubBytes(a, Si);

    // ROUNDS-1 ordinary rounds.
    for (r = ROUNDS-1; r > 0; r--) {
        dumpvaluesBC(r+1, "start ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
        if (testd2) printf("\n");
        AddRoundKey(a, rk[r]);

        dumpvaluesKC(r, "k_sch ", rk[r], 4, KC, testd2);
        dumpvaluesBC(r, "m_col ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
        InvMixColumns(a);

        dumpvaluesBC(r, "s_row ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
    }
    // This was the original order of the functions.
    //   SubBytes(a, Si);

```

```

// ShiftRows(a, 1);

// This is the revised order of the functions.
// This order works and the original one does not.
    ShiftRows(a, 1);
    dumpvaluesBC(r, "s_box ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

    SubBytes(a, Si);
}

dumpvaluesBC(r+1, "start ", a, 4, BC, testd2);
if (testd2) printf("\n");
dumpvaluesKC(0, "k_sch ", rk[0], 4, KC, testd2);

AddRoundKey(a, rk[0]);

dumpvaluesBC(0, "input ", a, 4, BC, testd2);

return 0;
}

```

E.5.2. AES Main Program. The main program used for the Appendix D.2 and D.3 data is displayed here.

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdbool.h>

#include "aesutils.c"
#include "aesfunctions.c"

/*****
*
**/
int main() {
    word8 a[4][MAXBC], rk[MAXROUNDS+1][4][MAXBC], sk[4][MAXKC];

    char* key;
    char* text;
    int bcupper = 4; // default value
    int kcupper = 4; // default value

    testd2 = false;
    testd3 = false;
    testtext = false;

#ifdef TESTD2
    testd2 = true;
#elif TESTD3
    testd3 = true;

```

```

#elif TESTTEXT
    testtext = true;
#else
#error "Must define TESTD2 or TESTD3 or TESTTEXT"
#endif

    text = readstuff("xtext.txt");
    key = readstuff("xkey.txt");

    if (testd3) {
        bcupper = 8;
        kcupper = 8;
    }
    else if (testd2) {
        bcupper = 4;
        kcupper = 4;
    }
    else if (testtext) {
        bcupper = 4;
        kcupper = 8;
    }

    for (KC = 4; KC <= kcupper; KC++) {
        for (BC = 4; BC <= bcupper; BC++) {
            ROUNDS = numrounds[KC-4][BC-4];

            if (testd3) {
                filltextallzeros(a);
                fillkeyallzeros(sk);
            }
            else if (testd2) {
                filltextd2(a);
                fillkeyd2(sk);
            }
            else if (testtext) {
                filltexttest(a);
                fillkeytest(sk);
            }
            else {
                printf("ERROR testd2 testd3\n");
                exit(0);
            }

            KeyExpansion(sk, rk);

#ifdef KEYSCHED
            // Print key schedule.
            printf("KEY SCHEDULE\n");
            if ((KC == 4) && (BC == 4)) {
                for (int r = 0; r < ROUNDS+1; r++) {
                    printf("%2d", r);

```

```

        for (j = 0; j < 4; j++) {
            for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
                printf(" %02X", rk[r][i][j]);
            }
        }
        printf("\n");
    }
    printf("\n");
#endif

    printf("block length %d  key length %d\n", 32*BC, 32*KC);
    dump2dcolsBC("TEXT", a, 4, BC);
    dump2dcolsBCchar("TEXT", a, 4, BC);
    printf("\n");

    dump2dcolsKC("KEY ", sk, 4, KC);
    dump2dcolsKCchar("KEY ", sk, 4, KC);
    printf("\n");

    Encrypt(a, rk);
    printf("\n");
    dump2dcolsBC("ENC ", a, 4, BC);
    dump2dcolsBCchar("CHAR", a, 4, BC);
    printf("\n");

    if (testd2 || testtext) {
        Decrypt(a, rk);
        printf("\n");
        dump2dcolsBC("DEC ", a, 4, BC);
        dump2dcolsBCchar("CHAR", a, 4, BC);
        printf("\n");
    } // if (testd2) {
    else if (testd3) {
        Encrypt(a, rk);
        dump2dcolsBC("DEC ", a, 4, BC);
        dump2dcolsBCchar("CHAR", a, 4, BC);
        printf("\n");
    } // else if (testd3) {
    } // for (BC = 4; BC <= 8; BC++) {
    } // for (KC = 4; KC <= 8; KC++) {
}

```

E.5.3. AES Input/Output Utilities. We display here some locally produced utility functions. Yes, these are hacks. We don't really apologize, although perhaps we should.

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>

```



```

typedef unsigned char word8;
typedef unsigned int word32;

#define MAXBC 8
#define MAXKC 8
#define MAXROUNDS 14

int BC, KC, ROUNDS;

/*****
*
**/
void dump2drowsBC(char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXBC],
                  int limitrow, int limitcol) {
    int i, j;
    printf("%s by rows\n", label);
    for (i = 0; i < limitrow; i++) {
        printf("%2d", i);
        for (j = 0; j < limitcol; j++) {
            printf(" %02x", thevalues[i][j]);
        }
        printf("\n");
    }
}

/*****
*
**/
void dump2drowsKC(char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXKC],
                  int limitrow, int limitcol) {
    int i, j;
    printf("%s by rows\n", label);
    for (i = 0; i < limitrow; i++) {
        printf("%2d", i);
        for (j = 0; j < limitcol; j++) {
            printf(" %02x", thevalues[i][j]);
        }
        printf("\n");
    }
}

/*****
*
**/
void dump2dcolsBC(char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXBC], int limitrow,
                  int limitcol) {
    int i, j;

    // print as one row
    printf("%s by cols ", label);
    for (j = 0; j < limitcol; j++) {

```

```

        for (i = 0; i < limitrow; i++) {
            printf(" %02x", thevalues[i][j]);
        }
    }
    printf("\n");
}

/*****
 *
 **/
void dump2dcolsBCchar(char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXBC], int limitrow,
                    int limitcol) {
    int i, j;

    // print as one row
    printf("%s by cols ", label);
    for (j = 0; j < limitcol; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < limitrow; i++) {
            if ((thevalues[i][j] >= 0x21) && (thevalues[i][j] <= 0x7d)) {
                printf(" %2c", thevalues[i][j]);
            }
            else {
                printf(" ~");
            }
        }
    }
    printf("\n");
}

/*****
 *
 **/
void dump2dcolsKC(char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXKC], int limitrow,
                    int limitcol) {
    int i, j;

    // print as one row
    printf("%s by cols ", label);
    for (j = 0; j < limitcol; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < limitrow; i++) {
            printf(" %02x", thevalues[i][j]);
        }
    }
    printf("\n");
}

/*****
 *
 **/
void dump2dcolsKCchar(char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXKC], int limitrow,
                    int limitcol) {

```

```

    int i, j;

    // print as one row
    printf("%s by cols ", label);
    for (j = 0; j < limitcol; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < limitrow; i++) {
            if ((thevalues[i][j] >= 0x21) && (thevalues[i][j] <= 0x7d)) {
                printf(" %2c", thevalues[i][j]);
            }
            else {
                printf(" ~");
            }
        }
    }
    printf("\n");
}

/*****
 *
 **/
void dump3d(word8 thevalues[MAXROUNDS+1][4][MAXBC],
            int limitx, int limity, int limitz) {
    int i, j, k;
    for (i = 0; i < limitx; i++) {
        for (j = 0; j < limity; j++) {
            printf("%2d %2d", i, j);
            for (k = 0; k < limitz; k++) {
                printf(" %02x", thevalues[i][j][k]);
            }
            printf("\n");
        }
        printf("\n");
    }
}

/*****
 *
 **/
void dump3dcols(word8 thevalues[MAXROUNDS+1][4][MAXBC],
                int limiti, int limitj, int limitk) {
    int i, j, k;
    for (i = 0; i < limiti; i++) {
        printf("%2d ", i);
        for (k = 0; k < limitk; k++) {
            for (j = 0; j < limitj; j++) {
                printf(" %02x", thevalues[i][j][k]);
            }
        }
        printf("\n");
    }
}

```

```

/*****
*
**/
void dumpvaluesBC(int round, char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXBC],
                  int limitrow, int limitcol, bool printflag) {
    if (printflag) {
        printf("ROUND %2d ", round);
        dump2dcolsBC(label, thevalues, limitrow, limitcol);
    }
}

/*****
*
**/
void dumpvaluesKC(int round, char* label, word8 thevalues[4][MAXBC],
                  int limitrow, int limitcol, bool printflag) {
    if (printflag) {
        printf("ROUND %2d ", round);
        dump2dcolsKC(label, thevalues, limitrow, limitcol);
    }
}

/*****
*
**/
void fillkeyallzeros(word8 thekey[4][MAXKC]) {
    int i, j;
    for (j = 0; j < KC; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            thekey[i][j] = 0;
        }
    }
}

/*****
*
**/
void fillkeyd2(word8 sk[4][MAXKC]) {
    sk[0][0] = 0x2b;
    sk[1][0] = 0x7e;
    sk[2][0] = 0x15;
    sk[3][0] = 0x16;
    sk[0][1] = 0x28;
    sk[1][1] = 0xae;
    sk[2][1] = 0xd2;
    sk[3][1] = 0xa6;
    sk[0][2] = 0xab;
    sk[1][2] = 0xf7;
    sk[2][2] = 0x15;
    sk[3][2] = 0x88;
}

```

```

    sk[0][3] = 0x09;
    sk[1][3] = 0xcf;
    sk[2][3] = 0x4f;
    sk[3][3] = 0x3c;
}

/*****
 *
 **/
void fillkeytest(word8 sk[4][MAXKC]) {
    sk[0][0] = 0x2b;
    sk[1][0] = 0x7e;
    sk[2][0] = 0x15;
    sk[3][0] = 0x16;
    sk[0][1] = 0x28;
    sk[1][1] = 0xae;
    sk[2][1] = 0xd2;
    sk[3][1] = 0xa6;
    sk[0][2] = 0xab;
    sk[1][2] = 0xf7;
    sk[2][2] = 0x15;
    sk[3][2] = 0x88;
    sk[0][3] = 0x09;
    sk[1][3] = 0xcf;
    sk[2][3] = 0x4f;
    sk[3][3] = 0x3c;
}

/*****
 *
 **/
void filltestd3key(word8 sk[4][MAXKC]) {
    sk[0][0] = 0x00;
    sk[1][0] = 0x00;
    sk[2][0] = 0x00;
    sk[3][0] = 0x00;
    sk[0][1] = 0x00;
    sk[1][1] = 0x00;
    sk[2][1] = 0x00;
    sk[3][1] = 0x00;
    sk[0][2] = 0x00;
    sk[1][2] = 0x00;
    sk[2][2] = 0x00;
    sk[3][2] = 0x00;
    sk[0][3] = 0x00;
    sk[1][3] = 0x00;
    sk[2][3] = 0x00;
    sk[3][3] = 0x00;
}

/*****/

```

```

*
**/
void filltextallzeros(word8 thetext[4][MAXBC]) {
    int i, j;
    for (j = 0; j < BC; j++) {
        for (i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
            thetext[i][j] = 0;
        }
    }
}

/*****
*
**/
void filltextd2(word8 a[4][MAXBC]) {
    a[0][0] = 0x32;
    a[1][0] = 0x43;
    a[2][0] = 0xf6;
    a[3][0] = 0xa8;
    a[0][1] = 0x88;
    a[1][1] = 0x5a;
    a[2][1] = 0x30;
    a[3][1] = 0x8d;
    a[0][2] = 0x31;
    a[1][2] = 0x31;
    a[2][2] = 0x98;
    a[3][2] = 0xa2;
    a[0][3] = 0xe0;
    a[1][3] = 0x37;
    a[2][3] = 0x07;
    a[3][3] = 0x34;
}

/*****
*
**/
void filltexttest(word8 a[4][MAXBC]) {
    a[0][0] = 0x74; // t
    a[1][0] = 0x68; // h
    a[2][0] = 0x69; // i
    a[3][0] = 0x73; // s
    a[0][1] = 0x20; // blank
    a[1][1] = 0x69; // i
    a[2][1] = 0x73; // s
    a[3][1] = 0x20; // blank
    a[0][2] = 0x74; // t
    a[1][2] = 0x68; // h
    a[2][2] = 0x65; // e
    a[3][2] = 0x20; // blank
    a[0][3] = 0x74; // t
    a[1][3] = 0x65; // e

```

```
    a[2][3] = 0x78; // x
    a[3][3] = 0x74; // t
}

/*****
*
**/
char* readstuff(char* filename) {
    char* text = NULL;
    size_t linecap = 0;
    // ssize_t linelen;
    FILE *fp;

    fp = fopen(filename, "r");
    getline(&text, &linecap, fp);
    fclose(fp);

    return(text);
}
```

Cited References

- [AAB⁺15] Hal Abelson, Ross Anderson, Steven M. Bellovin, Josh Benaloh, Matthew Blaze, Whitfield Diffie, John Gilmore, Matthew Green, Peter G. Neumann, Susan Landau, Ronald L. Rivest, Jeffrey I. Schiller, Bruce Schneier, Michael Specter, and Daniel J. Witzner, *Keys under doormats: Mandating insecurity by requiring government access to all data and communications*, Communications of the ACM **58** (2015), no. 10, 24–26.
- [ADPR00] A. A. Dandalis, V. K. Prasanna, and J. D. P. Rolim, *A comparative study of performance of aes final candidates*, Proceedings, Second International Workshop, Cryptographic Hardware and Embedded Systems, Lecture Notes in Computer Science 1965 (Berlin, Heidelberg) (Çetin K. Koç and Christof Paar, eds.), Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2000, pp. 125–140.
- [AKS04] Manindra Agrawal, Neeraj Kayal, and Nitin Saxena, *PRIMES is in P*, Annals of Mathematics **160** (2004), 781–793.
- [BB84] Charles H. Bennett and Gilles Brassard, *Quantum cryptography: Public key distribution and coin tossing*, International Conference on Computers, Systems, and Signal Processing (1984), 175–179.
- [BD97] Jean-Claude Bajard and Laurent-Stéphane Dider, *An RNS Montgomery modular multiplication algorithm*, Proceedings, IEEE Symposium on Computer Arithmetic (1997), 234–239.
- [BLP93] J. P. Buhler, H. W. Lenstra, and Carl Pomerance, *Factoring integers with the number field sieve*, LNM #1554 (1993), 50–94.
- [BLS⁺83] John Brillhart, D. H. Lehmer, J. L. Selfridge, B. Tuckerman, and S. S. Wagstaff, *Factorizations of $b^n \pm 1$* , $b =$

- 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12, *up to high powers*, American Mathematical Society, 1983.
- [BP81] Richard P. Brent and John M. Pollard, *Factorisation of the eighth fermat number*, Mathematics of Computation (1981), 627–630.
- [Bre80] Richard P. Brent, *An improved Monte Carlo factorization algorithm*, BIT (1980), 176–184.
- [Bri89] Ernest Brickell, *A survey of hardware implementations of rsa*, journal (1989).
- [Buc01] Johannes A. Buchmann, *Introduction to Cryptography*, Springer-Verlag, 2001, Cited in Appendix ?
- [Bue87] Duncan A. Buell, *Factoring: Algorithms, computers, and computations*, The Journal of Supercomputing (1987), 191–216.
- [Bue89] ———, *Binary Quadratic Forms: Classical theory and modern computations*, Springer-Verlag, 1989, Cited in Appendix C.
- [Cha91a] Leonard S. Charlap, *A survey of integer factoring i (fouo)*, CCR Expository Report #40 (1991).
- [Cha91b] ———, *A survey of integer factoring ii (fouo)*, CCR Expository Report #41 (1991).
- [Cha91c] ———, *A survey of integer factoring iii (fouo)*, CCR Expository Report #43 (1991).
- [Chi86a] Donald M. Chiarulli, *A fast multiplier for very large operands*, University of Pittsburgh Technical Report CSTR 86-11 (1986).
- [Chi86b] ———, *A horizontally reconfigurable architecture for extended precision arithmetic*, Louisiana State University Dissertation (1986).
- [Cop98] Don Coppersmith, *Specialized integer factorization*, 542–545.
- [Copar] ———, *Modifications to the number field sieve*, journal (year).
- [Cor] Cornell University, *English letter frequency*, <http://pi.math.cornell.edu/~mec/2003-2004/cryptography/subs/frequencies.html>, Accessed: 2020-01-14, cited in Chapter 2.
- [COS86] Don Coppersmith, Andrew M. Odlyzko, and Richard Schroepel, *Discrete logarithms in $gf(p)$* , Algorithmica (1986), 1–15.
- [Cou04] N. T. Courtois, *Is AES a secure cipher?*, <http://www.cryptosystem.net/aes>, 2004, Accessed: 2020-06-17.
- [CRB85] Donald M. Chiarulli, W. G. Rudd, and Duncan A. Buell, *DRAFT—A dynamically reconfigurable processor for integer arithmetic*, 309–317.

- [DH76] Whitfield Diffie and Martin E. Hellman, *New directions in cryptography*, IEEE Transactions on Information Theory **IT-22** (1976), 644–654.
- [DH77] ———, *Exhaustive cryptanalysis of the NBS DES*, IEEE Computer (1977), 74–84.
- [Dix81] John D. Dixon, *Asymptotically fast factorization of integers*, Mathematics of Computation (1981), 255–260.
- [Dix84] ———, *Factorization and primality tests*, American Mathematical Monthly (1984), 333–352.
- [DR02] Joan Daemen and Vincent Rijmen, *The Design of Rijndael*, Springer-Verlag, 2002, Cited in Appendix ?
- [Eld91] Stephen E. Eldridge, *A faster modular multiplication algorithm*, International Journal of Computer Mathematics (1991), 63–68.
- [Elg85] Taher Elgamal, *A subexponential-time algorithm for computing discrete logarithms over $gf(p^2)$* , IEEE Transactions on Information Theory (1985), 473–481.
- [Ell97] J. H. Ellis, *The story of nonsecret encryption*, 1997.
- [EW93] Stephen E. Eldridge and Colin D. Walter, *Hardware implementation of montgomery’s modular multiplication algorithm*, IEEE Transactions on Computers (1993), 693–699.
- [Gen09] Craig Gentry, *A fully homomorphic encryption scheme*, Stanford University Ph. D. Dissertation (2009), ???
- [Ger83] Joseph L. Gerver, *Factoring large numbers with a quadratic sieve*, Mathematics of Computation (1983), 287–294.
- [Gla98] Brian Gladman, *Implementation experience with AES candidate algorithms*, Proceedings, Second AES Candidate Conference (Rockville, Maryland), National Institute of Standards and Technology, 1998.
- [GM91] Daniel M. Gordon and Kevin S. McCurley, *Computation of discrete logarithms in fields of characteristic two*, Crypto 91 rump session paper (1991).
- [Gol82] Solomon Golomb, *Shift Register Sequences*, Aegean Park Press, 1982, Cited in Chapter 6.
- [Gor90] Daniel M. Gordon, *Discrete logarithms in $GF(p)$ using the number field sieve*, mss (1990).
- [Gor91] ———, *Discrete logarithms using the number field sieve*, journal (1991).
- [Gra01] Torbjörn Granlund, *GNU MP: The GNU multiple precision arithmetic library*, Free Software Foundation, Inc., 2001.
- [Guy76] Richard K. Guy, *How to factor a number*, Congressus Numerantium (1976), 49–89, Cited in Chapter 10.

- [Ham86] Richard W. Hamming, *Coding and Information Theory, Second Edition*, Prentice-Hall, 1986, Cited in Chapter 2.
- [HMOV04] Darrel Hankerson, Alfred Menezes, and Scott Vanstone, *Guide to Elliptic Curve Cryptography*, Springer-Verlag, 2004, Cited in Chapter 7.
- [HSS89] Walter Hollingsworth, Howard Sachs, and Alan J. Smith, *The CLIPPER processor: Instruction set architecture and implementation*, Communications of the ACM **32** (1989), 200–219.
- [HW60] G. H. Hardy and E. M. Wright, *An Introduction to the Theory of Numbers, Fourth Edition*, Oxford, 1960, Cited in Chapter 16.
- [JKS⁺00] Michael J. Jacobson, Neal Koblitz, Joseph H. Silverman, Andreas Stein, and Edlyn Teske, *Analysis of the Xedni calculus attack*, Designs, Codes and Cryptography **20** (2000), 41–64.
- [Knu81] Donald E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming, Volume 2, Seminumerical Algorithms, Second Edition*, Addison-Wesley, 1981.
- [Kob87] Neal Koblitz, *Elliptic curve cryptosystems*, Mathematics of Computation **48** (1987), 203–209.
- [Lan00a] Susan Landau, *Communications security for the twenty-first century: The advanced encryption standard*, Notices of the American Mathematical Society **47** (2000), no. 3, 450–459.
- [Lan00b] ———, *Standing the test of time: The data encryption standard*, Notices of the American Mathematical Society **47** (2000), no. 3, 341–349.
- [Leh69] D. H. Lehmer, *Computer technology applied to the theory of numbers*, MAA Studies in Mathematics, Studies in Number Theory (1969), 117–151.
- [Lei92] F. Thomson Leighton, *Introduction to parallel algorithms and architectures*, Morgan Kaufmann, 1992.
- [Len87] H. W. Lenstra, Jr., *Factoring integers with elliptic curves*, Annals of Mathematics **126** (1987), no. 3, 649–673.
- [Len96] Arjen Lenstra, *A world wide number field sieve factoring record: on to 512 bits*, journal (1996), pages.
- [LHWL93] A. K. Lenstra and eds. H. W. Lenstra, *The development of the Number Field Sieve*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1993.
- [Lip04] Helger Lipmaa, *AES candidates: A survey of implementations*, <http://www.tcs.hut.fi/~helger/aes>, 2004, Apparently no longer available.
- [LKB⁺94a] Susan Landau, Stephen Kent, Clinton Brooks, Scott Charney, Dorothy Denning, Whitfield Diffie, Anthony Lauck, Douglas

- Miller, Peter Neumann, and Davis Sobel, *Codes, keys, and conflicts: Issues in u.s. crypto policy*, 1994.
- [LKB⁺94b] ———, *Crypto policy perspectives*, Communications of the ACM **37** (1994), no. 8, 115–121.
- [LLMP93] H. W. Lenstra, Jr., Arjen K. Lenstra, Mark S. Manasse, and J. M. Pollard, *The factorization of the ninth fermat number*, Mathematics of Computation (1993), 319–349.
- [LM90] Arjen K. Lenstra and Mark S. Manasse, *Factoring by electronic mail*, Advances in Cryptology — EUROCRYPT '89 (Berlin, Heidelberg) (Jean-Jacques Quisquater and Joos Vandewalle, eds.), Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 1990, Cited in Chapter 12, pp. 355–371.
- [LN97] R. Lidl and H. Niederreiter, *Introduction to Finite Fields and Their Applications, Second Edition*, Cambridge University Press, 1997, Cited in Chapters 3, 6.
- [LO91] B. A. LaMacchia and A. M. Odlyzko, *Computation of discrete logarithms in prime fields*, Designs, Codes and Cryptography **1** (1991), 47–62.
- [LP92] H. W. Lenstra, Jr. and Carl Pomerance, *A rigorous time bound for factoring integers*, Journal of the AMS (1992), 483–516.
- [Mat61] G. B. Mathews, *Theory of Numbers*, Chelsea, 1961, Cited in Appendix B.
- [MB71] Michael A. Morrison and John Brillhart, *The factorization of F_7* , Bulletin of the AMS (1971), 264, Cited in Chapter 17.
- [MB75] ———, *A method of factoring and the factorization of f_7* , Mathematics of Computation (1975), 183–205.
- [Mil86] Victor S. Miller, *Use of elliptic curves in cryptography*, Advances in Cryptology — CRYPTO '85 (New York), Springer-Verlag, 1986, Lecture Notes in Computer Science 218, pp. 417–426.
- [MNM⁺16] Thomas Monz, Daniel Nigg, Esteban Martinez, Matthias Brandl, Phillippp Schindler, Richard Rines, Shannon Wang, Isaac Chuang, and Rainer Blatt, *Realization of a scalable Shor algorithm*, Science (2016), 1068–1070.
- [Mon85] Peter L. Montgomery, *Modular multiplication without trial division*, Mathematics of Computation **44** (1985), 519–521.
- [MOVW89] R. C. Mullin, I. M. Onyszchuk, S. A. Vanstone, and R. M. Wilson, *Optimal normal bases in $gf(p^n)$* , Discrete Applied Mathematics (1988/89), 149–61, Cited in Chapter 6.
- [Mül97] Volker Müller, *Fast multiplication on elliptic curves over small fields of characteristic two*.

- [Nat] Natural Language Tool Kit, *Brown Corpus*, <http://www.nltk.org>.
- [NIS98a] NIST, *First AES Candidate Conference*, <http://csrc.nist.gov/CryptoToolkit/aes/round1/conf1/aes1conf.htm>, 1998.
- [NIS98b] ———, *Second AES Candidate Conference*, <http://csrc.nist.gov/CryptoToolkit/aes/round1/conf2/aes2conf.htm>, 1998.
- [NIS99a] ———, *Data Encryption Standard*, <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/sp958-lide/250-253.pdf>, 1999.
- [NIS99b] ———, *Fips 46-3: Data encryption standard (reaffirmed)*, <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips46-3/fips46-3.pdf>, 1999.
- [NIS00a] ———, *FIPS 197: Announcing the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)*, <http://csrc.nist.gov/encryption/aes/index.html>, 2000.
- [NIS00b] ———, *Third AES Candidate Conference*, <http://csrc.nist.gov/CryptoToolkit/aes/round2/conf3/aes3conf.htm>, 2000.
- [NIS13] ———, *Fips 186-4: Digital signature standard*, <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/fips/186/4/final>, 2013.
- [NZM91] Ivan Niven, Herbert S. Zuckerman, and Hugh L. Montgomery, *An Introduction to the Theory of Numbers, Fifth Edition*, John Wiley and Sons, 1991, Cited in Chapter 5.
- [Odl85] Andrew M. Odlyzko, *Discrete logarithms in finite fields and their cryptographic significance*, Advances in Cryptology — EUROCRYPT '84 (New York) (T. Beth, N. Cot, , and I. Ingemarsson, eds.), Springer-Verlag, 1985, Lecture Notes in Computer Science 209, pp. 224–314.
- [Pol74] J. M. Pollard, *Theorems on factorization and primality testing*, Mathematical Proceedings of the Cambridge Philosophical Society **76** (1974), 521–528.
- [Pol75] ———, *A Monte Carlo method for factorization*, BIT (1975), 331–334.
- [Pol78] ———, *Monte Carlo methods for index computation (mod p)*, Mathematics of Computation (1978), 918–924.
- [Pom83] Carl Pomerance, *Analysis and comparison of some integer factoring algorithms*, 89–139.
- [Pomar] ———, *The quadratic sieve factoring algorithm*, journal (year).

- [Pra39] Fletcher Pratt, *Secret and Urgent*, Blue Ribbon Books, 1939, Cited in Appendix Z.
- [Pro] Project Gutenberg, *The Gutenberg Project*, <https://www.gutenberg.org>, Accessed: 2020-01-14, cited in Chapter 2.
- [Qui94] Michael J. Quinn, *Parallel computing: Theory and practice, second edition*, McGraw-Hill, 1994.
- [RCB84] W. G. Rudd, Donald M. Chiarulli, and Duncan A. Buell, *A high performance factoring machine*, 297–300.
- [RSA78] R. L. Rivest, A. Shamir, and L. Adleman, *A method for obtaining digital signatures and public-key cryptosystems*, Communications of the ACM (1978), 120–126.
- [SASR01] C. Sanchez-Avila and R. Sanchez-Reillo, *The Rijndael block cipher (AES proposal): A comparison with DES.*, Proceedings, 35th IEEE Carnahan Conference on Security Technology (2001), 229–234.
- [Sha69] Daniel Shanks, *Class number, a theory of factorization, and genera*, Proceedings of the Symposium in Pure Mathematics (1969), 415–440.
- [Sho92] Victor Shoup, *Searching for primitive roots in finite fields*, Mathematics of Computation **58** (1992), 369–380, Cited in Chapter 3.
- [Sho94] Peter Shor, *Algorithms for quantum computation: discrete log and factoring*, journal (1994).
- [Sil87] Robert D. Silverman, *The multiple polynomial quadratic sieve*, Mathematics of Computation **48** (1987), 329–339, Cited in Chapter 12.
- [Sil00] Joseph H. Silverman, *The Xedni calculus and the elliptic curve discrete logarithm problem*, Designs, Codes and Cryptography **20** (2000), 5–40.
- [SS71] A. Schonhage and V. Strassen, *Schnelle multiplikation grosser zahlen*, Computing (1971), 281–292.
- [The] The Crypto Museum, *The Vernam cipher*, <https://www.cryptomuseum.com/crypto/vernam.htm>, Accessed: 2020-01-24, cited in Chapter 2.
- [TK99] Alexandre F. Tenca and Cetin K. Koc, *A scalable architecture for Montgomery multiplication*, 94–108.
- [WE90] Colin D. Walter and Stephen E. Eldridge, *A verification of brickell’s fast modular multiplication algorithm*, International Journal of Computer Mathematics (1990), 153–169.

-
- [Web95] Damian Weber, *An implementation of the general number field sieve to compute discrete logarithms mod p* , Proceedings, Eurocrypt 95 (1995), 95–105.
- [Web96] ———, *Computing discrete logarithms with the general number field sieve*, Proceedings, ANTS II (1996), pages.
- [Web98] ———, *Computing discrete logarithms with quadratic number rings*, 171–183.
- [Wel82] Gordon Welchman, *The Hut Six Story*, McGraw-Hill, 1982.
- [Wil82] H. C. Williams, *A $p+1$ method of factorization*, Mathematics of Computation (1982), 225–234.
- [Wil84] ———, *An overview of factoring*, 71–80.
- [WSar] Samuel S. Wagstaff and Jeffrey Smith, *Methods of factoring large integers*, journal (year).
- [Yar31] H. O. Yardley, *The American Black Chamber*, Bobbs-Merrill, 1931, Cited in Appendix Z.
- [ZB68] Neal Zierler and John Brillhart, *On primitive trinomials (mod 2)*, Information and Control (1968), 541–554.
- [ZB69] ———, *On primitive trinomials (mod 2) (part 2)*, Information and Control (1969), 566–569.

Additional References

- [AGLL94] Derek Atkins, Michael Graff, Arjen Lenstra, and Paul Leyland, *The magic words are squeamish ossifrage*, Proceedings, Asiacrypt 94 (1994), Pages.
- [AM87] Leonard M. Adleman and Kevin S. McCurley, *Open problems in number theoretic complexity*, Perspectives in Computing: Discrete Algorithms and Complexity (1987), 237–262.
- [Bar00] Elaine Barker, *NIST Cryptographic Toolkit*, October 16 2000, csrc.nist.gov/encryption/index.html.
- [Bar02] Thomas H. Barr, *Invitation to Cryptology*, Prentice-Hall, 2002, Cited in Appendix ?
- [Ben98] Josh Benaloh, *Dense probabilistic encryption*, mss (1998).
- [BK15] Elaine Barker and John Kelsey, *Recommendation for random number generation using deterministic random bit generators*, NIST Special Publication 800-90A, Revision 1 (2015), ???
- [BRW92] Duncan A. Buell, M. L. Robinson, and Ferrell S. Wheeler, *Responding to the Haber/Lenstra trapdoor challenge*, ??? (1992), ???
- [BS90] Eli Biham and Adi Shamir, *Differential cryptanalysis of des-like cryptosystems*, Crypto 90 (1990), pages.
- [BS96] ———, *Research announcement: A new cryptanalytic attack on des*, journal (1996).
- [BSS99] Ian Blake, Gadiel Seroussi, and Nigel Smart, *Elliptic curves in cryptography*.
- [Bue84] Duncan A. Buell, *The expectation of success using a Monte Carlo factoring method—Some statistics on quadratic class numbers*, Mathematics of Computation (1984), 313–327.

- [CC90] Leonard S. Charlap and Raymond Coley, *An elementary introduction to elliptic curves ii*, CCR Expository Report #34 (1990).
- [CDO97] Henri Cohen, Francisco Diaz y Diaz, and M. Olivier, *Subexponential algorithms for class group and unit computations*, Journal of Symbolic Computation (1997), 433–441.
- [CL84] Henri Cohen and Hendrik W. Lenstra, *Primality testing and jacobian sums*, Mathematics of Computation (1984), 297–330.
- [Cop84] Don Coppersmith, *Fast evaluation of logarithms in fields of characteristic two*, IEEE Transactions on Information Theory (1984), 587–594.
- [Cop87] ———, *Cryptography*, IBM Journal of Research and Development (1987), 244–248.
- [Cop96] ———, *Small solutions to polynomial equations, and low exponent rsa vulnerabilities*, journal (1996), pages.
- [Copar] ———, *Fermat’s last theorem (case 1) and the wieferich criterion*, Mathematics of Computation (year), pages.
- [CRar] Leonard S. Charlap and David P. Robbins, *An elementary introduction to elliptic curves*, CRD Expository Report #31 (year).
- [DR99] Joan Daemen and Vincent Rijmen, *AES proposal: Rijndael*, March 1999, csrc.nist.gov/encryption/aes/rijndael/Rijndael.html.
- [Faf82] Philip Faflick, *Opening the ‘trapdoor knapsack’*, Time (1982).
- [Gai36] Helen Fouché Gaines, *Cryptanalysis*, Dover, 1936, Cited in Appendix ?
- [Gaj] Kris Gaj, *Ece 746 lecture notes*, ??? (???), ???
- [Gar01] Paul Garrett, *Making, breaking codes: An invitation to cryptology*, Prentice-Hall, 2001, Cited in Appendix ?
- [Gol89] Shafi Goldwasser, *The search for provably secure cryptosystems*.
- [Hel03] Helger, *AES speed numbers*, ??? (2003), ???
- [HM89] James Lee Hafner and Kevin S. McCurley, *A rigorous subexponential algorithm for computation of class groups*, Journal of the AMS (1989).
- [HPS98] Jeffrey Hoffstein, Jill Pipher, and Joseph H. Silverman, *Ntru: A new high speed public key cryptosystem*, journal (1998).
- [Jac00] Michael J. Jacobson, Jr., *Computing discrete logarithms in quadratic orders*, J. Cryptology (2000), 473–492.
- [JMS] Michael Jacobson, Alfred Menezes, and Andreas Stein, *Solving elliptic curve discrete logarithm problems using Weil descent*, ??? (???), ???
- [Kob] Neil Koblitz, *Algebraic aspects of cryptography*, ??? (???), ???

- [Lag84] Jeffrey C. Lagarias, *Knapsack public key cryptosystems and diophantine approximation*, Advances in Cryptology (1984), 3–23.
- [Lan83] Susan Landau, *Primes, codes, and the nsa*, Notices of the AMS (1983), 7–10.
- [Lan04] ———, *Polynomials in the nation's service: Using algebra to design the advanced encryption standard*, MAA Monthly (2004), 89–117.
- [Leh27] D. H. Lehmer, *Tests for primality by the converse of fermat's theorem*, Bulletin of the AMS (1927), 327–340.
- [Len] H. W. Lenstra, *A new factorization method*.
- [Lenar] H. W. Lenstra, Jr., *Elliptic curves and number theoretic computations*, journal (year).
- [Mao04] Wenbo Mao, *Modern cryptography: Theory and practice*, Prentice-Hall, 2004, Cited in Appendix ?
- [MAar] F. Morain and A. O. L. Atkin, *Elliptic curves and primality proving*, Mathematics of Computation (year), pages.
- [McC89] Kevin S. McCurley, *The discrete logarithm problem*.
- [Men93] Alfred J. Menezes, *Elliptic curve public key cryptosystems*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, 1993.
- [MH78] Ralph C. Merkle and Martin E. Hellman, *Hiding information and signatures in trapdoor knapsacks*, IEEE Transactions on Information Theory (1978).
- [Mor90] François Morain, *Courbes elliptiques et tests de primalité*, Ph. D. Thesis (1990).
- [MVar] Alfred Menezes and Scott Vanstone, *The implementation of elliptic curve cryptosystems*, journal (year).
- [Odl89] Andrew M. Odlyzko, *The rise and fall of knapsack cryptosystems*.
- [OU98] Tatsuaki Okamoto and Shigenori Uchiyama, *A new public-key cryptosystem as secure as factoring*, 308–318.
- [Per86] Rene C. Peralta, *A simple and fast probabilistic algorithm for computing square roots modulo a prime number*, IEEE Transactions on Information Theory (1986), 846–847.
- [Sch85] Rene Schoof, *Elliptic curves over finite fields and the computation of square roots mod p* , Mathematics of Computation (1985), 483–494.
- [Sch96] Bruce Schneier, *Applied cryptography, second edition*, John Wiley and Sons, 1996, Cited in Appendix ?
- [Sor91a] Jonathan Sorenson, *Algorithms in number theory*, University of Wisconsin Computer Science Technical Report 1027 (1991).

- [Sor91b] ———, *An analysis of two prime number sieves*, University of Wisconsin Computer Science Technical Report 1028 (1991).
- [Sti02] Douglas R. Stinson, *Cryptography: Theory and practice, second edition*, Chapman and Hall/CRC, 2002, Cited in Appendix ?
- [TW06] Wade Trappe and Lawrence C. Washington, *Introduction to cryptography with coding theory, second edition*, Prentice-Hall, 2006, Cited in Appendix ?
- [Web94] Damian Weber, *Discrete logarithms mod p*, journal (1994).
- [Wie86] Doug Wiedemann, *Solving sparse linear equations over finite fields*, IEEE Transactions on Information Theory (1986), 54–62.

Index

- S-box, 116
- abelian group, 27
- ADFGX, 23
- adjacent form, 240
- Advanced Encryption Standard
(*see* AES) ,
- AES, 9, 117
 - AddRoundKey, 135
 - MixColumns, 130
 - ShiftRows, 129
 - SubBytes, 127
 - byte organization, 121
 - differences from Rijndael, 119
 - implementation issues, 136
 - key expansion, 123
 - original candidates, 119
 - rounds, 123
 - selection process, 117
- AKS algorithm, 94
- ambiguous class, 230
- ambiguous form, 230
- Argand plane, 102
- ASCII, 5
- associated forms, 241
- attack
 - chosen ciphertext, 8
 - chosen plaintext, 8
 - ciphertext only, 8
 - known plaintext, 8
- authentication, 6
- automorph, 233
- Battle of Midway, 3
- BFI (*see* brute force and
ignorance)
- binary quadratic form, 227
 - adjacent, 240
 - ambiguous class, 230
 - ambiguous form, 230
 - associated, 241
 - automorph, 233
 - class group, 257
 - composition, 257
 - cycles, 240
 - definite, 231
 - equivalence, 228
 - improper equivalence, 229
 - indefinite, 238
 - indefinite form, 230
 - positive definite, 230, 231
 - principal class, 234
 - principal cycle, 242
 - principal form, 242
 - principal root, 247
 - proper equivalence, 229

- reduced, 231, 234
- Bletchley Park, 2
- block cipher, 6, 119
 - iterated, 119
 - key-alternating, 119
- brute force and ignorance, 24
- Caesar cipher, 14
- Carmichael number, 95
- character
 - of a group, 65
- characteristic of a field, 39
- Chinese Remainder Theorem, 52
- chosen ciphertext attack, 8
- chosen plaintext attack, 8
- cipher, 13
 - block cipher, 6
 - Caesar cipher, 14
 - cipher block chaining, 7
 - electronic codebook, 7
 - one-time pad, 25
 - polyalphabetic, 15
 - state of, 119
 - stream cipher, 7
 - substitution, 13
 - transposition, 13
 - transposition cipher, 21
 - Vernam one-time pad, 25
- cipher block chaining, 7
- ciphertext, 4
- ciphertext only attack, 8
- class
 - ambiguous class, 230
 - principal, 234
- class group, 257
- codebook, 4, 13
- coding theory, 5
- Colossus, 2
- common divisor, 41
- common multiple, 41
- commutative group, 27
- commutative ring, 32
- complete quotient, 222
- complete set of residues, 49
- composite number, 47
- composition, 257
- confidentiality, 5
- congruence, 49
 - modulus of, 49
- congruence arithmetic, 34
- continued fraction, 156, 221
 - algorithm, 222
 - complete quotient, 222
 - convergent, 157, 221
 - partial quotient, 221
 - simple, 222
- continued fraction algorithm, 222
- convergent, 157, 221
- cribbing, 5
- crumbly integer, 155
- cryptanalysis, 4
- cryptography, 4
- cryptology, 4
- cycle
 - period, 241
- cycle of forms, 240
- cyclic group, 29
- D-Day invasion, 3
- Data Encryption Standard (*see* DES) ,
- deciphering, 4
- decrypting, 4
- definite form, 231
- DES, 8, 115
- digital watermarking, 13
- direct product, 37
- discrete logarithm, 176
- discrete logarithm problem, 34, 176
- discriminant, 227
- division algorithm, 42
 - polynomial, 76
 - quotient from, 42
 - remainder from, 42
- divisor of an integer, 41
- electronic codebook, 7

- elliptic curve, 83, 100
 - factoring, 172
 - Jacobian coordinates, 90, 188
 - Koblitz curve, 194
 - Mordell-Weil group, 87
 - point at infinity, 187
 - projective coordinates, 90
 - Weierstrass form, 84
- elliptic curve factoring, 172
- elliptic curve: Hasse's Theorem, 92
- enciphering, 4
- encrypting, 4
- Enigma, 2
- entropy, 18, 20
 - entropy of English, 21
- entropy of English, 21
- epact, 153
- equivalence
 - improper, 229
 - proper, 229
- equivalence of forms, 228
- Euclidean Algorithm
 - binary version, 46
 - subtraction version, 47
- Euclidean algorithm, 44
 - polynomial, 76
- Euler phi function, 57
- Euler totient function, 57
- exponent of a group, 31
- Extended Euclidean algorithm, 45
- factor base, 160
- factor of an integer, 41
- factoring
 - continued fraction, 156
 - elliptic curve, 172
 - multiple polynomial quadratic sieve, 170
 - number field sieve, 171
 - Pollard $p - 1$, 154
 - Pollard rho, 152
 - quadratic sieve, 167
- Fast Fourier Transform, 96, 97
- Fermat number, 99
- Fermat's Little Theorem, 57, 95
- FFT (*see* Fast Fourier Transform)
- field, 32
 - characteristic of a field, 39
 - finite, 69
 - finite field, 32
 - galois field, 32
- finite field, 32, 69
 - normal basis, 80
 - optimal normal basis, 81
- form
 - adjacent, 240
 - ambiguous class, 230
 - ambiguous form, 230
 - associated, 241
 - automorph, 233
 - binary quadratic, 227
 - cycles, 240
 - definite, 231
 - discriminant, 227
 - equivalence, 228
 - improper equivalence, 229
 - indefinite, 230, 238
 - opposite, 241
 - positive definite, 230, 231
 - primitive, 227
 - primitive representation, 228
 - principal, 234, 242
 - principal class, 234
 - principal root, 247
 - proper equivalence, 229
 - reduced, 231, 238
- form composition, 257
- Friedman, Elizabeth, 2
- Friedman, William, 2
- Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic, 49
- galois field, 32
- group, 27
 - abelian, 27
 - commutative, 27

- cyclic, 29
- direct product, 37
- exponent of a group, 31
- generator of, 29
- homomorphism, 37
- identity, 27
- inverse, 27
- isomorphism, 37
- Lagrange's theorem, 95
- modular group, 38
- order of a group, 30
- order of an element, 30
- subgroup of, 28
- group character, 65
- group generator, 29
- hash function, 6
- Hasse's Theorem, 92
- homomorphism, 37
- identity element, 27
- improper equivalence, 229
- indefinite form, 230, 238
- index calculus, 34, 180
- information theory, 18
- integer
 - common divisors, 41
 - common multiple, 41
 - congruence, 49
 - divisor of, 41
 - factor of, 41
- integers
 - prime to one another, 43
 - relatively prime, 43
- integrity, 5
- inverse element, 27
- irreducible polynomial, 76
- isomorphism, 37
- iterated block cipher, 119
- Jacobi symbol, 66
- Jacobian coordinates, 188
- Jefferson, Thomas, 1
- Kerckhoff, Auguste, 10
- Kerckhoffs Principle, 10
- key, 4
- key exchange
 - safe prime, 179
- key-alternating block cipher, 119
- Klein-4 group, 40, 215
- known plaintext attack, 8
- Koblitz curve, 194
- Lagrange's theorem, 95
- law of quadratic reciprocity, 66, 67
- least positive residue, 49
- Legendre symbol, 65
- linear feedback shift register, 71
 - period of, 72
- Lucas-Lehmer test, 95, 99
- Mary, Queen of Scots, 1
- Mersenne number, 94
- Mersenne prime, 93
- modular arithmetic, 51
- modular group, 38, 230
- modulus, 49
- Montgomery multiplication, 111
- Mordell-Weil group, 87
- MPQS, 170
- multiple polynomial quadratic sieve, 170
- multiplicative identity, 31
- non-repudiation, 6
- normal basis, 80
 - optimal, 81
- number field sieve, 171
- one-time pad, 25
- opposite form, 241
- optimal normal basis, 81
- order of a group, 30
- order of an element, 30
- partial quotient, 221
- Pell equation, 247
 - fundamental solution, 248

- Pell's equation, 246
- period of a cycle, 241
- phi function, 57
- plaintext, 4
- Playfair cipher, 22
- Playfair, Baron, 22
- point at infinity, 187
- Pollard $p - 1$, 154
- Pollard rho, 152
- polyalphabetic cipher, 15
- polynomial
 - irreducible, 76
 - prime, 76
 - primitive, 71
- positive definite form, 230, 231
- primality proving, 94
- prime
 - Mersenne, 93
- prime number, 47
- Prime Number Theorem, 152
- prime numbers
 - primality proving, 94
- prime polynomial, 76
- prime to one another, 43
- primitive form, 227
- primitive polynomial, 71
- primitive representation, 228
- primitive root, 33, 178
- primitive trinomial, 70
- principal class, 234
- principal cycle, 242
- principal form, 234, 242
- principal root, 159, 247
- proper equivalence, 229
- proving primality, 94
- Purple, 2
- quadratic field
 - class group, 257
- quadratic reciprocity, 66, 67
- quadratic sieve, 167
- reading ciphertext, 4
- reduced form, 231, 238
- relatively prime, 43
- representation
 - primitive, 228
- representation of m , 227
- residue
 - complete set of, 49
 - least positive, 49
- Rijndael (*see* AES)
- ring, 31
 - commutative, 32
 - multiplicative identity, 31
 - zero divisors, 35
- Riverbank Laboratories, 2
- Rocheffort, Joseph, 3
- round, 119
- safe prime, 179
- Shannon, Claude, 10
- shift register, 71
 - period of, 72
- simple continued fraction, 222
- smooth number, 160
- square roots modulo primes, 61
- square roots of 1, 62
- state, 119
- steganography, 13
- Stimson, Henry, 2
- stream cipher, 7
- subgroup, 28
- substitution cipher, 13
- totient function, 57
- transposition cipher, 13, 21
 - ADFGX, 23
 - Playfair, 22
- trinomial
 - primitive, 70
- Turing, Alan, 2
- Vernam one-time pad, 25
- Weierstrass form, 84
- Wheatstone, Sir Charles, 22
- Yardley, Herbert O., 1

zero divisors, 35